

УДК 811.11136(075.8) ББК
81.2Англ-2я73 И89

Все права защищены.

Никакая часть данной книги не может переиздаваться или распространяться в любой форме и любыми средствами, электронными или механическими, включая фотокопирование, звукозапись, любые запоминающие устройства и системы поиска информации, без письменного разрешения правообладателя.

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Истомина, Е. А.

И 89 Английская грамматика = English Grammar / Е. А. Истомина, А. С. Саакян. — 5-е изд., испр. и доп. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2007. — 272 с. — (Высшее образование).

ISBN 978-5-8112-2292-6

Пособие содержит базовый теоретический и практический курс грамматики современного английского языка для студентов первого и второго курсов факультетов иностранных языков.

Данное учебное пособие является составной частью комплекта учебников «Практический курс английского языка» под редакцией профессора В. Д. Аракина.

**ББК81.2Англ-2я73
УДК811.Ш'36(075.8)**

ISBN978-5-8112-2292-6

© Истомина Е. А., Саакян А. С., 1980
© Айрис-пресс, 2007

СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

Предисловие	7
Part I THEORY	
SYNTAX	8
I. Types of Sentences according to the Aim of Communication.....	9
II. Types of Sentences according to Their Structure	10
III. The Main Members of the Sentence. The Subject, the Predicate. Types of Predicate	11
IV. The Secondary Members of the Sentence: the Object, the Attribute, the Adverbial Modifier....	12
MORPHOLOGY	14
The Noun.....	14
Number	16
Case	18
Gender	19
The Article.....	20
The Indefinite Article	20
The Definite Article.....	21
Articles with the Names of Meals	23
The Use of Articles with Material Nouns	24
The Use of Articles with Uncountable Abstract Nouns	24
The Use of Articles with Nouns Denoting Parts of the Day and Seasons.....	25
The Use of Articles with Geographic(al) Names.....	26
The Use of Articles with Proper Names	27
The Use of Articles with Names of Persons	28
Articles with Nouns in Apposition	28
Articles with the Nouns <i>bed, school, town, college, hospital, jail,</i> <i>market, table</i>	29
The Use of Articles in <i>With-, Like-, In-</i> phrases.....	30
The Use of Articles in and with <i>Of-</i> phrases.....	30
The Use of Articles with Some Set-phrases and Free Combinations	31
The Adjective	31
The Numeral.....	34
The Pronoun	36
Personal Pronouns	37
Possessive Pronouns.....	37
Demonstrative Pronouns	38

Indefinite Pronouns	38
The Pronouns <i>Much</i> and <i>Many</i> , <i>Little</i> and <i>Few</i>	39
Self-pronouns	41
The Negative Pronoun <i>No</i> and the Negative Particle <i>Not</i>	42
The Verb..	42
The Present Tenses (the Simple Present, the Present Progressive, the Present Perfect, the Present Perfect Progressive)	45
The Past Tenses (the Simple Past, the Past Progressive, the Past Perfect, the Past Perfect Progressive)	50
The Future Tenses (the Simple Future, the Future Progressive, the Future Perfect, the Future Perfect Progressive. Other Means of Expressing Future Actions).....	54
The Rules of the Sequence of Tenses	57
Voice	58
The Complex Object	60
Modal Verbs	61

Part II

PRACTICE

SYNTAX	66
Unit 1 The Sentence. Kinds of Sentences according to the Purpose of the Utterance. Kinds of Sentences according to Their Structure.....	66
Unit 2 The Main Members of the Sentence. The Subject. The Predicate.....	69
Unit 3 The Secondary Members of the Sentence. The Object. The Attribute. The Adverbial Modifier.....	71
MORPHOLOGY	74
Unit 4 Nouns and Their Classification. The Number of the Noun and the Formation of the Plural	74
Unit 5 The Article. The Equivalents of the Definite and the Indefinite Articles	77
Unit 6 The Possessive Case of Nouns. Articles with Nouns in the Main Syntactical Functions. Personal, Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns.....	80
Unit 7 The Simple Present Tense. The Possessive Case of the Noun. Self-Pronouns	84
Unit 8 The Article with Nouns Modified by <i>Such</i> , <i>Rather</i> , <i>What</i> , <i>Quite</i> . The Simple Present Tense. The Gender of the Noun.....	87

Unit 9	The Use of Articles with Countable and Uncountable Nouns. The Simple Present Tense	91
Unit 10	The Indefinite Pronouns. The Simple Present and the Simple Future Tense..	95
Unit 11	Revision (Units 1 to 10).....	98
Unit 12	The Simple Present and the Simple Future Tense. Articles with Nouns Modified by Descriptive and Limiting Attributes. Indefinite Pronouns.....	102
Unit 13	Indefinite Pronouns and Interrogative Pronouns. Articles.....	106
Unit 14	The Present Progressive Tense and Other Tenses. Articles	108
Unit 15	The Use of Tenses and Articles	111
Unit 16	Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives. Indefinite Pronouns	116
Unit 17	Modal Verbs. Degrees of Comparison. Tenses.....	119
Unit 18	Degrees of Comparison. Articles with Geographical Names. Modal Verbs. Tenses	122
Unit 19	The Present Perfect Tense. The Resultative Type. Modal Verbs. Articles.....	126
Unit 20	The Present Perfect Tense. The Durative Type. Articles with the Names of Meals	129
Unit 21	The Present Perfect Tense. The Simple Past Tense	133
Unit 22	The Present Perfect Tense. The Simple Past Tense. Other Tenses	135
Unit 23	The Present Perfect Tense in Clauses of Time and Condition. Other Tenses.....	139
Unit 24	The Use of Tenses. Articles with Nouns in Apposition.....	142
Unit 25	The Use of Tenses.....	145
Unit 26	The Use of Tenses. Articles with Nouns in Apposition.....	150
Unit 27	The Past and the Future Progressive Tenses. The Simple Past and the Past Progressive Tenses. Degrees of Comparison.....	154
Unit 28	Progressive Tenses. The Future Progressive Tense Expressing a Matter-of-Course Action. Articles in <i>with-</i> , <i>like-</i> , <i>in-</i> phrases	157
Unit 29	Ways of Expressing Futurity. Articles with Nouns Denoting Parts of the Day and Names of Seasons	160
Unit 30	The Use of Tenses and Articles.....	163
Unit 31	The Use of Tenses. Reported Speech.....	167
Unit 32	The Use of Tenses. Reported Speech.....	170
Unit 33	The Use of Tenses and Articles. The Generic Use of the Definite Article	173

Unit 34	The Use of Tenses and Articles.....	177
Unit 35	The Use of Tenses. The Present Perfect Progressive Tense	180
Unit 36	The Use of the Present Perfect Progressive Tense	183
Unit 37	The Use of Tenses	187
Unit 38	The Use of Tenses. Articles with <i>Of</i> -phrases	190
Unit 39	The Use of the Past Perfect Tense. Articles.....	194
Unit 40	The Use of Tenses	197
Unit 41	The Use of Tenses. Articles with the Nouns <i>Bed, School,</i> <i>Table, Town, Jail, Prison, Hospital, University, College</i>	201
Unit 42	The Past Perfect Progressive Tense. Revision Of Articles	204
Unit 43	The Past Perfect Progressive Tense. Adjectives As Adverbs	208
Unit 44	The Future in the Past. The Sequence of Tenses	211
Unit 45	Reported Speech. The Sequence of Tenses	214
Unit 46	Reported Speech. The Sequence of Tenses. Articles.....	218
Unit 47	Reported Speech. The Sequence of Tenses.....	221
Unit 48	The Future Perfect. The Future Perfect Progressive.	224
Unit 49	The Passive Voice. Degrees of Comparison.....	228
Unit 50	The Passive Voice. Articles with Uncountable Nouns	231
Unit 51	The Passive Voice. Indefinite Pronouns	234
Unit 52	The Passive Voice. Revision of Tenses	237
Unit 53	The Complex Object. The Passive Voice.....	239
Unit 54	The Complex Object. The Use of Past Tenses	243
Unit 55	The Complex Object. The Gerund	246
Unit 56	General Revision	249
Unit 57	General Revision	253
Unit 58	General Revision.....	257
Unit 59	General Revision	261
Unit 60	Test Your Knowledge	265

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

English Grammar. Theory and Practice for Beginners является базовым теоретическим и практическим курсом грамматики современного английского языка для студентов первого и второго курсов факультетов английского языка, студентов колледжей, а также для широкого круга лиц, изучающих английский язык самостоятельно.

Данное учебное пособие состоит из двух частей — теоретической и практической. Первая, теоретическая часть, представляет собой последовательное изложение основного теоретического объема знаний, необходимого для овладения строем языка и формирования навыков устной и письменной речи.

Вторая, практическая часть, представляет собой поурочную разработку, состоящую из 60 уроков. Порядок расположения грамматического материала по урокам соответствует последовательности его изучения. При введении нового грамматического материала сначала предлагаются упражнения аналитического характера, затем даются тренировочные и коммуникативные задания, направленные на выработку у студентов навыков употребления изучаемого грамматического материала в речи.

Данное учебное пособие построено на основе фактического материала, представляющего собой современный литературный и разговорный язык Великобритании и США.

Предлагаемая книга представляет собой пятое исправленное и дополненное издание учебного пособия, используемого с 1980 года на факультетах иностранных языков (английских отделениях), на факультетах начальных классов и дошкольного воспитания, биолого-химических факультетах, в педагогических колледжах Москвы, а также в ряде вузов Российской Федерации — Пскова, Барнаула, Волгограда, Рязани, Воронежа.

Part I THEORY

In richness, good sense, and convenience, no other of the living languages may be put beside English.

Jakob Grimm

Language is a means of human communication. Language is also the most basic and marvellously complex instrument of culture. Try to imagine a world without language. In fact, you cannot do so, because language is perhaps the most ancient heritage of the human race. Language exists only when it is listened to as well as spoken. Language shows a man: speak and I'll say who you are. Language has great power. It can bring us together, it can praise, delight, inspire. But it can also hurt, offend, destroy.

English has always been a hybrid language, what Daniel Defo called "your Roman-Saxon-Danish-Norman-English".

The English language consists of three constituent parts: the phonological system, the lexical system, the grammatical system.

Phonetics is a science which studies **the phonic** system of the language (sounds, intonation, etc.)

Lexicology is a science which studies **the word-stock** of the language, -its building material (words, phrases, etc.)

You can have perfect pronunciation and the richest vocabulary imaginable, but you won't be able to speak a language if you don't know how to make up sentences with the help of which we communicate, that is if you don't know the grammar of the language.

Grammar is a science which studies the structure of the language. The two parts of English Grammar are: **Morphology** and **Syntax**.

Morphology deals with parts of speech. **Syntax** studies the sentence, different types of sentences and their meanings.

SYNTAX

The word "Syntax" comes from Old Greek, where it meant «военный строй». In Old Greek grammar schools the term was transferred to Grammar to stress the importance of word order in the sentence.

The sentence is a unit of speech which expresses a complete thought, and has a correct grammatical form and intonation. Every sentence has modality, which shows the speaker's attitude towards reality.

Sentences are classified on two principles: **according to the aim of communication and according to their structure.**

I. Types of Sentences according to the Aim of Communication

According to the aim of communication sentences may be **declarative, interrogative, and imperative.**

Declarative sentences express statements, facts in the affirmative or in the negative form. In the English language the word order in declarative sentences is very strict. The subject usually precedes the predicate. If the verb is transitive, the direct object immediately follows the verb. If there are two objects — direct and indirect — the indirect object is placed before the direct one.

- **She gave her children love and care.**

Interrogative sentences ask for some information. There are the following types of interrogative sentences in English:

1. **A general question.** It asks whether the statement is positive or negative and requires an affirmative or a negative answer.

- **- Is it cold today? — Yes, it is.**
- **- Do you like cold weather? — No, I don't.**

2. **A special question.** It may refer to any word in the sentence and it begins with an interrogative word (Who? What? Which? When? Where? Why?).

- **When and where do you meet?**
- **Why is she so cross with you?**

A special question *to the subject* (What? Who? Which?) doesn't require any auxiliary verb.

- **What makes you so sad?**
- **Who knows the answer?**
- **Which of them helps you?**

3. **An alternative question.** It means choice.

- **Is Dan in or out? Do you learn French or Spanish?**

4. **A disjunctive question** (a tag question). It is a very short question which follows the statement and repeats its meaning. If the statement is affirmative, the question is negative; if the statement is negative, the question is affirmative.

- **You are happy, aren't you? You aren't happy, are you? He never smokes, does he? She smokes, doesn't she?**

Question tags are often used in conversations to invite agreement.

- **I'm lucky, *aren't I?* I am not lucky, *am I?***

Imperative sentences express commands, requests and invitations. The imperative mood of the verb is formed with the help of the infinitive without the particle **to**.

- **Calm down! Relax! (In the affirmative). Freeze! Dismiss!**

The imperative mood for the first and for the third persons is formed with the help of the verb **let**.

- **Let me (us, them) explain it.**

In the negative form the auxiliary verb **do** is used.

- **Don't be so noisy! Don't let's do it. (*rare*)**

Will you or *Would you* are the most common ways to make question tags after an imperative sentence.

- **Take care, will (would) you?**

Will you is the only possible form after a negative imperative.

- **Don't be late, will you? Don't interfere, will you?**

Any of the three kinds of sentences mentioned above may become exclamatory. *Exclamatory* sentences express strong feelings such as surprise, joy, annoyance, grief. They begin with the exclamatory words **What** and **How**.

- **What a fine day! What unruly children! What timely advice! How fine the day is! How happy you look today! How good this news is!**

II. Types of Sentences according

to Their Structure

According to their structure sentences may be divided into **simple, compound** and **complex**.

A **simple sentence** can be **extended** or **unextended**. A sentence, which consists only of a subject and a predicate is called **unextended**.

- **Life is wonderful. Time is short. They met. We had a talk.**

A sentence which has some secondary parts is called **extended**.

- **Last night we went for a walk in the centre of Moscow.**

A **compound sentence** consists of two or more coordinated simple sentences.

- **The night was warm, and we walked to the sea. It was late, and I was tired.**

A **complex sentence** consists of a principal (independent) clause and of one or more subordinate (dependent) clauses.

- **Nobody knows when she'll come back.**
How I wish it were true and I hadn't imagined it all.
Although it was hard work, I enjoyed the job.

III. The Main Members of the Sentence.

The Subject, the Predicate. Types of Predicate

A sentence may have **main** and **secondary** members. The main members of the sentence are: *the Subject* and *the Predicate*.

1. **The Subject** of the sentence is the topic being discussed. The Subject may be expressed by **personal pronouns, nouns, indefinite pronouns, infinitives, gerunds, substantivised parts of speech.**

- **We all hope for the best.**
A doctor should be competent.
Something is wrong.
To know you is a privilege.
Traveling broadens your mind.
The unknown is always interesting.

2. **The Predicate** of the sentence is what is said about the subject. According to its meaning the predicate may be either **verbal** or **nominal**.

Predicate	
Verbal	Nominal
We study	We are students.

The Verbal Predicate denotes an action and is expressed by a finite **verb** in a simple or a compound tense form.

Verbal Predicate		
Simple	Compound	
He works (is working, has been working).	Modal	Aspective
	She can (may, should, must...) work hard.	He began (started) to work.

The Nominal Predicate expresses **facts, states, qualities, characteristics** (it cannot denote an action).

Nominal Predicate	
a link-verb	a nominal part (a predicative)

The Nominal Predicate consists of a link-verb and a nominal part (predicative), thus it is always compound in structure.

- We are students, it is cold today. She became a student.

The main link-verbs are:

- 1) **link-verbs of being:** be, look, feel, taste, smell, sound;
- 2) **link-verbs of becoming:** get, grow, become, turn, prove;
- 3) **link-verbs of remaining:** remain, keep, continue, go on;
- 4) **link-verbs of seeming:** seem, appear.

The use of various link-verbs helps to express different shades meaning in our perception of the subject. The use of link-verbs makes our speech more emotional.

Compare:

- **She is happy. — She looks (feels, appears, seems, sounds, becomes...) happy.**

Some notional verbs may function as link-verbs in different contexts.

Compare:

- **He went home. — He went crazy.
She ran to the park. — The well ran dry in summer.
They stayed at the office. — They stayed cool in court.**

The second part of the nominal predicate is called a **predicative** and can be expressed by a noun, a pronoun, an adjective, a numeral, an infinitive, and a gerund.

- **They are artists and they are young.
The fault is mine. He is only eighteen. It's me again.
Our aim is to master English and to become good teachers.
The most difficult thing in life is choosing.**

Remember that an adverb is used to modify a verbal predicate, while an adjective is used as the second part of the nominal predicate, i.e. predicative.

Compare:

- **He works slowly. — He is slow.
Speak seriously. — This is serious.**

IV. The Secondary Members of the Sentence: the Object, the Attribute, the Adverbial Modifier

The secondary members of the sentence are: *the object, the attribute, the adverbial modifier.*

The object denotes a person or thing to which the action of the predicate is directed.

There may be *direct*, *indirect* and *prepositional* objects. If there is only one object in the sentence, it is always direct. The indirect object cannot be single in the sentence. It is always used with the direct object and comes between the verb and the direct object.

- **Give us (*an indirect object*) a definite answer (*a direct object*).**
Tell me (*an indirect object*) your secret (*a direct object*).

Sometimes the indirect object can be preceded by the prepositions **to** and **for**. If you can transform the sentence and use one of the objects without the preposition, it means that you have an indirect object in the sentence.

- **I gave the key to him. — I gave him the key.**
She bought a toy for the kid. — She bought the kid a toy.

The prepositional object which is always preceded by a preposition can not be transformed in such a way.

- **Explain it to me. Do it for her.**
Read the tale to the child. Dictate the text to them.

The attribute qualifies the nouns (pronouns) of the sentence. It may be expressed by an adjective, a noun, a participle, an infinitive and stands either in pre or postposition to the word it modifies. An attribute to a pronoun always follows it.

- **What is the most effective method of foreign language teaching? We met on a *Sunday* morning. They watched the *rising* sun. I have some work to do. I can tell you something new.**

The adverbial modifier characterises an action, state or quality of the sentence, denoting the time, place, manner, degree of the action. It is expressed by adverbs and nouns with prepositions. With verbs of motion the adverbial modifier of place comes immediately after the verb. If there are two or more adverbial modifiers, the usual order is *place, manner, time*. The adverbial modifier of time can be put at the beginning of the sentence.

- **They lived there happily all their lives.**
Last night I had a strange dream.

The place of such adverbial modifiers of indefinite time as *always, never, usually, often, seldom, yet, just* is before the notional verb or after the auxiliary or modal verb.

- **She always comes on time.**
Is she often late?
You must never complain.
One can never tell.

MORPHOLOGY

All the words of the English language are grouped into different types of classes which are called parts of speech. Morphology is a part of grammar which studies parts of speech. The classification of words into parts of speech is based on the three main principles: 1) the grammatical meaning; 2) the form; 3) the syntactical function.

There are notional and functional parts of speech. Notional parts of speech have independent meanings and functions in the sentence. Functional words serve to connect words or sentences, or to specify the meanings of other words.

The notional parts of speech are:

- The Noun
- The Adjective
- The Stative
- The Pronoun
- The Numeral
- The Verb
- The Adverb
- The Modal Words
- The Interjection

The functional parts of speech are:

- The Preposition
- The Conjunction
- The Particle
- The Article

The Noun

The noun denotes objects, substances, living beings (people and animals), abstract notions, different phenomena. The English noun has the grammatical categories of number, case and is associated with the article. There are different classifications of the Noun. The most important are *the semantic classification* and *the classification* of nouns into *countable* and *uncountable*.

I. *The semantic classification* of nouns is based on their meaning, according to which they fall into different groups.

A common noun is the general name of an object, a place, a person or an idea.

- **a computer, a city, a boy, love, joy, luck**

A **proper noun** is the name of a particular person or a geographical place.

- **Mrs. Honey, Brian, London, the Tiber, the Alps**

A common noun may be concrete, abstract or collective. A concrete noun names an object that occupies space and can be seen and touched.

- **a flower, a CD, a banana**

Concrete nouns fall into **class** and **material**. A class noun refers an object to the same class of things. It can be counted. A material noun denotes substance and generally is uncountable. *Compare:*

- **a glass — glass, an iron — iron**

An **abstract noun** names an idea, some notion.

- **freedom, intelligence, competence**

A **collective noun** names a group of people or things.

- **a family, a flotilla, people, government, cast**

The classification of the Noun can be presented in the following table:

The Noun				
Common			Proper	
Concrete	Abstract	Collective	Personal	Geographic(al)
Class Material				

II. *The classification* of nouns into *countable* and *uncountable* is based on the ability of nouns to be counted.

Countables

- a thing
- a child
- an apple
- a car
- a penny

Uncountables

- news
- freedom
- happiness
- work
- tea

1. If the noun is countable it can agree with the verb in the singular and in the plural; it can take the indefinite article. The indefinite pronouns (*not*) *many* or (*a*) *few* are used.

- **This is a great book. — These are great books.**
I've got (not) many, (a) few French books at home.

2. If the noun is uncountable it agrees with the verb only in the singular; it can't take the indefinite article, (*not*) *much*, (*a*) *little* are used with them.

- **It is hard work. (No article!)**
He does much work.
I have (a) little work today.

Number

Countable nouns in English have two numbers — **the singular** and **the plural**. The **plural** can be expressed in English by:

1. Adding **-s** or **-es** to the singular; **-es** is added to the nouns ending in **(t)ch, s, ss, sh, x** or **z**:

- **a wish — wishes a day — days a kilo — kilos**
- **a bus — buses a story — stories a hero — heroes**
- **a wolf — wolves a life — lives,**
But: a chief — chiefs

2. The change of the root vowel:

- **a man — men a foot — feet a mouse — mice**
- **a woman — women a goose — geese a tooth — teeth**
- **a child — children a louse — lice**

3. Identical forms for the singular and for the plural:

- **a deer — two deer a sheep — ten sheep**
- **a species — three species a series — three series**
- **a means — some means a fish — (many) fish**
(also some kinds of fish: a carp, a pike, a salmon, a trout, etc.)
- **a carp — two carp a trout — five trout**

The form **fishes** denotes different kinds of fish and is rarely used.

- **The fishes of the Atlantic.**

Names of nationalities ending in **-ese**, **-ss** also have identical forms for the singular and for the plural:

- **a Portuguese — ten Portuguese a Chinese — the Chinese**
- **a Japanese — two Japanese a Burmese — the Burmese**
- **a Swiss — many Swiss a Vietnamese — the Vietnamese**

4. Foreign Plurals

A lot of words borrowed from Latin and Greek form their plural in modern English in the regular way, i.e., by adding **-(e)s**. But a few have kept their original Latin or Greek plural endings. The most common of them form the plural according to the table below.

Singular ending	Regular plural	Latin (Greek) plural
1) -us cactus	-uses cactuses	-i cacti
2) -a antenna	-as antennas	-ae antennae
3) -um curriculum	-ums curriculumms	-a curricula
4) -ex index	-exes indexes	-ices indices

Singular ending	Regular plural	Latin (Greek) plural
5) -ix appendix	-ixes appendixes	-ices appendices
6) -is basis	-ises basises	-es bases
7) -on phenomenon	-ons phenomenons	-a phenomena

5. The plural of compound nouns

a) Generally compounds form the plural by adding **-(e)s** to the second element.

- **a grown-up — grown-ups**
- **a boyfriend — boyfriends**
- **an office-block — office-blocks**
- **a forget-me-not — forget-me-nots**
- *But: a passer-by — passers-by, a hanger-on — hangers-on*

b) Nouns ending in **-in-law** add the plural **-s** to the noun:

- **a father-in-law — fathers-in-law**
- **a daughter-in-law — daughters-in-law**
- *But: his/her in-laws*

c) If the first element is **man** or **woman**, both elements are made plural:

- **a woman-driver — women-drivers**
- **a manservant — menservants**

6. As for uncountable nouns some of them are always singular and some are plural.

Compare:

English singular invariable nouns		English plural invariable nouns	
information	yeast	clothes	goods
advice	cream	contents	shorts
money	ink	sweepings	trousers
news	linen	glasses	jeans
progress	rubbish	odds	scissors
furniture	leafage	ends	tights
work	weather	greens	pants
		customs	scales

The verbs are always singular.

Compare:

- **It is hitting news.**
- **That was timely advice.**

The verbs are always plural.

- **My jeans are denim blue.**
- **The glasses were made in Italy.**

Case

This grammatical category shows the relation of the noun with other words in the sentence and is expressed by the form of the noun. English nouns have two cases: **the Common case** and **the Possessive case**. The Common case has no inflexion and its meaning is very general. The Possessive case is generally used with nouns denoting people and animals. Nouns denoting inanimate objects are not generally used in the possessive case. The *of + noun* phrase is used with nouns denoting inanimate objects.

- **a boy's leg — the leg of a table**
a man's foot — the foot of a mountain

I. The Possessive Case is formed in the following ways:

1. By adding the inflexion -s to the stem of the noun in the singular.

- **the boy's toy, a child's game**

Note: If a noun in the singular ends in s and has only one syllable it also forms the possessive case with — apostrophe and -s.

- **the bus's tires, the boss's order**

2. By adding only an apostrophe (') to the nouns in the plural. The second s is generally omitted.

- **students' life, workers' wages**

3. By adding only an apostrophe or 's if a proper name ends in -s.

In this case the full inflexion is pronounced.

- **Max' [iz] doubts, Little Liz' [iz] dress**
Keats' [iz] odes, the duchess' visit, James's [iz] car

4. By adding the inflexion -s to the last element of a compound noun.

- **a brother-in-law's virtues, brothers-in-law's virtues**

5. If there are two coordinate nouns (joined by **and**, **but**, or), expressing joint possession, the apostrophe is usually added to the last noun.

- **Jack and Jill's father, Tom and Mary's teacher**

If the coordinate nouns express individual possessions, the apostrophe is used with both nouns.

- **John's and Mark's skateboards**

II. There is a growing tendency in Modern English to use the possessive case with inanimate nouns denoting:

1. **time or distance:**

- **a moment's silence, a two-miles' drive, a good night's sleep, a fortnight's holiday**

2. **seasons, months, and days:**

- **a summer's morning, July's heat, Tuesday's programme**

3. **countries, cities, and towns:**

- **England's history, France's efforts, London's buses, Germany's policy**

4. with the nouns *the world, the sun, the moon, the earth, water, river* and *names of planets*:

- **the sun's rays, the river's bed, the moon's light, the world's history, the earth's diameter, the water's edge**

5. with the names of **vessels**:

- **the ship's crew, the yacht's owner, the boat's sail, the plane's crash**

III. The Possessive Case is used in some set expressions which are survivals of Old English Genitive Case when it was freely used with all nouns in English.

- **to one's heart's content (delight),
at one's wit's end, at one's fingers' ends, out of harm's way,
to a hair's breadth, for friendship's sake,
at arm's reach, at arm's length, at a stone's throw,
at sword's points, at the razor's edge,
at death's door, in the mind's eye**

Note: When dedication is implied the Possessive Case is not used.

- **The State Tretyakov Gallery the Pushkin Monument
the Tate Gallery the Kennedy Centre**

Gender

Gender does not find any morphological expression in English. The distinction of male, female, and neuter can be understood from:

1. the lexical meaning of the noun:

- **a man — a woman, a boy — a girl, a brother — a sister,
a monk — a nun, a king — a queen, Mr. — Mrs. (Miss, Ms.)**

2. the use of personal pronouns *he, she, it*:

- **The principal entered the hall and everybody rose to greet her.
There was a she-crab soup on the menu, my favourite.**

3. the use of suffixes:

- **a poet — a poetess, a hero — a heroine, a waiter — a waitress,
a baronet — a baroness, a widow — widower, a czar — a czarina**

In many words you do not know whether the person referred to is male or female. The most common are:

- **a cousin, a friend, a foreigner, a guest, a visitor,
a neighbour, a parent, a person, a stranger, a customer**

Also in names of professions such as *a cook, a doctor, a journalist, a judge, a scientist, a student, a teacher*, etc.

To make a distinction, you can use the words *male* or *female, lady* or *woman*.

- **a male cousin, a female student, a lady doctor, a woman driver**

4. compounding:

- **a bull-elephant, a cow-elephant, manservant, maidservant**

But nowadays phrases like *a male nurse*, or *a male secretary* are considered to be sexist and may sometimes sound offensive. It looks as if such usage ignores half the human race — or at least seems to assume that the other half is more important. You can bring the language up to date, and make it sound non-sexist by:

a) using plural forms:

- **Lawyers must pass the bar exam before they begin to practise.**

b) using both pronouns:

- **A lawyer must pass the bar exam before he or she can begin to practise.**

c) eliminating the pronouns:

- **A lawyer must pass the bar exam before beginning to practise.**

d) using non-sexist words like:

- **a chairwoman — a chairperson**
a congressman — a member of Congress
a mailman — a mail-carrier
man, mankind — humans, human beings, humanity, the human race
a policeman (woman) — a police officer
a fireman — a firefighter

The use of female gender is traditional with the names of *vessels* (ships, boats, cruisers etc.), *vehicles* (cars, coaches, planes), *countries*:

- **The new yacht has started on her voyage.**
She is a terrific car!
Ireland! She is our Motherland!

The Article

The Article is a word that serves as a noun determiner alongside with such determiners as demonstrative, possessive, and indefinite pronouns. The article is one of the main means of expressing the idea of definiteness and indefiniteness in English.

The Indefinite Article

I. The indefinite article originated from the Old English numeral *one*: *one* -> *a (an)*. That's why it can be used only **with a countable noun in the singular**. The main meanings of the indefinite article are **classifying**, **general**, and **numerical**.

1. **In its classifying meaning** the article serves to refer an object to the class of objects of the same kind, just to classify it.

- **I am a school teacher. It is a teenager novel.**

2. **In its general meaning** the indefinite article implies that the object denoted by the noun is spoken of as a representative of the class.

The article in this meaning can be substituted by such words as *any, every*. It is often used in proverbs and sentences expressing a general truth.

- **A teacher should be patient. A dog is a good friend.
A burnt child dreads the fire. An Englishman makes a good husband.**

Mind the absence of the article in the plural:

- **Dogs make good pets.
Englishmen make good husbands.**

3. In its **numerical meaning** the indefinite article retains its original meaning of the cardinal numeral *one* and expresses **oneness**. This meaning is evident with nouns denoting units of measure (*time, distance, length, weight* etc.):

- **An apple a day keeps wrinkles away.
A penny saved is a penny gained.
A pound is a unit of weight in Britain.
An hour will be enough for me.**

II. A countable noun in the singular takes the indefinite article if it is used:

1. in the function of **the subject** in sentences with the construction

There is (comes, appears etc.):

- **There comes a bus. There is a fax for you on the desk.**

2. in the function of **the predicative**:

- **I am a teacher. *But*: I am the teacher here.**

3. in the function of **the direct object**:

- **I wrote a letter. We got a Christmas card from London.**

4. in some **set-phrases** expressing **one-time** (однократные) actions

like:

- **to be a success, to have a rest, to have a lovely time, to give a look, to give a hint, to make a will, to make a fuss, to make a mistake, to take a seat etc.**
- **The play was a success. I can't guess it, can you give me a hint?**

5. after the exclamatory **what**:

- **What an idea! What a surprise! What a shame! What a man!**

With **plural nouns** there is no article:

- **What ideas! What surprises! What people!**

If the noun is **uncountable** no article is used:

- **What fine weather! What interesting news! What tasty jam!**

The Definite Article

The definite article originated from the Old English demonstrative pronoun *that*. The equivalents of the definite article are possessive and demonstrative pronouns *this — these, that — those*.

The definite article is used:

1. if the context or the situation makes the noun clear.

- **Open the door. Go to the kitchen.**
The flowers were splendid! I liked the present a lot.

2. if the noun has a restrictive (limiting) attribute. It may be expressed by a clause, a prepositional phrase, by the words *all, whole, very, right, left, wrong, only, one, opposite, main, last, next (following), same*, by ordinal numerals, by the superlative degree of adjectives.

- **You are the man we are looking for.**
We got into the wrong train.
He is the only person for the position.
The second performance was a sensational success.

3. if the noun was already mentioned.

- **Three little kittens lost their mittens...**
The three little kittens they found the mittens.

4. with unique objects or notions. They are: *the sun, the moon, the earth, the world, the universe, the horizon, the equator, the south, the north, the west, the east, the globe, the Milky Way, the Cosmos, the hemisphere.*

- **The moon moves round the earth.**
He sailed round the world.

But if these nouns are preceded by descriptive attributes the indefinite article may be used.

- **We all hope to see a better world.**
The sun shone in an unclouded sky.
I was guided by a full moon.

5. with an adverbial modifier of place to identify the exact place.

- **Jane is in the garden (at the cinema, on the beach, at the door, in the lift, in the South, all over the country).**

The indefinite article is also possible.

- **He was born in a village in the North of Ireland.**
The train stopped at a small station.

6. in a number of idioms like:

- **to make the best of something, to be in the know, to read between the lines, in the light of something, to be on the safe side, if the worst comes to the worst, the long and the short of it.**

THE GENERIC USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

1. A singular countable noun with the definite article may represent a whole class of objects, thus becoming the symbol of that class, the image of it. We mainly find here names of animals, plants, professions and occupations, collective nouns denoting social groups. Grammar terms are also often used generically.

- **The ant is industrious.**
The violet is a lovely flower.
The true botanist knows a tree as soon as he sees it.

The article is a word specifying the noun.

Sometimes it is possible to use the indefinite article to denote any representative of the class.

- **A violet is a lovely flower. A dog is a good friend.**

But the indefinite article is not permissible when **invention, genre, a phenomenon** is meant.

- **The telephone was invented by Bell.**
The topic of our lesson today will be the verb.
The tragedy and the comedy first appeared in Greece.
2. The nouns MAN, WOMAN, CHILD used in a generic sense, take no article.
- **Now I know what man is capable of.**
Man needs something for the sake of which to live. Man, woman, child — these are eternal notions.

Articles with the Names of Meals

To this group of nouns belong: *breakfast, brunch, lunch, dinner, supper, tea*.

1. When these nouns are used in their abstract meaning denoting a process of taking food, or are associated with time, they are used with out any article:

- **to have (take, prepare, serve, cook) dinner, breakfast, lunch, supper;**
- **to go to dinner, to be at dinner (lunch); to return by (before, after) supper;**
- **Lunch is at two p.m. Dinner is ready (served, laid).**
We'll discuss it after tea. I'll have a meeting before lunch.

2. The indefinite article is used when names of meals are modified by descriptive attributes.

- **You can get a hot supper here. We had a late breakfast.**
It's not a very fancy lunch, I'm afraid.

3. The definite article is found with names of meals if there is a situation, a context, a restrictive attribute, or if the food itself is meant.

- **The dinner you cooked was marvelous.**
How much did you pay for the supper?
I must go to the kitchen and have a look at the dinner.

4. Sometimes names of meals become countable nouns denoting:

- a) **a party** (both articles may be used):
- **We had a dinner last night. Many celebrities came to the dinner.**
They met at an official lunch.
Have you received the invitation to the dinner?

b) a **portion** (the indefinite article expresses oneness):

- **I have not enough money to buy a supper.
A set-dinner is rather cheap.**

The Use of Articles with Material Nouns

1. Material uncountable nouns used in a general sense take no article and have no plural form.

- **Food is something we cannot do without. There is cold juice in the jug.**

2. The definite article is used if the noun is clear from the situation or the context or if there is some limitation.

- **The food she cooked was uneatable.
The bread is on the table.
Wasn't the cake delicious?**

3. Some uncountable material nouns can become countable and express different sorts, kinds, portions. Here belong the following nouns:

beer, cheese, coffee, detergent, food, jam, meat, medicine, perfume, soup, tea, whisky, wine, wood.

- **— Which wines are produced in this region? — A dry red wine and a rose. My Granny makes a very fine jam. She makes four jams every year.
— Want a beer? — Two teas, please.
There are four soups on the menu today.**

The Use of Articles with Uncountable Abstract Nouns

1. Uncountable abstract nouns used in a general sense take no article.

- **When in distress people look for friendship.
I've come to you for help. Love isn't measured by words.**

2. Uncountable nouns may become countable if they denote **kinds** or **special aspects** of the notion which they denote.

- **A dull anger rose in his chest.
A strange fear overcame me.
Your fears are ungrounded.**

3. No article is used if abstract nouns are modified by such attributes as *modern, English, French, real, authentic, symbolic, Soviet, proletarian, medieval, ancient, contemporary.*

- **French poetry, modern art, contemporary science, authentic literature**

The definite article is used if there is a limiting attribute.

- **The French poetry of the 19th century.
the Russian art of that period**

4. Some uncountable nouns are never used with the indefinite article. They are mostly nouns of verbal character denoting actions, activi-

ty, processes, such as: *information, news, advice, progress, work, weather, money, assistance, permission*. They never take the indefinite article and agree with the verb only in the singular.

- **It's good advice, I'll follow it. Your news is good.
It's excellent weather today.
There is big money in this business.**

5. In the set-phrase *in all weathers* the noun *weather* is in the plural.

- **She works in her garden in all weathers.**

Mind that in Modern English the plural form **monies** is widely used in the meaning of *средства финансирования, различные виды валют*.

- **What monies circulate in this country?
The project received community monies.
Many people wonder where public monies go.**

The Use of Articles with Nouns Denoting Parts of the Day and Seasons

This group includes the nouns: *day, night, morning, evening, noon, afternoon, midnight, dawn, dusk, twilight, sunrise, sunset, daytime, nightfall, winter, spring, summer* and *autumn*.

1. These nouns are very often treated as abstract nouns. No article is used with reference to parts of the day or of the year, light or darkness, as in:

- **Day broke. Evening came. Night fell. Winter set in.
If Winter comes, can Spring be far behind?
Winter eats what summer provides.**

2. When these nouns have a descriptive attribute the indefinite article is used:

- **We were having tea in my room on a cold January afternoon.**

But no article is used if these nouns are modified by such adjectives as *early, late, real, broad, high*.

- **It was high noon. It was broad day.
It was early spring (late autumn, etc.)**

3. The definite article may occur with such words if they are clear from the situation, or context, or if there is some limitation.

- **We watched the sunrise from the balcony.
The evening was calm. The winter is severe this year. It happened on the morning of April 12th.**

4. In some prepositional phrases either the definite article or no article may be found.

a) the definite article is used in the following phrases:

- **in the morning, in the evening, in the daytime, in the afternoon, in the night, in the winter**

b) no article is used with these nouns after the prepositions *at, by, about, past, before, after, towards, till (until)*:

- **at night, at dawn, by day, by night, by noon, by midnight, past noon, after sun set, till morning**

c) there is no article in the following phrases:

- **all day (long), ail night (through); day after day; day in, day out; from morning till night; (to work) day and night; in the dead of night; in the dead of winter.**

But we say: *all through the night* and *all through the day*.

The Use of Articles with Geographic(al) Names

1. Names of *continents, countries, regions, cities, towns, and villages* are as a rule used without any article.

- **Europe, France, California, Rome, Yalta, Sosnovka**

No article is used either when these nouns have such attributes as *north(ern), south(ern), ancient, old, central*.

- **Central America, South-East Asia, old England, ancient Rome**

Some of these nouns are traditionally used with the definite article, for example:

- a) *countries* — **the USA, the Netherlands, (the) Sudan;**
- b) *provinces* — **the Crimea, the Caucasus, the Ruhr, the Transvaal, the Antarctic, the Midlands, the Lake District;**
- c) *cities* — **the Hague;**
- d) *streets* — **the Wall Street, the Strand, the Mall.**

2. Names of *streets, parks and squares* are generally used without any article.

- **Oxford Street, Hyde Park, Trafalgar Square, Manez Square.**

3. Names of *oceans, seas, channels, canals, falls, rivers and lakes* usually take the definite article.

- **the Pacific (ocean), the Adriatic (sea), the English Channel, the Panama Canal, (the) Niagara Falls, the Volga, the Baikal, the Ontario, the Moskva-River, the River Thames**

When names of lakes are preceded by the noun **lake** (which is often the case), no article is used.

- **Lake Baikal, Lake Ontario, Lake Omo**

4. Names of *mountain chains* and *groups of islands* are used with the definite article.

- **the Alps, the Urals, the Philippines, the Bermuda Triangle**

5. Names of *separate mountain peaks* and *separate islands* are used without any article.

- **Elbrus, Everest, Cuba, Madagascar, Barbados, Bermuda**

6. Names of *deserts* generally take the definite article.
 - **the Sahara, the Gobi, the Kara-Kum, the Kalahari**
7. Geographic names that generally don't take any article may be used:
 - a) with the definite article when there is a limiting attribute:
 - **In 'Ivanhoe' Walter Scott described the England of the Middle Ages.**
 - b) with the indefinite article when there is a descriptive attribute:
 - **It was a new Russia that he found on his return.**
8. The definite article is used in the combinations of the type:
 - **the city of New York, the Cape of Good Hope, the Lake of Geneva, the village of Dubrovo**

The Use of Articles with Proper Names

1. There is no article with names of *universities* and *colleges*:
 - **Moscow University, Oxford University, Trinity College.**
 2. Names of *theatres, museums, picture galleries, concert halls, cinemas, clubs* and *hotels* are used with the definite article:
 - **the Bolshoi Theatre, the Opera House, the British Museum, the National Gallery, the Forum, the Continental Hotel.**
 3. Names of *ships* and *boats* are used with the definite article:
 - **the Titanic, the Sedov.**
 4. Names of *newspapers* are generally used with the definite article:
 - **the Times, the Observer, the Financial Times, the Sun.**
- Names of *magazines* as a rule take no article (though it is possible):
- **Times, House Beautiful, Punch, the Spectator.**
5. Names of *months* and *days of the week* are usually used without any article:
 - **January, February, Monday, Tuesday.**

Compare: **We met on Friday. (Мы встретились в пятницу (прошлую)).**
We met on a Friday. (Мы встретились в одну из пятниц).
 6. Names of *organizations* and *political parties* are used with the definite article:
 - **the Navy, the Army, the Liberal Party, the London City Council.**

But: **Parliament, Congress.**
 7. Names of *languages* are used without any article unless the noun **language** is mentioned:
 - **English, French, Japanese.**

But: **the English (French, Japanese) language.**

The Use of Articles with Names of Persons

1. Generally no article is used with *names of persons* as they point out individuals:

- **Tom, Mary, Mrs. Wilson, Mr. Robinson, Ms. Loveday.**

No article is used either if names of persons are modified by such descriptive attributes as *little, old, dear, poor, honest*, with which they form close units:

- **Lucky Jim, Old Jolyon, Poor Smith, Dear Old Emily.**

2. We find no article with the names of members of a family (*Mother, Father, Aunt, Uncle, Baby, Cook, Nurse, Grandmother*) when they are treated as proper names by the members of the family. In this case such nouns are usually written with a capital letter:

- **Mother is still resting. Is Nurse back?**

3. There is no article with nouns in direct address:

- **— How is my wife, doctor? — Don't worry, sir, she's fine.
Well, young man, how are things?**

4. The definite article is used with a name in the plural to indicate the whole family:

- **the Forsytes, the Dobsons, the Peacocks.**

5. The indefinite article is used to indicate one member of a family or a certain person having the name in question:

- **She was a true Dobson. A Mr. Parker to see you.**

6. Sometimes names of persons change their meaning and become common countable nouns if:

a) the name of *a scientist, a painter, inventor or manufacturer* is used to denote his work:

- **a Webster, a Goya, a Ford, a Faberge.**

b) the characteristic qualities of the bearer of the name (but not the person himself) are meant:

- **This fellow's really a Jack-of all trades.
Mozart was called the Raphael of music.**

Articles with Nouns in Apposition

1. As a rule, a countable noun in the singular in the function of an apposition takes the indefinite article (its classifying meaning is strongly felt in this case).

- **'I'm sure you know Mr. Hard, a professor at McGill,' she reminded.
My friend, a student, joined the club.**

2. The definite article is used with a noun in apposition when:

- a) it refers to a well-known person:
- **Pushkin, the great Russian poet, was very fond of autumn.**
- b) it has a limiting attribute or is clear from the situation:
- **He had left his hat on the table, the tall hat, in which he always went to church.**
It's Mr. Hooks, the newspaper editor, he wants to see you.
3. If the apposition precedes the proper name it takes the definite article.
- **The painter Turner, the composer Britten, the student Ognev.**

4. Nouns in apposition may be used without any article if they denote a *position, rank, state, post or occupation*, which is, as a rule, unique, and can be occupied by only one person at a time. Here belong such nouns as: *president, prime-minister, head, rector, director, dean, manager, chief, principal* etc.

The noun in this case usually has an 'of-phrase' attribute:

- **Mr. Jackson, superintendant of the school, was an old man.**
Mr. Dodson, director of the theatre, was an actor as well.

But we use the article to denote a person himself:

- **The Prime-Minister made an announcement yesterday.**
The Dean has come. The president is in Texas now.

5. When nouns denoting titles, *military ranks* or *posts* are followed by a proper name no article is used:

- **Doctor Smith, Professor Jones, Colonel Pickering, Queen Elisabeth, King John, Sir William, Admiral Nelson.**

Articles with the Nouns *bed, school, town, college, hospital, jail, market, table*

1. There are a number of countable nouns in English which are often used without any article, as they change their meanings and become uncountable and denote process rather than a concrete thing:

- **to go to school — to be in full-time education,**
to be in hospital — to be a patient, i. e., you are there because you are ill,
to send someone to prison — to imprison a person for doing something wrong,
to go to bed — to go to sleep,
to go to church — to go to pray,
to be at table — to have some meal,
But: to be at the table — to study, to write or to read.

Compare: He was sent to prison for five years, (he was a prisoner)

She went to the prison to visit him. (she went into the building)

2. The noun **town** used in prepositional phrases, doesn't take any article when it denotes the nearest big centre of population as opposed to **the country** (also when the town we live in is meant).

- **I'll be out of town next week. We had lunch in town. In winter we prefer to live in town, not in the country.**

3. Either article can be used with these nouns when they denote concrete objects (buildings).

- **There is a new hospital in the town, not far from the church.
Let's put the coffee table opposite the bed.**

The Use of Articles in *With-, Like-, In-*phrases

1. A countable noun in the singular generally takes the indefinite article in adverbial and attributive phrases, introduced by the words:

- **a) *In:* in a hurry
in a whisper
in a loud (low) voice
But: in loud voices**
- **b) *With:* with a look (nod, smile, yawn)**
- **c) *Like:* She swims like a fish.
She sings like a bird.
He works like a demon.
He sleeps like a log.
It seems like a dream.
But: They behave like children.**
- **d) *As:* She was as happy as a lark.
She was as pretty as a calendar picture. He was as busy as a bee. It was as light as a feather. A change is as good as a rest.**

2. No article is used in these phrases if the noun is uncountable:

- **In (with) surprise, in (with) anger, in fury.
It was as black as night. She was as white as snow.
It was as green as grass. It was as soft as butter.**

The Use of Articles in and with *Of-*phrases

Depending on the context or situation the *of*-phrase may be either, **descriptive** or **limiting** to the head-noun.

1. The definite article is used with the head-noun if this head-noun denotes part of the whole, expressed by the *of*-phrase.

- **the top of a/the hill, the bottom of a/the lake,
the end/beginning of a/the story,
the figure (profile, shadow, face) of a/the man,
the roof of a/the house,
the middle (depth, width) of a/the river**

2. If the noun in the *of*-phrase is used in a general sense (in the plural mostly) it takes no article. The head-noun may take either article. The definite article is used according to the situation, the indefinite one expresses oneness.

- a/the set of stories
- a/the box of sweets
- a/the flock of birds

- a/the party of people
- a/the box of matches
- a/the team of players

3. If the noun in the of-phrase is a material or an abstract one, no article is used with it, and the head-noun may be used either with the indefinite or with the definite article.

- a/the stick of chalk
- a/the bar of chocolate
- a/the block of ice
- a/the item of news
- a/the article of furniture
- a/the strip of land
- a/the heap of rubbish
- a/the word of advice
- a/the sense of humour
- a/the breath of air

The Use of Articles with Some Set-phrases and Free Combinations

1. No article is used in set-phrases with the prepositions **from ... to**, in which we find two different nouns:

- **from head to foot, from top to toe, from top to bottom, from beginning to end.**

2. We find no article in set-phrases with the same noun connected by different prepositions:

- **hand in hand, arm in arm, shoulder to shoulder, word for word, side by side, face to face, step by step, line by line.**

3. The article is not used in free combinations in which the same noun is repeated after the prepositions **from ... to**:

- **from tree to tree, from street to street, from word to word, from day to day.**

The number of nouns thus used is practically unlimited.

4. There is generally no article with homogeneous parts of a sentence going in pairs:

- **horse and rider, husband and wife, lock and key, mother and child.**

5. A considerable number of nouns have no article when they are used in adverbial prepositional phrases:

- **by tube, by train, by plane, by boat, by bus, by air (sea), by post, by accident, by chance, by mistake, at hand, off hand, in person, on deck, on foot, on tip toes, at sea, on hand, on leave, on business, on holiday.**

The Adjective

The adjective is a part of speech which modifies the noun. Adjectives can express **qualities** (large, modern, quiet), **physical and emotional states** (cold, busy, friendly, happy), **origin** (American, Asian), **opinions** (excel-

lent, fantastic, cool), **frequency** (weekly, daily, regular). According to their morphological composition adjectives can be **simple** (young, new, fresh), **derived** (careful, woody, rainy), **compound** (well-known, much-praised, man-made).

All adjectives fall into two groups — **qualitative** and **relative**. Qualitative adjectives denote properties of a substance directly (great, calm, gold, beautiful). Relative adjectives describe properties of a substance through relation to material (woolen, wooden, golden) to place (Italian, European), to time (ancient, contemporary).

Compare:

- **Sun eclipses are rare. Sunny weather makes me happy. Everybody admires her golden hair. This gold watch is a piece of art.**

When two or more adjectives come before a noun, the usual order is: **Value — Size — Age — Shape — Colour — Origin — Material — Opinion — Temperature**

- **a pretty little wooden house (value + size + material)**
a beautiful old red London bus (value + age + colour + origin)

This word order is not compulsory. Sometimes a short adjective comes before a long one:

- **a soft, comfortable chair; a happy, peaceful home;**
a tall, handsome man; a bright, cheerful smile.

The adjective **big** generally comes before **value** adjectives:

- **a big bad wolf, a big tall building,**
a big handsome man, a big fat woman.

Adjectives are used in the sentence **in the functions of an attribute or of a predicative:**

- **He always drinks cold milk. He is cold and miserable.**

Adjectives denoting temporary states are used only predicatively: **ill, well, unwell**; as well as adjectives with the prefix *a-*: **afraid, alike, alive, alone, asleep, awake, aware (of), ashamed.**

- **She doesn't look very well today.**
— I feel faint. — Are you ill?
We are aware that he is ashamed.

Adjectives have degrees of comparison: **the comparative** and **the superlative** degree. The adjective expressing some quality without comparison is said to be in **the positive degree**. An equal degree is expressed with the help of the conjunctions: **as ... as, not as (so) ... as** in negative sentences.

- **She is as old as I am.**
He isn't as clever as she is.

The comparative and the superlative degrees of comparison are formed in the synthetic, analytic and suppletive ways.

The synthetic degrees of comparison are formed by adding the inflexion **-er, -est** (fine — finer — finest) to the adjectives having one or two syllables. The more recent trend is: happy — more happy — most happy.

The analytic degrees are formed by means of **more** and **most** (difficult — more difficult — most difficult).

Several adjectives form their degrees of comparison irregularly, in the **suppletive way** when some other words are used to build up the forms.

- **good — better — best, bad — worse — worst**
little — less — least, many/much — more — most

The following adjectives have double degrees of comparison:

- **far** — **farther — farthest** (with reference to distance)
 — **further — furthest** (with reference to distance, as well as in figurative use *the next to come*)
- **old** — **older — oldest** (with reference to age)
 — **elder — eldest** (family relations)
- **near** — **nearer-nearest** (with reference to distance)
 — **next** (time), **the next** (order) e.g. **next year, the next step**
- **late** — **later — latest** (with reference to time)
 — **the latter** (the former) — **last** (time), **the last** (order)

Notes:

1. When you compare one thing or person to other members of the group, you should use the words **other** or **else** with the comparative degree. Thus you can't say, 'You are smarter than any person in this room.' You must say, 'You are smarter than any **other person** (or **any one else**) in this room.' Remember that when you use the comparative degree, you compare two things; when you use the superlative degree, you compare three or more things.

- **Both examples are good, but I think that the first one is better.** (two examples are compared)
- **All the examples are good, but I think that the first one is the best,** (you compare several examples)

2. Some adjectives called absolute adjectives, describe qualities which mean 100 percent of the quality involved. Thus we can't use them in the comparative or in the superlative degree:

- **middle, dead, immaculate, pregnant, supreme, left, empty, perfect, round, wooden, medical, full, perpendicular, square, unique.**

For example, a glass of water cannot be fuller or fullest or most **full**.

We can show the difference in degrees by using such words as **almost** or **nearly**. If you want to compare these adjectives you should use **more/less nearly** or **most/least nearly**:

- **The flowers are nearly dead from the cold.**
Those over there are more nearly dead.

3. Remember the adjectives ending in *-ly*:

- **daily practice** **a lively child** **an early bird**
friendly people **a homely dog** **a lovely time**

The Numeral

I. The Numeral is a part of speech denoting **number** or **order**. Numerals may be used in the sentence in the function of:

1. an attribute

- **Ten people are wanted for the job.**
The second song was a great hit.

2. a predicative

- **My son is twenty and my daughter is twenty-two.**

3. the subject, an object or an adverbial modifier when substantivized

- **Seven is a lucky number.**
The two left the office early.
We often invited them to make a four at tennis.
I am teaching the child to count by tens.

II. Numerals fall into **cardinals** and **ordinals**.

1. **Cardinal numerals** are used in counting and answer the question

How many?

- **She has three questions to ask. He caught four fish yesterday.**
There are ten students in my class. John has two cars.

All cardinal numerals may become **substantivized** and turn into nouns.

- **The four played a game of cards.**
Hundreds went to the show.

Mind the following:

- **two million citizens** *but* **millions of citizens**
three thousand children *but* **thousands of children**
five hundred people *but* **hundreds of people**

We count by **tens, hundreds, thousands**; also by **the hundred, by the thousand**.

2. **Ordinal numerals** denote order or position and answer the question *Which?* Most of them are formed from cardinal numerals by means of the suffix **-th** (*sixth, seventh, etc.*, except *first, second, and third*).

Ordinal numerals which modify nouns are usually preceded by the definite article:

- **the first term, the fourth day, the one hundred and twenty-fifth page.**

The indefinite article may also be used. In such cases the meaning is *an additional one, one more*.

- **A third possibility occurred to me.
Soon I'll start learning a second foreign
language. You are like a second family to me.**

They all looked forward to Sundays because then, although, they had exactly the same food, everyone was allowed a second helping.

III. Fractional numbers

In fractional numbers **the numerator** is a cardinal numeral and the **denominator** is an ordinal (used as a noun):

- **two-thirds, three-sixths.**

Decimal fractions: 1.62 = one, point six, two.

IV. The spoken forms of 0

1. nought used in mathematics:

- **0.7 = nought point seven
.07 = point nought seven**

2. zero used in science, for example, in temperatures:

- **-15 °C = minus fifteen degrees or fifteen degrees below zero**

3. o [əv] used in telephone numbers:

- **01 -500-3026 = o one five double o, three o two six**

4. nil or nothing used in scores in such games as football:

- **2-0 = the score was two nothing or two nil.**

V. Roman numerals

1. Books use various numbering systems, including Roman numerals:

1. II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, etc. for 1-10.

2. M = 1000, D = 500, C = 100, L = 50.

3. Dates on monuments are also sometimes written in Roman, e. g.

1985 would be MCMLXXXV, where M = 1000, CM = 1000-100 = 900,
L = 50, XXX = 30 (i. e. 3 x 10), and V = 5.

Notes:

a) In writing, spell out cardinal and ordinal numerals that can be written in one or two words. Always spell out numerals that open the sentence.

- **There were twenty pages in the essay.
Five hundred and seventy people attended the conference.**

b) Remember the punctuation marks when writing a sum of money:

- **2,123.56 = two thousand one hundred twenty three dollars
and fifty six cents**

The Pronoun

The Pronoun is a part of speech which points out things and qualities of things without naming them directly like nouns and adjectives do. Pronouns have a very general, relative character. Everyone can use the pronoun I and it will denote different people; the pronoun you denotes a person spoken to; the pronouns **he, she, it** denote people or objects being discussed. Due to their general and relative character pronouns are widely used in different languages as stand-ins (substitutes) for nouns.

In the sentence pronouns function either as nouns or as adjectives and can be classified into **noun-pronouns** and **adjective-pronouns**. In the sentence noun-pronouns have the function of the subject, object, and of the predicative.

- **I am a student.** (*subject*)
It's me. (*predicative*)
Explain it to me. (*object*)
You should do it. (*object*)

Adjective-pronouns cannot function independently, they modify the nouns they are used with.

- **My life is hard, but still this is my life.**
I like some pop-music.
I don't like any rock music.

Some pronouns have **gender, case** and **number**.

Gender: he — masculine; she — feminine; it — neuter. They — refers to all of them in the plural.

Case: only personal pronouns have cases — **the Nominative Case** and **the Objective Case**.

I — me, **he** — him, **she** — her, **they** — them, **we** — us.

Number in the system of pronouns can be expressed in different ways:

I — we; **he, she, it** — they; **this** — these; **that** — those; **one** — ones; **other**— others; **yourself**— yourselves.

Some pronouns are always singular in meaning (*each, every, (a) little, much, everything, something, nothing*). Others are only plural (*many, (a) few, both, several*). Many pronouns have one form for the singular and for the plural meaning (*all, any, some, who, which*).

- **All is well. All are here.**
Who is this boy? Who are those girls?

Pronouns are very numerous. According to their meaning all pronouns fall into the following groups: **personal, possessive, indefinite, demonstrative, reflexive, interrogative, relative and conjunctive, reciprocal**.

Personal Pronouns

Personal Pronouns have **two cases** — **the Nominative Case** and **the Objective Case**.

Nominative Case	Objective Case
I	me
he	him
she	her
It	it
we	us
you	you
they	
them	

When a personal pronoun is a subject or a predicative of the sentence, it is used in the Nominative Case in official, formal style.

- **The chairman and I were the speakers that day.**
It was they who founded the society.

In informal, colloquial style the use of the objective case of the personal pronoun has become standard in Modern English.

- **That's her. It was them.**
Hello, is that me you are looking for?

The Objective Case of the personal pronoun is used after such prepositions as **between, up, but** (in the meaning of **except**), **except, without**.

- **The secret was between Bob and me.**
It's up to them, not to us.
But for him, we would not know what to do.

If the pronoun follows **than** or **as** it is always used in the Nominative Case when the verb is used.

- **He is a faster skater than I am.**
She is as intelligent as he is.

But it is more usual to say **me/him, etc.** when there is no verb:

- **You are taller than me.**
He is not as clever as her.

Possessive Pronouns

Possessive Pronouns have **two forms** — **the Conjoint Form** and **the Absolute Form**.

Conjoint Form	Absolute Form
my	mine
his	his
her	hers
its	its
our	ours
your	yours
their	theirs

The conjoint form of the pronoun is always followed by a noun.

- **Your idea is interesting,
His hair is black and shiny.**

The absolute form is used absolutely, without any noun and may have different functions in the sentence.

- **I like that idea of yours.
The car is not his, it's theirs.
Yours is the best essay.
Compare. You scratch my back and I'll scratch yours.**

Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative Pronouns have **number** — the singular and the plural: **it — they, this — these, that — those.**

The general demonstrative meaning of these pronouns is *near and distant reference* in time and space.

This/these identify something near to the speaker; they are associated with *here*.

That/those identify something farther from the speaker; they are associated with *there*.

- **this room — that house; these years — those days.**

Indefinite Pronouns

all	either	other(s)
any	neither	one
another	nothing	plenty
both	no	several
each	none	some

The pronouns **some** and **any** (when used both as noun-pronouns and as adjective-pronouns) indicate indefinite qualities and quantities. Both can be used with all classes of nouns in the singular and in the plural.

1. **Some** usually expresses an indefinite number or amount or indefinite quality.

- **I picked some apples from our tree.**
Now we shall order some nice food.
You must think of some plan.
It happened some ten years ago.

As a rule, **some** is used in affirmative sentences. In interrogative and negative sentences the pronouns **any** or **no** are used. However, **some** remains in interrogative and negative sentences when the question or negation does not concern the part of the sentence containing **some**.

- **May I offer you some tea?**
Shall we invite some of your friends too?
I could not find some of my books.
Not all your answers are correct. Some are, some aren't.

2. **Any** is used in interrogative and negative sentences instead of **some**. **Any** may be used as an adverbial modifier of degree in the sentence.

- **Is there any way out? There can't be any.**
He isn't any better today.

Any in affirmative sentences means *it does not matter who, what or which* and corresponds to the Russian *любой, всякий, какой угодно*.

- **Come any day you like. Any child knows it.**
— What book shall I give you? — Any will do.

3. The pronoun **one** is used only with countable nouns and has the plural form — **ones** and the possessive case — **one's**.

The pronoun **one** is used:

- a) to stand for people:
 - **One should be careful in such matters.**
- b) to express some vague time:
 - **One day I'll tell you my secret.**
- c) to avoid the repetition of the same noun (as a word-substitute):
 - **My house is the first one on the left.**
- d) with the meaning of *only* or *single*:
 - **Your father is the one man to help me.**
This is the one way to do it.

The Pronouns *Much* and *Many*, *Little* and *Few*

Much means *a large amount* and modifies **only uncountable nouns**.

- **I haven't much time to spare.**
You needn't bring much luggage.

Many means *a large number* and modifies **only countable nouns** in the plural.

- **He has many friends here.**
You haven't made many mistakes this time.

Much and **many** are used mainly in interrogative and negative sentences and in object clauses introduced by *if* or *whether*.

- **Did you have much rain on your holiday?**
She hasn't very much advice to give him.
I wonder if many people will come to the party.

In present-day English **a lot of**, **lots of**, **plenty of**, **a great deal of**, **a large number of**, **a good many**, **a great many** replace **much** and **many** in affirmative sentences.

- **There is a lot of work to do.**
I know lots of girls who go out dancing every Saturday.
A great many mistakes have been made by nearly everybody.

Much and **many** can be used in affirmative sentences:

a) when they are used as subjects or modify the subject of the sentence.

- **Much depends on what he will say.**
Many think he will improve.
Many people think the same.

b) when **much** is used alone as a noun-pronoun in the function of an object.

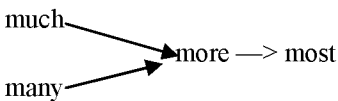
- **My father meant so much to me.**
I would give much to know what the matter is.

c) when **much** and **many** are modified by such adverbs of degree as *so*, *too*, *as* and

how.

- **We've got too many things to do today.**
Sorry, I've given you so much trouble.

The pronouns **much** and **many** have **degrees of comparison**:



The pronouns **little** and **few** are used as noun-pronouns and as adjective-pronouns.

- **Much was said but little was done, (noun-pronoun)**
We have little time this week, (adjective-pronoun)
Few will deny such an evident fact, (noun-pronoun)
I have very few regrets about it. (adjective-pronoun)

Little means *a small amount* and is used with uncountable nouns.

- **I know little of his life.**

Few means *a small number* and can be used with countable nouns in the plural.

- **Few people can face it.**

Both **little** and **few** have a negative implication — they mean *not enough*.

- **Few people would agree to that.**
We have little water.

A **little** and a **few** have a positive meaning. They mean *some, though not much/many*.

- **He earns a little money and can live quite comfortably on it.**
You should have a few things with you.

Compare:

- **I know little about painting. (= almost nothing)**
I know a little about painting. (= something)
There is little change in her. (= almost no change) -**There is a little change in her. (= some change)**
He has few friends here. (= almost none) **He has a few friends here. (= some friends)**

Little and **few** have degrees of comparison:

little —> less —> least

few —> fewer —> fewest

- **Please make less noise.**
The child gives us the least trouble.
There were fewer people at the library today.
Who has made the fewest mistakes?

Self-pronouns

They are: **myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, themselves**. Self-pronouns are either **reflexive** or **emphatic**.

1. A **reflexive pronoun** can be used in the sentence as an object, attribute, predicative, an adverbial modifier.

- **He thinks too much of himself.**
She didn't like that photograph of herself.
David is not quite himself today.
I prefer to stay by myself.

II. The Russian reflexive meaning (-ся, -сь) can be expressed in English by:

1. the verb in the active voice.

- **They met but soon parted.**
She washed, dressed and came downstairs.

2. the verb in the passive voice.

- **The house is being built in the country.**
The text was being translated.

3. the construction *verb + oneself*.

- **His way of expressing himself is rather strange.
Make yourself comfortable and help yourself to the cakes.**

4. phrasal verbs and phraseological units like: to ask for something, to back down, to be back, can't help doing, it goes without saying, *etc.*

- **You are asking for trouble, my boy.
He didn't even take the trouble of phoning us.**

III. An **emphatic self-pronoun** should be placed after the word it emphasises or at the end of the sentence.

- **He himself told me about it. I have thought of it myself.
Life itself proves it. They themselves phoned us.**

The Negative Pronoun *No* and the Negative Particle *Not*

The pronoun *no* is used as an attribute with all classes of nouns both in the singular and in the plural and it's **the only modifier** of the noun, while *not* requires either an article or an indefinite pronoun after it.

- **No drum was heard. — Not a sound came.
No trees could be seen. - Not a leaf stirred.
I will give you no trouble. - Not a soul in sight.**

The pronoun **no** means *not... a*, when modifying a countable noun in the singular.

- **I've no pen with me. = I haven't a pen with me.**

It means *not... any* when modifying a countable noun in the plural or some uncountable nouns.

- **I saw no children in the park. = I didn't see any children in the park.
We had no sugar. = We didn't have any sugar.**

No is usually preferable before the subject.

- **There was no table in the room.
No stars could be seen. There are no comments.**

The Verb

The Verb is a part of speech which denotes a process or a state.

I. According to their meanings and functions in the sentence English verbs are classified into **notional** and **structural verbs**.

Notional verbs always have a lexical meaning of their own and can have an independent function in the sentence.

- **We live in Moscow and love our city.**

Structural verbs cannot have an independent syntactic function in the sentence — they are always closely connected with some other words,

forming a compound predicate (verbal or nominal). **Modal verbs, link verbs, and auxiliary verbs** belong to structural verbs.

A **modal verb** is always accompanied by an infinitive — together they form a **modal predicate**.

- **You must join us. I can do it. You should know better.**

A **link-verb** is followed by a predicative thus forming a **nominal Indicate**.

- **He was a fine mechanic. She seemed quite happy.**
She became famous. The leaves turned yellow.

An **auxiliary verb** is devoid of any lexical meaning. These verbs are: *do, to be, to have, shall, will, should, would*. Combined with a notion-verb they serve to build up analytical forms.

- **We had seen the play before.**
Do you enjoy dancing?
Don't worry. I'll be home before evening.

Polysemantic verbs *have, do, be* may be notional as well as structural words. *Compare:*

- **He has three children, (a notional verb used in the meaning to possess)**
I had to give up smoking. (a structural word: a modal verb denoting obligation, part of a modal predicate)
I have come for your advice. (a structural word: an auxiliary verb which serves to build up an analytical form)

II. Owing to the historical development of the verb system, all English verbs fall into two groups: **regular** and **irregular verbs**.

The regular verbs constitute the largest group. *The Simple Past* and *Participle II* of these verbs are formed by means of the suffix **-ed** added to the stem of the verb:

- **live — lived — lived; play — played — played.**

The irregular verbs (they are about 250 in number) form their *Simple Past* and *Participle II* according to some fixed traditional patterns:

- **wear—wore — worn; leave — left — left; send — sent — sent.**

III. There are four basic verb-forms in English. They are:

the Infinitive	work	rise	do	come
the Simple Past	worked	rose	did	came
Participle II	worked	risen	done	come
Participle I	working	rising	doing	coming

IV. The forms of the verb may be of two different kinds — **synthetic** and **analytical forms**.

Synthetic forms are built up by a change in the word itself:

- **I find, I found.**
I came, saw and won.

Analytical forms consist of two or more components.

- **He has done his duty.**
You are being difficult today.

The first component is an auxiliary verb which has no lexical meaning — it expresses only the grammatical meaning (the third person singular, the indicative mood, the active voice, a fulfilled action). The second component is a notional verb which is the bearer of the lexical meaning.

Thus an analytical form consists of two or more words — a structural word and a notional word — which form a very close, inseparable unit.

V. The English verb has **finite** (complete) and **non-finite** (incomplete) forms.

The verb in its **finite form** possesses the morphological categories of **person, number, tense, aspect, voice** and **mood**. Its syntactical function is that of the predicate of the sentence.

The non-finite forms (also called **Verbals**) are **the Infinitive, the Gerund, Participle I** and **Participle II**.

Verbals do not function as true verbs. Their syntactical function in the sentence may be different because verbals can be used as nouns, adjectives, and adverbs. They can not have any morphological categories, and can not function as the predicate of the sentence, only as part of it.

VI. The English verb has the grammatical category of **tense, aspect, voice** and **mood**.

Tense is the form of the verb which indicates the time of the action. The category of tense in English is made up by a set of forms opposed to each other in referring the events, or states to the present, past or future.

Aspect is the form of the verb which serves to express the manner in which the action is performed. It is presented in English by the opposition of **the continuous aspect** and **the common aspect**.

Continuous Aspect	Common Aspect
is speaking was speaking will be speaking has been speaking	speaks spoke will speak has spoken

Voice is the form of the verb which shows the relation between the action and its subject. There are two voices in English: **the active voice** and **the passive voice**. The verb in the active voice shows that the subject

is the doer of the action; the verb in the passive voice shows that the subject is acted upon.

Mood is the form of the verb which shows in what relation to reality is the action expressed by the speaker.

In present-day English the category of **mood** is made up by a set of forms presenting the events **as real facts, problematic actions or as something absolutely unreal**. Accordingly there are direct and indirect moods in English. The Direct Moods are the Indicative Mood and the Imperative Mood.

1. **The Indicative Mood** represents actions **as real facts**. It's a *Fact Mood*.
 - **We are students of the English department.**
2. **The Imperative Mood** expresses **commands and requests**. It's a *Will Mood*.
 - **Come over there. Relax! Cool down!**

The Present Tenses (the Simple Present, the Present Progressive, the Present Perfect, the Present Perfect Progressive)

All the present tenses refer to the actions which they denote to the present, that is to the time of speaking.

THE SIMPLE PRESENT

I. The Simple Present is formed with the help of the infinitive with out the particle *to*. In the third person singular it has the suffix *-s/-es*. The interrogative and the negative forms are built up analytically, by means of the auxiliary verb **do in the Simple Present and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle to**.

- — **Do you work? — I do not work.**
— **Does he work? — He does not work.**

II. The Simple Present is used:

1. to state simple facts, habitual actions in the present.
 - **I live in Tula but every weekend I go to Moscow.**
On Sundays we usually stay at home, sometimes we go to the country.
2. to state laws of nature, universal truths, in proverbs and sayings.
 - **It snows in winter and it rains in summer in this country.**
The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.
Still waters run deep. Old love doesn't rust.
3. to denote a succession of actions going on at the moment of speaking.
 - **She comes in, takes off her coat, flings it on the chair and walks over to the mirror.**

4. in subordinate clauses of time, condition and concession instead of the Simple Future after the conjunctions **when, till, until, as soon as, before, after, if, unless, in case, on condition that, provided, even if.**

- **if he gets a good rest, he'll be his usual self tomorrow.**
I'll see him before I go to bed. Do it as soon as you are through with your duties. Even if he hates me, I shall never do him any harm.

Note: In object clauses introduced by the conjunctions **when** and **if** the Simple Future is used to denote future actions:

- **I don't know when she will come.**
I'm not sure if she will come at all.
I wonder if they will come on time.

5. to express an action going on at the moment of speaking with non-progressive verbs like **believe, belong, understand, need, realize, remember, prefer.**

- **I believe I understand her.**
It sounds great.
Yes, I remember her well.

6. with the verbs **to forget, to hear, to be told,** to denote past actions.

- **I forget your telephone number. Will you say it again, please?**
I hear you are leaving for England,
We are told she returned from England last week.

The following adverbs of indefinite time are the signals of this tense:

always	occasionally
as a rule	often
ever	regularly
every day (week ...)	seldom
generally	sometimes
never	usually

THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I. **The Present Progressive** is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb *to be* in the **Simple Present and Participle I** of the notional verb.

- **He is working. We are resting. I am thinking of you!**

The same auxiliary verb is used in the interrogative and the negative forms.

- **Are you working? Is he working?**
We are not working. He is not working.

II. The Present Progressive is used to express:

1. an action going on at the moment of speaking.

- **Look, how happily they are playing!**
— **What are you doing? — I am cleaning these silver spoons.**

Note: Stative non-progressive verbs denoting physical perceptions, emotions, mental abilities are not usually used in the Present Progressive. The Simple Present is used instead:

- **Do you see that boy? I understand you. Do you recognize me?**

a) some stative verbs can be used in the progressive form when they change their meaning. For example, the verb **to be** in the Present Progressive expresses certain state or quality peculiar for the person at the given moment. Such usage can be found only in highly emotional contexts.

- **We are being fools to go there by ourselves!**
You are being rude to this girl. Aren't you forgetting your manners? Look where you go. You're being careless!

b) the verbs of sense and mental perception (*see, hear, understand*) are used to express surprise, doubt, disbelief (especially in questions).

- **What am I hearing here?**
I can't believe what I am seeing!
Am I understanding you correctly?

2. an action going on at the present period of time.

- **Are you writing a new book?**
No cakes for me. I'm slimming.
She's spending a good deal on dresses of late.

3. actions generally characterising the person denoted by the subject, bringing out the person's typical traits. Such sentences are emotionally coloured, expressing irritation, disapproval, praise, *etc.* In such sentences the adverbials **always** or **constantly** are obligatory.

- **You're always showing off!**
She's constantly complaining that she has so much to do.

4. actions which will take place in the near future due to one's previous decision. The action is regarded as something definitely settled (mostly verbs of motion such as *to move, to come, to go, to leave, to return, to start* are used).

- **He's returning on Monday. The boat is sailing next week.**

Note: The Present Progressive of the verb *to go* + *infinitive* is commonly used to denote future fulfillment of the present situation:

- **I'm going to study Italian. It is going to snow.**
She's going to have a baby.

5. an action in progress which is simultaneous with some other action or state denoted by the verb in the Simple Present. It is used in adverbial clauses of time and condition after the conjunctions **when, while, as long as, if, in case, unless.**

- **I never talk when I am working.**
You must always watch the traffic lights when you're crossing the street. Try not to make much noise when you are stirring your tea.

THE PRESENT PERFECT

The **Present Perfect** is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb *to have* in the **Simple Present and Participle II** of the notional verb.

- **I have worked. He has worked. We have met at last.**

The same auxiliary verb is used to form the interrogative and the negative forms.

- **Have you worked? He has not worked.**

The **Present Perfect** is used in **present time contexts**, i. e. conversations, newspaper and radio reports, lectures and letters. It is not found in narration where reference is usually made to past events. The Present Perfect may be **resultative (exclusive)** and **durative (inclusive)**.

I. The Present Perfect Resultative (Exclusive) is used to denote a completed action connected with the present through its result.

- **I've bought a good dictionary.**
You can't see her, she has gone home.

The Present Perfect may be found with certain adverbs of indefinite time and frequency such as **ever, just, already, before, never, not... yet, lately, of late, so far.**

- **Have you heard of him lately?**
I haven't even had coffee yet.
We' haven't done much so far.

Notes:

a) The Present Perfect is possible with adverbial modifiers of time that denote a period of time which is not over yet, e.g. **today, this morning, this week, this month, this year.** But if the period is over, the Simple Past is used.

- — **Did you read the article in *The Times* this morning?** (*it is no longer morning*)
— **No, I haven't had time to look at the paper today,** (*today is not over yet*)

b) In special questions introduced by **where, how, who, what, why, what... for** both the Present Perfect and the Past Simple are possible. The choice of tense in such cases is situational.

Compare:

- **Why have you done this to me?** (*I'm upset*)
Why did you do this? (*at a certain past moment*)

In *when*-questions only the Simple Past is used.

- **When did you go there? When did it happen?**

c) The Present Perfect is used in adverbial clauses of time introduced, by the conjunctions **when, before, as soon as, till and until** to stress the completion of the action of the subordinate clause before the action of the principal one.

- **We'll see about it when you've had your tea.**

I can tell you whether the machine is good when I have tried it.

II. The Present Perfect Durative (Inclusive)

1. It expresses an action which began before the moment of speaking and continues into it. This grammatical meaning is mainly expressed by the Present Perfect Progressive. However the Present Perfect Durative is found with verbs that cannot be used in the progressive form. The whole period of the duration of the action may be marked by prepositional phrases with **for**. The starting point of the action is indicated by the adverb **since**.

- **I've been here ever since I came to Paris.**

We've known this man for years.

He has had a beard for as long as I can remember.

The Present Perfect Durative is preferred to Present Perfect Progressive in negative sentences when it is the action itself that is completely negated (the Inclusive Present Perfect Tense).

- **I haven't driven for a long time.**

I haven't worn evening dresses for ages!

2. It may also express an action that began in the past, continued for some time and has just stopped (the Present Perfect Resultative).

- **I have been so anxious to meet you.**

We haven't seen each other for years!

3. Care should be taken to distinguish between the use of **the Present Perfect** and **the Past Indefinite** when the period of duration is expressed by a prepositional phrase with **for**. If the period of duration belongs to the past, the Past Indefinite should be used. If the period of duration comes close to the moment of speaking or includes it, the Present Perfect is used.

- **'I have lived like this for two years,' he said, 'and I can't stand it any more.**
- **I teach history at a secondary school. I went to University here for four years and got a degree.**
- **Yesterday he waited for her for two hours but she didn't turn up.**

THE PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE

I. The Present Perfect Progressive is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb *to be* in the Present Perfect and the *ing-form* of the notional verb (Participle I).

- **I have been working.**

She has been reading.

In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject.

- **Have you been working?**
Has she been reading?

In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

- **We have not been reading.**
They have not been working.

In spoken English the contracted forms are used: **I've, he's, she's, it's, we've, you've, they've, hasn't, and haven't.**

II. This tense is found in present time contexts, i. e. conversations, newspapers and radio reports, lectures and letters. It has two uses — the Present Perfect Progressive **Durative (Inclusive)** and the Present Perfect Progressive **Resultative (Exclusive)**.

1. **The Present Perfect Progressive (Inclusive)** serves to express an action in progress which began before the moment of speaking and continues into it. In this case either **the starting point of the action** or **the period of time** during which it has been in progress is usually indicated.

- **It has been raining ever since midnight, and it's still drizzling. I've been writing since morning and so I shall soon stop.**

All these forms are translated into Russian by the Present Tense, imperfective (*дождь идет, я пишу*).

2. **The Present Perfect Progressive (Exclusive)** serves to express an action which was in progress quite recently and which in one way or another affects the present situation, explains the state of things at the present moment. In this case, as a rule, there is no indication of time.

- **Don't tell your mother what I've been saying. I've been talking to your boyfriend and I like him. Come in! I've been looking for you.**

The Present Perfect Progressive can be used with some verbs which are normally not used in the progressive forms so as to express great intensity of feelings in highly emotional contexts.

- **I've been loving you ever since I first saw you!**
Really, I've been wanting to come, I've been dreaming about it! We've been feeling so lonely of late!

The Past Tenses (the Simple Past, the Past Progressive, the Past Perfect, the Past Perfect Progressive)

THE SIMPLE PAST

I. **The Simple Past** is a synthetic form, built up by a change in the word itself.

- **I worked. He sang. They won.**

But the interrogative and the negative forms are built up analytically, by means of the auxiliary verb *to do* in the **Simple Past** and the infinitive of the **notional verb without** the particle *to*.

- — **Did you work? — We did not work.**
— **Did they do it? — No, they did not do it.**

II. The Simple Past is used to express:

1. a single action completed in the past and in no way connected with the present. The time of the action is mostly given or may be implied in the situation.

- **He left yesterday. They married in 1990. We met in Germany.**

Note: The Simple Past, never the Present Perfect, is used in questions beginning with **When**, because it implies a certain moment in the past. The answer can be either in the Simple Past or in the Present Perfect, depending on the situation:

- — **When did you see him?**
— **I saw him two days ago. / I have just seen him.**

2. a succession of actions in narration to describe the development of events.

- **I went up the stairs. I bathed. I changed. Then I went downstairs and cooked and served dinner for three. Then I entertained Mr. Stent. Then I wished him a very good night.**

Sometimes you can come across the cases of the so called 'historic presents,' when in past-time contexts present tenses are used to make the narration more vivid.

- **Just imagine what happened to me yesterday! I came into the kitchen and what do you think I see? My cat is sitting on the table and eating the fish. And she looks so innocent that I have no heart to say anything.**

3. an action which occupied a whole period of time which is now over. The period of time is usually indicated in the sentence by means of adverbial phrases with the preposition **for** or **during**.

- **He worked hard for ten years until he was lucky, I walked in the park for twenty minutes yesterday. We stayed in the garden for a long time.**

4. facts; habitual, recurrent actions in the past.

- **She lived alone in London, and saw no one except me. Every day we got up at seven and went to bed at eleven.**

Note: In English there are special means of expressing a permanent recurrent action in the past. They are: **used to + infinitive** and **would + infinitive** (the latter is typical of literary style).

- **I liked reading in the garden. I used to take out a deck-chair, sit under one of the apple-trees and read.**
- **We used to play in the garden and Mother would make the cheese cakes for lunch.**

THE PAST PROGRESSIVE

I. The Past Progressive is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb *to be* in the Simple Past, and Participle I of the notional verb.

- **I was working. They were reading.**

The same auxiliary, verb is used in the interrogative and negative forms.

- **Were you working? Was he reading?**
We were not working. He was not reading.

II. The Past Progressive is used:

1. to express an action which was going on at a given moment in the past. In some cases, there is no indication of a given past moment. It is implied in the situation. Sometimes it is indicated with the help of another action in the Simple Past, or by stating the precise time: at the moment, now, *etc.*

- **You were sleeping when I left.**
At that very moment she was phoning the police.

2. to express an action going on at a given period of time in the past.

The indication of the past period of time is understood from the context or is given in the sentence.

- **— What were you doing in Paris? — I was trying to find a publisher for my new book for half a year.**

3. to express an action generally characterizing the person denoted by the subject, bringing out his (her) typical traits. **Often, always, constantly** are found in such cases in the sentence. Such sentences are emotionally coloured.

- **This child was always getting coughs and colds!**
She was constantly suffering from a cut or a burn.

4. with verbs which are not usually used in the progressive form when they change their meaning and are used to characterise the person's unusual behaviour at the given past moment.

- **He was being kind to us. She was only being nice.**
He was happy now that his wife was feeling better.

5. in the subordinate clause of a complex sentence introduced by the conjunction **while**. (The Simple Past can be used in these clauses as well.) The Simple Past is normally used in the principal clause.

- **She sat still while he was playing the sonata.**
While he stood there he heard the telephone ring.

THE PAST PERFECT

I. The Past Perfect is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb *to have* in the Simple Past and Participle II of the notional verb.

- **I had worked. We had met. She had seen it.**

The same auxiliary verb is used in the interrogative and the negative forms.

- **Had you worked? They hadn't come.**

II. The Past Perfect is mainly found in narration and in past-time contexts.

1. The Past Perfect is used to express an action completed before a given past moment.

The time of the action maybe indicated by a phrase or by another past action.

- **She was no fool. She had read much in several languages, and she could talk of the books she had read with good sense.**

2. The Past Perfect serves to express an action which began before a given past moment and continues into it or up to it. This grammatical meaning is mainly expressed by the Past Perfect Progressive. The Past Perfect is found with the verbs not used in the progressive tense forms. This use is associated with certain time indications: either a whole period of duration of the action is indicated (**for**) or its starting point (**since**).

- **He told me he had been badly ill since he (had) returned from abroad. He mentioned that he had not played tennis for three years.**

Note: In clauses of time introduced by **since** the Simple Past is commonly used, though the Past Perfect is also possible.

3. The Past Perfect is often used in combination with the Past Progressive when both actions are viewed from the same past moment. One action is completed before that past implied moment while the other is still in progress.

- **The sky had cleared and the moon was shining on the snow. She had done the work and was watching television.**

4. The Past Perfect is found in the principal clause of a complex sentence with a subordinate clause of time introduced by the conjunctions **scarcely... when, hardly... when, nearly... when, no sooner... than**. The action of the subordinate clause takes place when the action of the principal clause is hardly completed yet. Such sentences are emphatic in meaning and the word order in them is inverted.

- **Hardly had I gone a hundred yards when I noticed a car behind me. No sooner had she opened the door than she saw a stranger.**

THE PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE

I. The Past Perfect Progressive is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb *to be* in the Past Perfect and Participle I of the notional verb.

- **I had been working. He had been reading.**

In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject.

- **Had you been working? Had he been reading?**

In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

- **We had not been working. They had not been working.**

II. The Past Perfect Progressive serves to express:

1. an action which began before a given-past moment and continued into it or up to it (the **inclusive** or the **durative** type).
 - **She suddenly realized that it was now completely dark and that she had been walking for a long time.**
2. an action that was in progress just before a given past moment and it affects the past situation in some way.
 - **She rose from the chair on which she had been sitting. It was the letter she had been expecting.**
3. parallel actions in the principal and in the subordinate clause of time introduced by the conjunctions **while** and **since** and such words as **long as**, **all time**, **during the time**.
 - **Our friendship had been growing all the time we had been working on the project.**

The Future Tenses (the Simple Future, the Future Progressive, the Future Perfect, the Future Perfect Progressive. Other Means of Expressing Future Actions)

THE SIMPLE FUTURE

I. **The Simple Future** is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verbs **shall** and **will** and the **infinitive of the notional verb without the particle *to***.

- **I shall see him tomorrow. He will visit them soon.**

In present-day English there is a tendency to use **will** for all the persons. The difference in the use of **shall** and **will** disappears altogether in spoken English where the contracted form **'ll** is used with all the persons.

- **I'll see him tomorrow. They'll see him soon.**

The auxiliary verbs **shall** and **will** are also used to build up the interrogative and the negative forms.

- **Shall we see you tomorrow? Will they see him next week?**

II. The Simple Future is used only in present-time contexts to express:

1. a single action that will be completed in the future.
 - **It will be cold in the evening.**
I shall come along as often as possible.
2. an action occupying a whole period of time in the future.
 - **I hope you'll live for many years.**
I think I shall remain in love with you all my life.
3. recurrent actions in the future.
 - **We shall meet and talk and make plans from time to time.**

THE FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

I. The Future Progressive is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb *to be* in the **Simple Future and Participle I of the notional verb.**

- **I shall be seeing him often now.**
We shall be visiting them very soon.

In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject.

- **Shall I be seeing him often now?**
Shall we be visiting them very soon?

In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary.

- **I shall not be seeing him often now.**
We shall not be visiting them very soon.

II. The Future Progressive is used to express:

1. An action in progress at a definite future moment. The given future moment at which the action takes place is usually indicated by an adverbial modifier or is clear from the context or situation.

- **it will be too late. He will be sleeping.**
- **In an hour I'll be flying over the sea.**

2. An anticipated (a matter-of-course) action which is supposed to take place in the future in the normal, natural course of events.

- **I feel I shall be asking you the same question tomorrow.**
She feels she'll be suffering all her life.

Note: Even stative verbs can be used in this meaning.

- **She says she'll be seeing you tomorrow.**
Don't worry! I'll be knowing all about it very soon.

THE FUTURE PERFECT

I. The Future Perfect is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb *to have* in the **Simple Future and Participle II of the notional verb.**

- **I shall have read the book by that time.**
He will have done it by that time.

In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject.

- **Will she have read the book by that time?**

In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary.

- **She will not have read the book by that time.**

II. The Future Perfect is used to express an action completed before a given future moment which is usually indicated by an adverbial modifier of time.

- **You will have got my telegram before this letter reaches you.**

THE FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE

I. All the forms of the **Future Perfect Progressive** are analytical. They are formed with the **Future Perfect** of the auxiliary verb *to be* and **Participle I of the notional verb**.

- **I shall have been speaking for two hours before you come.**

Their interrogative and negative forms are built up in the usual way. It is hardly ever used, situations which require it very seldom arise. It denotes actions which began before a certain moment of time in the future and go on up to that moment or into it.

- **I shall have been living here for five years next February.**

OTHER MEANS OF EXPRESSING FUTURE ACTIONS IN ENGLISH

English is rich in means of expressing an action in the future owing to various modal meanings such as intention, willingness, readiness, obligation, assurance, expectation and the like.

I. **The Present Progressive** is used to express an action in the near future as definitely settled due to one's previous decision.

- **You know, I'm leaving tonight.**
She is coming to lunch on Thursday.

II. **To be + infinitive** (with **to**). In this combination **to be** is usually regarded as a modal verb. It serves to indicate previous arrangement and obligation resulting from the previous arrangement.

- **I've had a letter from home. I am to go back at once.**

Sometimes the meaning of obligation is so strong that this combination expresses order or instructions.

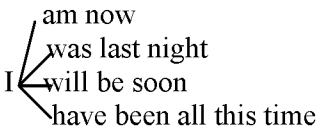
- **You are not to talk like that in front of the child!**

III. **To be going + infinitive.** This form is in frequent use in Modern English. It expresses a premeditated intention.

- I am going to tell him what I think of him.
She's going to explain that tomorrow.

The Rules of the Sequence of Tenses

I. If the verb in the principal clause is in one of the **present** or **future** tenses the verb in the subordinate clause may be in any tense form required by the situation.

They will wonder where I 

II. The Sequence of Tenses is used when someone's words are reported. The rules of the Sequence of Tenses are mainly observed in subordinate object, subject, predicative, appositive clauses, and in clauses of purpose. After the past tense forms in the principal clause we find relative use of tense forms in the subordinate clauses, a shift of tenses into the past. There are two possible cases:

- (1) **the rules of the sequence of tenses are compulsory;**
- (2) **the rules of the sequence of tenses are optional.**

1. The rules of the sequence of tenses are compulsory when the action of the subordinate clause is viewed from the past.

a) If the action of the subordinate clause is **simultaneous** with that of the principal clause, **the Simple Past** or **the Past Progressive** is used in the object clause no matter which past tense form is found in the principal clause.

- **She didn't know where she was. He said that he lived in Rome. They noticed that I was not listening. They took the key when I was not looking.**

b) If the action of the subordinate clause **precedes** that of the principal clause, **the Past Perfect** or **the Past Perfect Progressive** is used in the subordinate clause no matter which past tense is found in the principal clause.

- **She had a feeling that she had been deceived. I knew you had left the city. I knew well enough what she had been doing all that time.**

c) If the action of the subordinate clause refers to the future, **the Future-in-the-Past (Simple or Progressive)** or one of the other means of expressing a future action is used.

- **We hoped she would soon be better.
He was sure she would be thinking about him.
She said she was going to have a nap.
They explained that they were leaving the next day,**

2. The rules of the sequence of tenses are **optional** (i. e. may be observed or not) when reference is made to the actual present time or the actual future time. This use is found in dialogues, newspapers and radio reports.

- **He said he doesn't ever want to see you.
I said I'm making a salad for supper.
I wanted to know what day I'll be leaving.**

III. The rules of the Sequence of Tenses are not observed in some quite logical cases:

1. when the verb of the subordinate clause expresses a **universal truth or facts that still hold true**.
 - **At school in France the boys told me you can't live with forty-four degrees. And I've got a hundred and two.**
 - **Our Geography teacher told us at the last lesson that there aren't any unknown islands left on the earth.**
2. with the modal verbs **must, should, ought to**, the rules of the Sequence of Tenses are not observed either.
 - **I wrote that I must see him. He said she should be less choosy. Two people advised me that I ought to see a doctor.**
3. if we are reporting an **immediate future event**, we can leave the verbs **shall, will** in the present:
 - **Don't leave. She said she will make some coffee.**
4. in reporting a **narration** the past tense does not change. Also, if there is a **concrete past date**.
 - **He said that he was born in Kiev and then the family moved to Minsk.
She said she graduated from University in 1997.**
5. the Simple Past in subordinate clauses of time (introduced by the conjunctions **when** and **since**) is not changed according to the rules of the Sequence of Tenses into the Past Perfect Tense.
 - **She said, 'When I left school, he was already studying at University.'** (*Simple Past*)
 - **She said that when she left school, he was already studying at University.** (*Simple Past*)
 - **Mary said, 'I haven't met my boyfriend since we parted.'** (*Present Perfect*)
 - **Mary said that she hadn't met her boyfriend since they parted.** (*Past Perfect*)
6. the Past Continuous doesn't undergo any changes, it stays as it is:
 - **He remarked, 'When I came in she was singing.'
He remarked that when he came in she was singing.**

Voice

I. Voice is the form of the verb which shows whether the subject of the sentence is the doer of the action expressed by the verb or whether it was acted upon. There are two voices in English — **the Active Voice** and **the Passive Voice**.

The Active Voice shows that the person or thing denoted by the subject of the sentence is the agent (the doer) of the action expressed by the predicate verb.

It is common knowledge that the Passive Voice is more extensively used in English than in Russian. As a general rule, the passive construction is used when there is no need to mention the agent of the action because it is either easily understood from the situation or context, or because it is not important.

- **Her two brothers were wounded in the war.**
The telegram had been delivered on time.

II. **The Passive Voice** is an analytical form which is built up by means of the auxiliary verb *to be* in the required form and **Participle II of the notional verb**.

the Simple Present — **is (am, are) done**

the Simple Past — **was (were) done**

the Simple Future — **will (shall) be done**

the Present Perfect — **has (have) been done**

the Past Perfect — **had been done**

the Future Perfect — **will (shall) have been done**

the Present Progressive — **is (am, are) being done**

the Past Progressive — **was (were) being done**

The Passive Voice doesn't have the Future Progressive, the Future Progressive-in-the-Past and all the Perfect Progressive forms.

The interrogative form is built up by placing the (first) auxiliary verb before the subject of the sentence

- **When was it done? Has the work been done?**
When will the fax be sent? Where is the centre being built?

The negative form is built up by placing the particle **not** after the (first) auxiliary.

- **The work was not done yesterday.**
The file hasn't been opened yet.

III. The Passive Voice in English is found with different types of verbs (mostly transitive).

1. There are a number of verbs in English which take two objects — a direct and an indirect object. These verbs may have two passive constructions. The most frequently used verbs of this kind are: **to tell, to give, to offer, to show, to pay, to live, to promise, to send, to teach, to allow, to ask, to answer, to forgive, to invite, to advise** and a few others.

- **A very good job was offered to me.**
He was offered a well-paid job.

2. There are a great number of verbs in English that require a prepositional object. These verbs may also be used in the Passive. The prep-

position retains its place after the verb. This construction may be called **the Prepositional Passive**.

- **He is well spoken of as a man of science.**
The doctor was sent for half an hour ago.
He was looked upon as their leader.
You're being made a fool of.

3. The Prepositional Passive is not used with verbs which take two objects, direct and prepositional. Here belong such verbs as **to explain** (something to somebody), **to point out**, **to announce**, **to dictate**, **to describe**, **to mention**, **to repeat**, **to suggest**, **to propose**.

- **The difficulty was explained to her.**
The mistake was pointed out to us.
A new plan was suggested to us.

Notes:

1. The active forms of the verbs **sell**, **wash**, **peel**, **crease**, **wear**, **bake**, **burn** are used though the meanings are passive:

- **This staff washes and wears well and doesn't crease.**
Detective stories sell well. Dry leaves burn well.

2. There is a certain group of transitive verbs which are not used in the passive voice. They are: **to seem**, **to lack**, **to become**, **to fit**, **to suit**, **to resemble**. There are semantic reasons for this, as these verbs don't denote actions or processes, but states.

- **John resembles his father. (John looks like his father).**
He has become a real professional. He seems to know all.

The Complex Object

The Complex Object is a syntactic construction which consists of **a noun in the common case** (or **a pronoun in the objective case**) and **an adjective**, **an infinitive** (with or without the particle **to**) or **a participle**. The relation between the parts of the Complex Object is that of the secondary subject and the secondary predicate of the sentence.

- **No one expects *Diana to refuse*. They found *the house empty*.**
I watched *her move away*. We felt *him watching us*.

While an infinitive is used to express a fact, Participle I stresses the process.

Compare:

- **We saw him enter the hall, (...как он вошел...)**
We saw him entering the hall, (...как он входил...)

1. The Complex Object is used after the following verbs: **want**, **expect**, **would like**, **would love**, **would hate**, **would prefer**. The infinitive is used with the particle **to**.

- **I want *all my friends to come* to my birthday party and I would love *you to join us*.**

2. There are a few verbs in English after which the infinitive is used without the particle **to**. They are verbs:

a) **of sense perception: to feel, to hear, to see, to watch, to notice.**

- **I've never heard you sing.**

We've watched you grow for many years.

b) **of compulsion: to let, to make, to have.**

- **We let the boy play with the dog.**

What makes you refuse such an offer?

They had him do as they wished.

If these verbs are used in the Passive Voice, the particle **to** should be used.

- **He was seen to leave the house.**

The boy was made to tell the truth.

3. The verbs **to see** and **to hear** in the meaning *to know, to understand* are followed by a subordinate clause.

- **We hear that he has returned to Moscow.**

I see that you are wrong.

Modal Verbs

There is a great variety of different modal verbs expressing the speaker's attitude towards the action in the sentence. We find the following modal verbs in English: **can, may, must, to have to, to be to, ought to, should, need.**

A modal verb in combination with the infinitive forms a **compound modal predicate.**

Modal verbs lack many forms characteristic of regular verbs: they have no *-s* in the third person singular in the Simple Present, and no verbals, some of them lack the form of the past tense.

Modal verbs have the following peculiarities:

1. they are followed by the infinitive without the particle *to* (with the exception of *ought to, to have to* and *to be to*);

2. their interrogative and negative forms are built up without the auxiliary verb (except the verb *to have to*);

3. most of the modal verbs have more than one meaning. They all show that a certain action is represented as necessary, possible, desirable, doubtful, obligatory from the point of view of the speaker.

THE MODAL VERB CAN

I. The Modal verb **can** has two tense forms: **can** (the Simple Present) — **could** (the Simple Past).

II. **Can** is used to express:

1. **ability** (mental or physical).
 - **He can read a little French.**
I can walk very fast.

This meaning can also be expressed by the modal equivalent **to be able to...** . The phrase can be used in all tense forms.

- **Don't worry! I am quite able to take care of myself.**
I am happy I was able to help you.
No doubt they will be able to support us.

2. **objective possibility due to circumstances** (or absence of it).

- **You can get this dictionary from the library.**
You can't cross the street here.

3. **permission, request** in affirmative and interrogative sentences. If it is negative sentences it expresses **prohibition**.

- **— Can I go out? — Yes, you can go out if you like.**
You can't go out. It is late.

Could expresses a more polite request.

- **Could you give us a clue?**

Note: Remember the following set-phrases with the verb **can**:

- **He couldn't help laughing,** (*не мог удержаться чтобы*)
I can't but ask him about it. (*мне ничего не остается, как*)
I can't possibly do it. (*просто не могу сделать это*)

THE MODAL VERB **MAY**

I. The modal verb **may** has two tense forms: **may** (the Simple Present) — **might** (the Simple Past).

II. **May** can express the following meanings:

1. **possibility due to circumstances** (only in affirmative sentences with an indefinite infinitive).

- **You may order a ticket by telephone.**

2. **permission, request** (more formal than can).

- **You may take the exam now.**
— May I stay here? — No, you mustn't.

3. **supposition implying uncertainty.**

- **They may be at home. It may be true.**

In this meaning **may** can be followed by different forms of the infinitive, depending on the time reference expressed in the sentence.

- **He may be working.**
She may have fallen ill.
He may have been waiting for us for an hour.

THE MODAL VERB **MUST**

I. The modal verb **must** has only one tense form — the Simple Present. It is used to refer an action to the present or future and in combination with the perfect infinitive it refers an action to the past.

- **You must do it tomorrow.**
He must be still working.
He must have done it ages ago.

II. **Must** can express the following meanings:

1. obligation, duty, necessity.
 - **You must do this work.**
Must he do it himself?
2. **prohibition** (in negative sentences).
 - **You must not come so late.**

Note: Absence of necessity is expressed by other verbs (**need** or **have to**):

- **They needn't hurry. There is a lot of time.**
You don't have to finish the work right now. It can wait.
3. **emphatic advice.**
 - **You mustn't be so touchy. You must stop crying.**
You really must have your hair cut.
4. **supposition.**
 - **He must be thirty.**
They must have missed the bus.

THE MODAL VERB **TO HAVE TO**

The verb **to have to** serves to express **obligation** or **necessity** imposed by circumstances. It is found in present, past and future tense contexts and is combined only with the simple infinitive. The interrogative and negative forms of the modal verb **to have to** are built up with the help of the auxiliary verb **to do**.

- **Do I have to do this? Did he have to do it?**
You don't have to explain.
They didn't have to tell me what had happened.
Have you had to walk all that distance?

THE MODAL VERB **TO BE TO**

I. The main meaning of this modal verb is that of pre-arranged necessity or mutual arrangement. It is used in the present and past, never in the future (*to have to* is used in this case).

- **He is to come at exactly five.**
She was to phone after dinner.
They'll have to meet in court.

Note: A perfect infinitive after the verb **to be to** shows that the action had been planned but wasn't carried out.

- **He was to have come at seven and now it's already nine.** (*He didn't come*)

Compare:

- **She was to do it.** (*Maybe she did it*)
• **She was to have done it.** (*But she didn't do it*)

II. **To be to** can also express a command.

- **You are to report to the Captain.**

III. In negative sentences it expresses prohibition.

- **You are not to mix with these people under any circumstances.**

IV. In questions **to be to** means asking for instructions.

- **What are we to do? Am I to follow you?**

V. **To be to** can express something doomed, inevitable.

- **It was to happen.**
• **She was to become his wife.**

THE MODAL VERB **SHOULD**

It may be either **auxiliary** or **modal**.

I. When **should** is used as tense or mood auxiliary it is not translated since it has no lexical meaning of its own.

- **She said we should go there next year,** (*tense auxiliary*)
• **It's necessary you should control yourself,** (*mood auxiliary*)
• **If I had such a chance I should take it.** (*mood auxiliary*)

II. As a modal verb **should** expresses **duty, obligation** often weakened to the meaning of advice, reproach, rebuke.

- **You should cross the road here,** (*duty*)
• **You should help him.** (*advice, recommendation*)
• **You should do your best,** (*obligation, duty*)
• **You should have given up this idea long ago.** (*reproach, rebuke*)

Note: In emotional speech **should** can express indignation, astonishment, regret after the words *why, what, how, who(m), I'm sorry:*

- **Why should I go there?**
• **How should I know?** (*с какой стати?*)

Different infinitives can follow.

- **You should be friendly to people.** (*the reference is made to the present, future or to no particular time*)
- **You should be working now, not polishing your nails!** (*the reference is made to the present moment*)
- **You should have done it.** (*but you didn't do it in the past*)

The positive construction with a perfect infinitive after **should** shows that the action was desirable but wasn't carried out.

- **You should have come,** (*but you didn't*)

The negative construction with the perfect infinitive shows that the action which took place in the past was not desirable.

- **You shouldn't have come, (but you did)**

THE MODAL VERB *OUGHT TO*

It comes originally from the verb *owe*, and still carries the idea that we owe some moral obligation to other people and to ourselves.

- **I really ought to go and have my eyes tested.** (*I owe it to myself, I haven't done my duty*)
- **Ben really ought to see his parents more often,** (*he rarely sees them*)
- **They ought to ban smoking in public places,** (*the obligation comes from outside*)

I. It has only one form for the present tense and unlike all other modals is always followed by the infinitive with the particle **to**. Time reference is expressed through the form of the infinitive.

- **You ought to do it.** (*present tense*)
You ought to have done it. (*past action which was desirable but wasn't carried out*)

II. Like the modal verb *should* **ought to** expresses advice, social and moral responsibility.

- **You ought to see a doctor.**
You ought not to smoke so much.
She ought to look after her children better.
You ought to ask for your money back.

III. **Should** and **ought to** are very close in meaning. Unlike *must/have to*, which express obligation where you have no choice, **should** and **ought to** describe a sort of obligation where you have a choice:

- **You shouldn't carry a lot of money with you.**
You oughtn't to leave your bag unattended.
You should help old people.
You ought to take up a sport.

In the above illustrations, we are free to do or not to do what we are advised. Still there is some very slight difference between them-. **Should** suggests an obligation more moral and binding than **ought to** and therefore offers stronger advice and conveys greater certainty in prediction.

Ought to often suggests that the action is unlikely to be fulfilled.

Compare:

- **You should go.** (*this is absolutely necessary*)
You ought to go. (*but I know you don't want to*)

PART II

PRACTICE

SYNTAX

Unit 1

The Sentence. Kinds of Sentences according to the Purpose of the Utterance. Kinds of Sentences according to Their Structure

Ex. 1. Define the type of the sentence according to the purpose of the utterance.

1. Ireland is often called the 'Emerald Isle' because of its lush green countryside.
2. What's the best way to learn a foreign language?
3. Respect other people's customs when you travel.
4. Example is the only way of educating (*Albert Einstein*).
5. Get out of the car right now!
6. Would you give him my message, please?
7. You are forgetting yourself!
8. English is a member of the Indo-European family of languages.
9. Do you believe in UFO (Unidentified Flying Objects)?
10. Be careful driving while it is snowing!
11. Curiosity is the beginning of knowledge.
12. What a beautiful sunset it is!
13. What do you know about marketing?
14. Watch out!
15. Finish your work, please.
16. In this part of the country birds fly south in winter.

Ex. 2. Construct a declarative, an interrogative, an imperative or an exclamatory sentence.

1. An interesting book (excl.).
2. My friend's address (inter.).
3. Peter's library (decl.).
4. A map of the United States (imper.).
5. A small island (excl.).
6. Mountains of Great Britain (decl.).
7. Shakespeare's birthplace (inter.).
8. An exciting thriller (excl.).
9. A different example (imper.).
10. The capital of the Republic of Ireland (inter.).
11. An inexpensive way to travel (decl.).
12. A strange remark (excl.).
13. The largest fresh-water lake in the world (inter.).
14. A good time (imper.).
15. New ways of communication (decl.).

Ex. 3. Put the sentences below into the negative and interrogative.

1. A small child sees the world differently from an adult.
2. The world changes very fast.
3. She gets a lot of faxes every day.
4. Our grammar lesson lasts two hours.
5. Jack works at a new computer company.

6. California has a lot of rain in winter. 7. A tree grows in height as well as in diameter. 8. A disjunctive question takes a comma before its tag (tail). 9. Nancy likes to work in the library. 10. He translates a lot of articles into English every day. 11. Each day brings new events and meetings. 12. He understands French better than he speaks it. 13. He has a doctorate degree in linguistics. 14. Brad likes to cook for his friends when he has time. 15. Our teacher gives us a lot of homework.

Ex. 4. Make the following imperative sentences negative.

1. Come over at five, please. 2. Call him in the evening. 3. Give him this file. 4. Turn down the TV, please. 5. Think about something else, please. 6. Relax! 7. Show me around this place, please. 8. Send him a fax tomorrow morning. 9. Read this paragraph, please. 10. Look over there! 11. Bring me some paper, please. 12. Check the answering machine in the morning. 13. Warm up the tea, please. 14. Open the window, please. 15. Wait for us outside, please. 16. Add some more salt to the soup.

Ex. 5. Put disjunctive questions to the following sentences.

1. They will be at home tonight. 2. The lecture begins at 12 o'clock. 3. She can do it tomorrow. 4. The examination was difficult. 5. He has returned to Moscow. 6. She has a big dog. 7. He lives in that house. 8. I am the best student in the class. 9. There are twelve months in a year. 10. There were too many people at the party. 11. Nick likes to tell jokes. 12. He can fix anything. 13. Customs are different in every country. 14. Talk shows have become very popular on our TV. 15. He won the first prize.

Ex. 6. Put general and alternative questions to the following statements.

1. It is cold outside. 2. There is a VCR in his room. 3. Barbara does her shopping twice a week. 4. There are three computers in the office. 5. David comes home late on Mondays. 6. He is fluent in English and German. 7. This office gets a lot of faxes every day. 8. There is tea and coffee on the table. 9. He needs a sleeping-bag for the trip. 10. Allan can solve this problem. 11. Jennie has a great new backpack. 12. My brother likes vanilla ice-cream. 13. She has black hair and blue eyes. 14. There are several unopened letters on her desk. 15. Bison is another name for buffalo.

Ex. 7. Construct simple (extended or unextended), compound or complex sentences out of the following.

1. — Time, fly. — Yes, life is short. 2. One, when, fly, is, time, happy. 3. Usually, come, noisily, out, of lecture halls, students, at

three o'clock. 4. Understand, very well, French, he, but, doesn't speak, easily, it, very. 5. My, loudly, daughter, always, in the bath, sings. 6. Two, the train, late, was, hours, yesterday, had, and, we, wait. We, agree, shall, if, goes, well, all. 8. Redecorate, I, my house, want, very much, but, I, at the moment, very, am, busy. 9. Us, for, put up, I, you, could, a few nights, you, if, came, me, visit. 10. Say, yes, never, you, sure, are, absolutely, before. 11. Sweden, are, thinking, we, of going to, our minds, but, haven't made up, we, yet. 12. Dinner, cook, I, shall, then, have, and, I, a rest. 13. Very rich, is, he, can, that's why, travel, he, all, the world, over. 14. Back, money, bad, comes. 15. Or, be, be, not, to.

Ex. 8. Use *it* or *there* with the appropriate form of the verb *to be*.

1. ... difficult to understand why Linda ever married Ben. 2. ... a fight in the street last week. 3. ... warm today, but ... some clouds in the sky. 4. ... possible that ... a storm at night. 5. ... nothing to add to the story. 6. ... a busy street, ... many offices in it. 7. ... true that ... only young people on the staff? 8. ... a bottle in the bar. ... fine Scotch whiskey. 9. ... difficult to change your profession at such an age. ... not much time left. 10. ... nothing in the file. ... clean. 11. ... such an informative book. ... many useful things you can learn from it. 12. ... many fishes in the Baltic Sea. ... really rich in fish. 13. ... a fact that ... always exceptions to the rule. 14. ... no students at the University yesterday. ... a national holiday. 15. ... too many minuses in the job. ... really hard work and not rewarding.

Ex. 9. Read the verse composed of the imperative sentences and learn it.

THE ABC OF HAPPINESS
 Aspire to reach your potential
 Believe in yourself
 Create a good life
 Dream about what you might become
 Exercise frequently
 First think, then speak
 Glorify the creative spirit
 Humour yourself and others
 Imagine great things
 Joyfully live each day
 Kindly help others
 Love one another
 Meditate daily
 Nurture the environment

Organize for harmonious action
Praise performance well done
Queue up for tickets
Regulate your behaviour
Smile often
Think rationally
Understand yourself
Value life
Work for the common good
X-ray and carefully examine problems
Yearn to improve
Zestfully pursue happiness.

Unit 2

The Main Members of the Sentence. The Subject.

The Predicate

Ex. 1. Classify each of the sentences below according to their structure.

1. Great Britain is a small island, but it is rich in minerals. 2. What an interesting book I bought yesterday! 3. I know that he is in London now. 4. Ask her where he is now. 5. Alicia, Joy, and David came in. 6. Read about the weather and then decide on your vacation. 7. Don't forget! 8. Can you explain the term 'brainstorming' to us? 9. My boss gets angry if he is interrupted. 10. I can't explain what it means. 11. Leave me and my friend alone, or I shall call the police. 12. Mike smiled at his colleague, but Steve frowned at him. 13. Is there any hope? 14. If you listen attentively, the meaning will not escape you. 15. To know everything is to know nothing.

Ex. 2. Classify each of the sentences below according to the purpose of the utterance.

1. Come here as soon as you can! 2. They are students, aren't they? 3. Nobody knows anything about it. 4. There is a picture on the wall. 5. Don't translate this word. 6. What a kind woman she is! 7. This is plastic, isn't it? 8. St. Augustine, Florida, was founded in 1565 and it is the oldest city in the United States. 9. Don't let me down, Mike. You know how important it is for me! 10. Close the windows and pull down the shades, please. 11. Public speaking was always his strong point. 12. Why can't you help them? 13. Studying late is not the best policy. 14. Well, this is a surprise! 15. Many English textbooks begin with units about families.

Ex. 3. Change the following statements to exclamations.

Models: She has a pleasant personality. — *What a pleasant personality she has!*

This lecture is boring. — *What a boring lecture this is!* These are expensive towels. — *What expensive towels these are!*

1. He has made a stupid remark. 2. She has long eyelashes. 3. The store is crowded today. 4. She wears old-fashioned clothes. 5. The story sounds unbelievable. 6. The noise was frightening. 7. He has told us an amusing story. 8. The costume looks elegant. 9. He has made a terrible mistake. 10. He is an extraordinary man. 11. The lesson is difficult. 12. Mr. Grayson is a fine speaker. 13. I see a bright star in the sky. 14. The pie is delicious. 15. He has done a superb job.

Ex. 4. Name the members of the sentence and discriminate between the main and the secondary parts. Say what they are expressed by.

1. She is a first-year student. 2. He is playing outside. 3. I shall be very glad to see you at my place. 4. My friend's sister is an engineer. 5. He didn't tell us anything about it. 6. She is a very pretty child. 7. There are a lot of interesting stories in this book. 8. We knew nothing about it. 9. She had a son and a daughter. 10. You must go there today. 11. Al and Jack found the missing child. 12. Language students often read, write, and listen to new words. 13. Friday is my birthday. 14. Last year a library, a museum, and a movie theatre were built in our district. 15. The boat suddenly jumped, increased its speed and passed the other racers.

Ex. 5. Point out the subjects and say what they are expressed by.

1. Oxford is one of the oldest towns in England. 2. She went out of the room. 3. To live long is the wish of all men. 4. Reading is her favourite occupation. 5. Two is a company and three is a crowd. 6. *On* is a preposition. 7. It was difficult to do it. 8. There is a lamp on the table. 9. A stranger came up to their table. 10. None of the chairs look comfortable. 11. Is London hot in summer? 12. To be or not to be — this is the question. 13. Who could live without water? 14. Not everybody is so lucky. 15. To read is to be transported to another world.

Ex. 6. Discriminate between verbal and nominal predicates. Say what they are expressed by.

1. He went home after the lecture. 2. His voice sounded cheerful. 3. Thank you, I am feeling much better now. 4. The dress is rather

expensive,' she remarked. 5. The night was dark and a cold wind was blowing. 6. The roses smell sweet. 7. He didn't know what to say and remained silent. 8. They are colleagues. 9. He took no interest in his story. 10. He has received a letter from his father. 11. He must post the letter at once. 12. We had a snack at the Russian bistro. 13. This file is mine. 14. The room was in disorder. 15. The child felt sleepy. 16. His analysis proved to be right. 17. The car engine started making a grinding noise. 18. The milk becomes sour without refrigeration. 19. The project will be finished in mid April. 20. He felt like he had done nothing wrong.

Ex. 7. Translate into English choosing the right word.

1. Он ДОВОЛЬНО веселый человек (cheerful, cheerfully). 2. Это был веселый спектакль (cheerful, cheerfully). 3. Это было смелое решение (brave, bravely). 4. Он действовал смело и решительно (brave, bravely). 5. Он робко поглядывал на девушку, сидящую напротив него (timid, timidly). 6. Он очень умно пишет (clever, cleverly). 7. Он умный писатель (clever, cleverly). 8. Билл с гордостью рассказывал об успехах сына (proud, proudly). 9. Диана очень гордилась успехом своей команды (proud, proudly). 10. Дорога была хорошая, и поездка была приятной (good, well). 11. По радио звучала хорошая мелодия (good, well). 12. Ручка хорошо пишет (good, well). 13. Это хорошая ручка (good, well). 14. Пирог выглядит отлично (good, well). И на вкус он тоже хорош (good, well). 15. Он подозрительно посмотрел на сторублевую банкноту (suspicious, suspiciously). Банкнота действительно выглядела подозрительно (suspicious, suspiciously). 16. Запах газа был очевиден (distinct, distinctly). Мы его явно ощущали (distinct, distinctly). 17. Этот цвет выглядит совсем по-другому при свете дня (different, differently). 18. Он сделал это совсем по-другому в этот раз (different, differently). 19. Его предложение звучит (отдает) нечестно(стью) (dishonest, dishonestly). 20. Он поступил нечестно (dishonest, dishonestly).

Unit 3

The Secondary Members of the Sentence.

The Object. The Attribute. The Adverbial Modifier

Ex. 1. Point out the objects and say what kind they are.

1. She gives Charlie a glass of milk every day. 2. I see a picture over there. 3. He has a lot of free time. 4. I saw Mike yesterday. 5. He was

afraid of the dark. 6. Tell me this story, please. 7. The teacher explained a new rule to his students. 8. You always make careless mistakes. 9. I sent my father a telegram yesterday. 10. He showed us his library. 11. He offered me a lift. 12. Stop laughing at me. 13. Jean bought me a copy of the book on Windows 2000. 14. They ate everything on the table. 15. She is proud of her son's paintings.

Ex. 2. Point out the attributes in the following sentences and say what they are expressed by.

1. He got a long letter from his school friend. 2. Richard's library is very good. 3. It was a cold day. 4. There are two broken chairs in the room. 5. The second chapter is very interesting. 6. He picked up the letter lying on the floor. 7. The roof of the house is shingled. 8. He has a great desire to travel around the world. 9. There is no hope of seeing him soon. 10. It was the only thing to do. 11. The girl in a white dress is my cousin. 12. We took a late train to Riga. 13. There were flowers in every other room. 14. It is not somebody else's problem. It is yours. 15. Laughing children is a nice thing to

Ex. 3. Point out the adverbial modifiers in the following sentences. State their type and say what they are expressed by.

1. We reached the town in the morning. 2. I called on Bob to ask him about our exams. 3. He has greatly changed. 4. We couldn't see the river from the hill top. 5. We sat on the sofa reading. 6. He was in the British Army during the war. 7. He likes to walk fast. 8. They went for a long walk on Piccadilly. 9. The best food is always cooked at home. 10. He looked at me strangely. 11. Brian always comes home for Thanksgiving. 12. The tent was carefully placed under a huge oak tree. 13. I haven't finished my recommended reading-list yet. 14. I met Nancy on my first day at the University. 15. The beautiful stream tumbled loudly over the sharp stones.

Ex. 4. Change the following sentences into as many questions as you can beginning with *when*, *where*, and *what*.

1. In spring they planted corn on the new land. 2. At the age of fifteen he published his first poem in a youth magazine. 3. Yesterday Dick played tennis with Bob at the country club. 4. Joy took her younger brother to the cinema on Sunday. 5. In the morning she went to the bakery for bread. 6. She went to the post office yesterday to buy some stamps. 7. When she was young she used to type fifty words a minute. 8. Last month they hold a captured lion

in a log trap for several hours. 9. Kevin had to leave his car at the gas station the other day. 10. He gave me a great present for my birthday last year. 11. The Dickinsons bought a nice cottage on the lake last summer. 12. Mike and his friends went hiking in the mountains last summer. 13. She left several messages on my voice mail. 14. Steven made lots of money playing on the stock market last year. 15. Mom made a delicious cake for my birthday party on Saturday.

Ex. 5. Read the following text and define each sentence according to the purpose of the utterance.

In a telephone conversation, there are certain social amenities, which you must follow before you come to the point. When answering a call, don't ask 'Who's this?' If the call is for you and your voice is not recognized, say: 'This is Mary,' or 'This is she.' If another person is wanted, answer courteously: 'I'll call her. Just a moment, please.' If the person is out, say: 'She is out at the moment. May I take a message?' If you take a message, get it accurately. Deliver it promptly. If you call the wrong number, say: 'I am sorry. I have the wrong number.' If you are wrongly called, don't slam down the receiver. Just say, 'I am sorry. You've called the wrong number.' When you get your number it is courteous to say: 'May I speak with Steve, please?' or 'Is Steve there?'

Ex. 6. Put disjunctive questions to the following statements.

I. Mr. Brown is rich. 2. The coffee will be ready soon. 3. Janice broke her arm. 4. The post office is not far from here. 5. It is cold outside. 6. It's hard to do it. 7. There were a lot of people in the room. 8. I am right! 9. There is someone at the door. 10. It is beginning to snow. II. There is a storm approaching. 12. They had a great party on Christmas. 13. These are the books I have been looking for. 14. No body knew the answer. 15. Help us! 16. He used to call us every Sunday. 17. He cannot come with us.

Ex. 7. Put questions to which the following could be answers.

1. No, I am Russian. 2. Yes, he has. 3. Yes, we go there every day. 4. Yes, I know him very well. 5. No, he has a bad accent. 6. Yes, I went there last May. 7. Yes, I saw her on the ship. 8. No, it's small. 9. Yes, I've got a flat. 10. Yes, there are. 11. No, I'm twenty. 12. Oh, yes. It's a pleasure to learn English. 13. No, he doesn't. Russian is the only language he speaks. 14. Yes, there are. 15. No, he is not there.

MORPHOLOGY

Unit 4

Nouns and Their Classification.

The Number of the Noun and the Formation of the Plural

Ex. 1. Read the verse for fun and learn the right forms of the nouns.

A POEM TO NUMBER

We'll begin with a *fox* and the plural is *foxes*, But the plural of
ox should never be *oxes*.

One fowl is a *goose* and the plural is *geese*, But the
plural of *moose* won't be *meese*.

So also for *mouse* the plural is *mice*,
But for house it's *houses* — we never say *hice*.

And since the plural of *man* is always called *men*, For the plural of
pan, why can't we say *pen*?

Then one maybe *that* and *three* may be *those*,
Yet *rat* in the plural is never called *rose*.

And the masculine pronouns are *he*, *his*, and *him*, But imagine the
feminine, *she*, *shis*, and *shim*!

So English, I fancy, you all will agree,
Is the most lawless language you ever did see.

Anonymous

Ex. 2. Discriminate between direct and indirect objects and say what they are expressed by.

1. He left me a message about my brother.
2. Can you show me the new magazines?
3. Josh always sends his grandmother nice post cards.
4. Last month Brian sent the landlord a check for rent.
5. I promise to give you the answer tomorrow.
6. Irene gave Julie poor advice.
7. He told us many interesting stories about his childhood in the Far East.
8. Allow yourself more time for this assignment.
9. The office manager gave me a new computer.
10. Did he offer you the position?
11. I am going to give my father a new watch for his birthday.
12. The guide showed the tourists all the sights.
13. That incident taught the boys a good lesson.
14. The speaker did not give us his opinion on the subject.
15. The salesgirl handed the children some balloons.

Ex. 3. Point out the attributes and say what they are expressed by.

1. I want to know the boy's name. 2. I will do it for you with great pleasure. 3. She went there every day. 4. Bob promised to come back by the night train. 5. A broken child's toy lay on the floor. 6. He asked for another cup of coffee. 7. At that moment the door opened. 8. A drop of rain fell on his forehead. 9. A little boy in a red cap ran up to him. 10. The second problem is harder than the first. 11. Do you know any other store nearby? 12. The teacher required three articles from different magazines on this subject. 13. We could hardly hear her words. 14. This is the heaviest box of the three. 15. I haven't read today's paper yet.

Ex. 4. Point out the adverbial modifiers and say what they are expressed by.

1. I like a cup of coffee in the morning. 2. They have just left. 3. It was getting dark outside. 4. He lived in France for a long time. 5. The boy was trembling like a leaf. 6. There was a knock at the door. 7. The girl sat silently for a few minutes. 8. You are always kind to me. 9. We were going to the village shop. 10. This time he spoke in a different tone. 11. Everyone did well on the test. 12. I ski frequently in winter. 13. A Professor from Canada gave an interesting speech yesterday. 14. Let me know immediately if you can go with me tomorrow. 15. I can't find him anywhere.

Ex. 5. Put the adverbs given in brackets in their proper places.

1. She has a few mistakes in her composition (always). 2. I am glad to see you, Betty (always). 3. They have finished their work (already). 4. I can agree to that (never). 5. Young Tom has mentioned it (never). 6. There has been a problem with this car before (never). 7. A telegram has been sent to him (just). 8. We have six lessons a day (always). 9. Old Mrs. Pratt is ill (often). 10. He is here, but I haven't seen him (yet). 11. He has written his report (already). 12. This elevator works well (never). 13. She is on time (always). 14. I have begun to study French (just). I can't speak it (yet). 15. Have you been abroad (ever)?

Ex. 6. Classify the following nouns.

New York, chair, kindness, crowd, police, iron, strength, snow, friendship, height, cake, company, gentleman, action, mistake, cruelty, personnel, August, group, theory, equipment, sugar, philosophy, videotape, information, attitude, London, situation, advice, Fifth Avenue, customer.

Ex. 7. Form the plural of the following nouns.

Scarf, mouth, merry-go-round, handful, Dutchman, German, boot, foot, room mate, berry, mouse, ship, sheep, belief, life, species, crisis, sister-in-law, phenomenon, Swiss, gun, deer, looker-on, Roman, cuckoo, toy, box, bridge, chimney, penny.

Ex. 8. Give the correct collective noun for the following using the words given below.

1. a number of people listening to a concert;
2. a number of people at a football match;
3. sailors on a ship;
4. father, mother, son and daughter;
5. a large number of people together but without order or organization;
6. the military forces of the country organized for fighting on land;
7. a group of war ships;
8. players in a game of football;
9. a group of people who share a learning experience about a particular subject;
10. usually an appointed group of people who review particular subjects and make recommendations;
11. a group of domestic birds;
12. a group of persons forming a committee to judge;
13. a political, ethnic or family division of ancient cultures;
14. a number of animals, especially cattle herded by man;
15. all the people who act in a film or a play.

class, committee, flock, jury, tribe, herd, cast, family, crew, fans, army, team, flotilla, audience, crowd

Ex. 9. Translate into English.

1. Есть сведения, что полиция ищет угонщиков самолета. 2. Футбольная команда обычно состоит из одиннадцати игроков. 3. Игроки хоккейной команды Швеции были одеты в белые костюмы и оранжевые каски. 4. Аудитория была потрясена голосом певицы. 5. — Сколько человек присутствовало на приеме? — Очень много, просто толпа. 6. Команда корабля выполняла разную работу. 7. По современным стандартам моя семья большая. Нас шесть человек. 8. В моей семье все — ранние пташки. 9. Армия в этой стране — сильная и хорошо оснащенная. 10. Народы Африки практически освободились от колониального ига. 11. Скот сейчас пасется высоко в горах. Моя домашняя птица поглощает невероятное количество зерна. Актеры этой труппы из разных стран. 14. Жюри разделилось в своем мнении. 15. Комитет состоял из двенадцати представителей.

Ex. 10. Describe the following nouns using different parts of speech. Name the parts of speech you used. To describe the nouns, use the words given below or make up your own.

Model: Butterfly — beautiful, flying", Monarch (adjective, participle, noun).

1. Mountain. 2. Drink. 3. Friend. 4. Apple. 5. Book. 6. Telephone. 7. Glass. 8. City. 9. Movie. 10. Life. 11. Flower. 12. River. 13. Water. 14. Conversation. 15. Wall.

rock, yellow, delicate, breathtaking, broken, hot, polluted, high, forest, tall, fascinating, baccarat, wine, noisy, ancient, stone, impressive, old, classical, long, frozen, abrupt, bending, smooth, cold, juice, orange, brick, crooked, tasty, sour, wide, extended, dirty, spilled, a the, my, his, their, boy, girl, true, real, second, falling, rotten, text, interesting, appealing, mobile, modern, plastic, gold, boring, exciting, destroyed

Unit 5

The Article. The Equivalents of the Definite and the Indefinite Articles

Ex. 1. Comment on the kinds of nouns in the following sentences.

1. At first the Earth was large, but every moment she grew smaller. 2. India is a land of cotton, rice and tea. 3. His family always visits us when they come to London. 4. The people of Africa are fighting for their freedom and independence. 5. In spite of their truncheons the police were helpless. 6. Coffee was taken on the veranda. 7. How beautiful is youth, how beautiful is life! 8. We placed the plastic furniture on the porch. 9. People everywhere need food, clothing and shelter. 10. Half of the children in the world go to bed hungry. 11. Western civilization probably began in an area near the Tigris River. 12. Stuart likes to listen to music while he does his homework. 13. The government talks about the rate of inflation all the time. 14. 'A thing of beauty is a joy forever...' (*John Keats*). 15. Planets only reflect light.

Ex. 2. In each of the following groups of nouns pick out the one that is different in class from the others. Justify your choice.

1. quietness, country, lake, sun
2. crew, team, man, crowd
3. English, Germany, river, Bavaria

4. laughter, gaiety, joy, happiness, humourist
5. people, police, women, cattle
6. boy, dog, girl, family
7. information, advice, work, difficulty""
8. tea, milk, bread, sandwich
9. table, pen, coal, sofa
10. Mexico, Europe, France, city
11. freedom, sorrow, luck, money
12. newspaper, adventure, computer, desk
13. sailor, ship, crew, boat
14. question, answer, riddle, idea
15. jury, government, audience, water

Ex. 3. Write in the singular.

Skies, skis, Negroes, zeros, parties, keys, flies, files, cuckoos, hairdos, pianos, stories, taxis, tomatoes, matches, languages, roofs, leaves, mice, feet, data, deer, oxen, moose, halves, brethren, cliffs, tuna, bases, criteria, Japanese.

Ex. 4. Explain the use of the articles.

1. I hate writing letters. The job drives me mad. 2. See you later at the University. 3. An apple a day keeps the doctor away. 4. The moon has risen. 5. A cat will never scratch a baby. 6. He has a watch of his own. 7. A glass of milk a day will save your teeth. 8. I said nothing of the kind. 9. Did Ann get the job she applied for? 10. This is a nice house. Has it got a garden? 11. The door opened, and a woman came in. 12. We watched the fireworks from our window. 13. A day to come seems longer than a year that's gone. (*Scottish proverb*) 14. Let's meet in the dining hall after lunch. 15. He who looks for a friend without a fault will never find one. (*American proverb*)

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Вы закрыли дверь? 2. Солнце находится там с 10 до 15. 3. Хотите чашку кофе? 4. У него есть собственная книга на эту тему. 5. Ребенок должен заниматься спортом. 6. Я сделаю вам бутерброд с колбасой. 7. Вот статья, которой вы интересовались. 8. Словарь, который мне привезли из Лондона, очень хороший. 9. Я хочу купить телевизор. 10. Я должен написать письмо. Дай мне ручку, пожалуйста. 11. Том сел на ближайший к двери стул. 12. Дай мне, пожалуйста, яблоко. 13. Молоко кислое, я, пожалуй, выпью сок. 14. Это действительно проблема. 15. Где карта? Меня просили принести ее.

Ex. 6. Insert words as substitutes of articles before the nouns and translate the following sentences into English.

Model: Я видел ... фильм вчера. — Я видел один фильм вчера. I saw a film yesterday.

1. Передай мне, пожалуйста, ... линейку. 2. Я видел его ... неделю назад. 3. Дай мне ... журнал, который ты купил вчера. Я хотел прочитать там ... статью об Англии. 4. Пока тебя не было, сюда приходил ... претендент на освободившуюся должность. Мы поговорили немного. Мне он понравился. Симпатичный молодой человек. 5. У тебя есть ... испано-русский словарь? Мне надо найти там ... слово. 6. Давай встретимся в ... столовой через ... час. 7. Брайан всегда съедает ... яблоко за обедом. 8. Вчера я заходила к ... приятелю, чтобы поговорить с ним по ... важному делу. 9. Я видела ... странное животное в зоопарке. Кажется, его называют коала (koala). 10. Он мечтает купить ... дом за городом. 11. Если тебе нужна ... книга о Шотландии, сходи в библиотеку. 12. ... факс сломан. Тебе придется позвонить им. 13. — Ты сделал ... перевод, который я тебе дал? — Да, вот он. 14. Он поднял глаза и увидел ... птицу. Птица была очень красивая. 15. ... преподаватель должен быть терпеливым.

Ex. 7. Make the right choice.

1. John ran (quick, quickly). 2. She thinks (well, good) of Peter. 3. Jean sat (comfortable, comfortably). 4. John spoke (sad, sadly) to Jane. 5. He behaves (honest, honestly). 6. She speaks English (fluent, fluently). 7. John did the exercises (easy, easily). 8. She was (bad, badly) hurt. 9. Are these books (good, well)? 10. We don't like to drink, (bitter, bitterly) tea. 11. The table has a (smooth, smoothly) surface. 12. That is an (intense, intensely) novel. 13. Rita plays the violin (good, well). 14. The sun is shining (bright, brightly). 15. I thought she looked (beautiful, beautifully) tonight.

Ex. 8. Paraphrase the following sentences using verbs and adverbs instead of nouns and adjectives.

Model: He is a quick worker, isn't he? — He works quickly, doesn't he?

1. When we arrived there was a heavy rain. 2. Why did you give him such a cold look? 3. She is a quiet sleeper, isn't she? 4. Electricity brought a wonderful change to the life of the people. 5. He did a very good translation of the article in the newspaper. 6. They did a lot of hard work in the summer. 7. I am sure she will give you a very good description of the places she'll be visiting during her trip. 8. Peter is a careful driver. 9. Harry is a slow eater. 10. Peter is a fast runner.

11. Mary has a good voice. 12. The children were very quiet listening to their mother's story. 13. It was an abrupt end to the play. 14. It was a rapid decision on his part. 15. It is an easy task for Jane.

Ex. 9. Write a poem to Grammar using a rhyme pattern called a cinquain. Here is an example.

Triangles pointy edges revolving, rotating, angling triangles are all different. 180°	Line 1:	one word subject/noun
	Line 2:	two words adjectives that describe line 1
	Line 3:	three words verbs that relates to line 1
Elephants gray and wrinkly are large have great ivory tusks endangered	Line 4:	four words feelings or a complete sentence that relates to line 1
	Line 5:	one word synonym of line 1 or any word that sums it up

Unit 6

The Possessive Case of Nouns. Articles with Nouns in the Main Syntactical Functions.

Personal, Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns

Ex. 1. Find equivalents to every indefinite article in the following sentences.

1. A boy I know told me this. 2. A sweater can be worn with either trousers or a skirt. 3. I'm giving you a clean handkerchief. 4. I'll put a cherry in every glass. 5. A girl of her age should act differently. 6. A cactus will never bloom if you water it too often. 7. Add a carrot or two and it will taste much better. 8. There is a word I don't know in this sentence. 9. My husband left a pair of spectacles here last night. 10. I think it was a trick to divert your attention. 11. She was wearing a scarf around her shoulders. 12. Lisa bought a balloon for her little sister. 13. A bad wound may heal, but a bad name will kill. (*Scottish proverb*) 14. Rome was not built in a day. 15. A mistake can be a teacher of success.

Ex. 2. Insert articles where necessary.

A ... prom is ... dance that American students have to celebrate school graduation or other school events. ... student can have ... junior prom and ... senior prom. ... prom is ... big event for ... American student. It is ... big event for ... school too. Usually there is ... committee to organize ... prom. ... committee is responsible for ... decorations and for hiring ... band. ... committee also prepares ... snacks and ... soft drinks (sodas). Each high school has its own tradition of celebrating ... prom. Usually ... students wear very formal outfits for this occasion. ... boys wear tuxedos and ... girls wear ... evening gowns. In many schools before going to ... prom, ... students go to ... nice restaurant for dinner. In some areas they have ... house party after ... prom.

B I bought ... new computer yesterday. ... computer has... powerful processor, ... colour monitor and ... English-Russian keyboard. It also has such special features as ... modem, and ... fax. ... modem allows me to go on the Internet and look up things there. It's like having all the libraries in the world in my room. ... fax feature allows me to send words and images to people over ... telephone line. To get your fax to ... person on the other end he should have ... fax machine or ... fax feature in his computer. The modem I have is ... 28 800 modem which means that it transmits the information at ... speed of 28 800 kilobytes per second. I am very happy with my computer. I plan to save some money and buy ... scanner and ... colour printer later on. ... scanner will allow me to transfer ... copy of ... document or ... page from the book directly to my computer without typing it. I will have to buy ... software program to go with ... scanner to perform this task.

Ex. 3. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Она учительница. Она учительница английского языка. Она учительница нашей школы. 2. Я не могу найти книгу, которую вы мне дали вчера. 3. У Барбары серое пальто и синяя шляпа. 4. Кофе готов? 5. Студенты нашей группы часто отдыхают вместе. 6. Я оставила ручку дома. 7. На площадке стоял мальчик лет десяти. 8. Дверь заперта. 9. У вас есть телефон? 10. Телефон не в порядке. 11. Волга — красивая река. 12. На лестнице темно. 13. Ты любишь собак? 14. Не дразни собаку. 15. У тебя есть ручка? 16. Ручка не пишет. 17. Когда мы пишем, мы пользуемся ручками. 18. Где ключ? 19. Сколько квартир в доме? 20. Мне нужно снять комнату. 21. Проветри комнату. 22. У тебя нет ножа? 23. Возьми нож и отрежь кусок хлеба. 24. Мы не знали, что здесь есть озеро. 25. Озеро глубокое.

Ex. 4. Supply the missing possessive pronouns.

1. The cat drank ... milk greedily. 2. Something has got into ... ear. 3. Nice to see you. How's ... family? 4. Is this your new boyfriend? What's ... name? 5. I have to call Jackie, but I don't remember ... number. 6. We are going to stay at the Bush's. We like ... new house. 7. That's not ... headache! We know it's ... problem. 8. I have ... own room. It's good when you have a room of ... own. 9. The house is big, so my children have rooms of ... own. 10. When I am eighteen I am going to have a car of ... own. 11. My children are grown up and they have lives of ... own. 12. One should always mind ... own business, Now that I have a family of ... own, I'd like you to meet ... wife. It was impossible to read the expression of ... face. 15. It's an ancient city. ... history dates back to Roman times.

Ex.5

A Change the following sentences into the plural making all the necessary changes.

1. It's a business letter. 2. This is a second generation computer. 3. That was our new teacher. 4. It's a fax for Helen. 5. This is a top secret. 6. That song was a great hit. 7. It's a new shop. 8. This is a smashing dress. 9. That was your choice. 10. He's a cute child.

B Translate into English paying special attention to the use of the demonstrative pronouns.

1. Это мои рыбки, а не твои, Саша. 2. Дай мне вон тот словарь с верхней полки. 3. Это господин Романов. Он с острова, который зовется Сахалин. 4. — Кто те люди? — Они наши новые сотрудники. 5. Этот певец вчера на концерте был действительно хорош. 6. — Это ваши перчатки? — Нет, мои новые. 7. Это были незабываемые годы! 8. Это наши английские гости из Шеффилда. 9.— Что это был за шум на улице ночью? — Понятия не имею. 10. Проходите сюда, пожалуйста, и заполните бланк.

Ex. 6. Complete the following using *to* or *for*.

Note: The *to*-phrase denotes a person towards whom the action is directed, the *for*-phrase denotes a person for whose benefit the action is done.

1. She describes him 2. They did it 3. He promised to find a room 4. They introduced him 5. They arranged it 6. She was so grateful 7. It belongs 8. It is very important 9. He was cruel 10. It was quite clear 11. He explained a new rule ... his students. 12. She dictated the letter ... the secretary.

13. The doctor prescribed some new pills ... me. 14. Robert bought a present ... me. 15. Send a letter ... me when you come to London.

Ex. 7. Use personal pronouns either in the nominative or in the objective case.

1. The leaders of the team were Brian and (I, me). 2. It was (he, him) who called you. 3. (We, us) seniors elected the club president. 4. It was announced that (we, us) the tenth graders were to be the first team. 5. They are not as capable as (we, us). 6. He ordered (they, them) to follow the instructions more carefully. 7. Let's keep it between you and (I, me). 8. Everyone except Charles and (she, her) came to the party. 9. No one except Andrew and (I, me) liked the idea. 10. Everyone but David and (she, her) plans to attend the meeting. 11. You should help to settle the quarrel between Henry and (she, her). 12. There was nobody in the hall except Matt and (she, her) when we arrived. 13. Only Chris and (I, me) knew their secret. 14. The dean called Jennie and (he, him). 15. The teacher asked Sindy and (I, me) to help grade the papers.

Ex. 8. Translate each noun into Russian and say if it is singular or plural.

Memoranda, parenthesis, bases, mathematics, genius, politics, media, news, measles, earnings, pants, cloth, pence, antenna, athletics, crisis, geese, louse, millenium, strata.

Ex.9

A Put the apostrophe s (' s) or just the apostrophe (') to mark the possessive case of the noun.

I. My friends skateboard. 2. A girls school. 3. Marx views. 4. An actress life. 5. The princess shoe. 6. The earth surface. 7. Bess wedding. 8. Scotlands history. 9. Burns poems. 10. The doctors tests. II. The teacher mark. 12. The sun rays. 13. A friend of Charles. 14. That boy of Liz. 15. St. James Park.

B Translate into English.

1. В начале года я стараюсь запомнить имена моих студентов. Больница Святого Алексия находится на Ленинском проспекте. 3. По дороге домой я обычно захожу в булочную, в бакалею, в овощной. Раз в месяц я посещаю парикмахерскую. 4. Это дорогой плащ. Он был куплен в магазине «Маркс и Спенсер». 5. Правнучка Чарльза Диккенса тоже писательница. 6. Климат Англии гораздо теплее и солнечней, чем многие думают. 7. Сынишка моей подруги Люси опять разбил окно. 8. Ради бога, оставь меня в покое! 9. На поверхности Луны есть кратеры. 10. — Чей это лимузин? Твой? — Нет, моего босса.

Unit 7

The Simple Present Tense. The Possessive Case of the Noun. Self-Pronouns

Ex. 1. Make the following nouns

A plural:

office, roof, key, tomato, penny, cupful, sheep, knife, tariff, salmon, Vietnamese, shrimp, parenthesis, crisis, zero, cello, solo, key, chief, video, fish.

B singular:

swine, mice, shrimp, criteria, fish, cliffs, formulas, analyses, hypotheses, memoranda, theses, data, phenomena, crises, bases, species, geniuses, genii.

Ex. 2. Use the conjoint or the absolute form of the possessive pronouns.

1. This is not my car. ... is a 1992 model. 2. You don't have enough time to wash ... hair. 3. Elizabeth is dressed very well. ... clothes were made in Italy. 4. Our house is older than the Smiths'. ... is smaller though. 5. Charles met ... wife at college, but my wife is more intelligent than 6. I managed to keep my books dry, but you got ... wet, I see. 7. I am sorry, this is not my jacket, ... is green. 8. — I saw his new car. It's a Honda. — You are wrong. He doesn't have a Honda. ... is a Dodge. 9. I'm not happy about my new house, but... is just awful. I can't understand why they've bought it. 10. It's cold in this room but in ... it's even worse. We are freezing.

Ex. 3. Form 15 reflexive verbs to match what is given below.

1. Make an effort to regain your self-control. 2. Behave as if you were in your own home. 3. Do only what you want to do. 4. Feel guilty. 5. Have a good time. 6. Take as much as you want. 7. If the knife is too sharp you can ... 8. When you go out of the bath, you take a towel and ... 9. If you fall off the ladder you may ... 10. You feel sorry for something you've done and you start to ... 11. Events in the history happen again and again. 12. To live quite alone. 13. To see something with your own eyes. 14. You touch something hot and ... 15. When something is top secret, you say it strictly ...

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Думаю, что вам пора представиться, молодой человек. 2. Он посвятил себя науке и никогда не упрекал себя за это. 3. Устра-

ивайтесь поудобнее и угощайтесь фруктами. 4. Я уговорила себя помочь им. 5. Никто не должен обманывать себя. 6. Я очутился совершенно один в чужом городе. 7. Строго между нами, но история опять повторяется. 8. Позаботьтесь о себе! 9. Они развлекались, сидя на пляже и играя в карты. 10. Наташа сама сшила свое выпускное платье. 11. Я как та кошка, которая гуляла сама по себе. Мама всегда обжигается, если готовит обед и очень торопится. Многие старые люди предпочитают жить сами по себе. Фильм сам по себе очень хорош. Я сам его видел. 15. — Ты опять порезался, пока брился? — Да. Я сам не заметил.

Ex. 5. Answer the following questions using the Absolute Possessive Case of the nouns given below.

1. Where do you buy bread, milk and meat?
2. Where can you have your watch repaired?
3. Where can you have your dress made?
4. Where do you order a new suit?
5. Where can you buy flowers?
6. Where can you have your hair cut?
7. Where can one buy pair of glasses?
8. Where do you have your prescription written?
9. Where do you have your pets taken when they are sick?
10. Where can you have your gold chain repaired?
11. Where can you have your teeth filled?
12. In what fast food restaurant can you have a cheeseburger and a milkshake?
13. Where can you have your teeth cleaned?
14. Where can you buy the most expensive things in London?

baker's, butcher's, florist's, watchmaker's, tailor's, Harrods, chemist's, greengrocer's, hairdresser's, dairy, optician's, doctor's, jeweller's, vet's, dentist's, McDonald's, dental hygienist's

Ex. 6. Fill in the blanks with articles where necessary.

1. When I opened ... letter ... folded sheet of paper fell out.
2. ... door leading to ... kitchen stood wide open.
3. There is ... taxi waiting downstairs, ... driver says he won't wait any longer.
4. One should never leave valuables in ... hotel bedroom, darling.
5. ... telephone is ringing, will you answer it, dear?
6. Is there ... telephone there?
7. I'm afraid ... banana is a little bit off, better take ... apple.
8. I looked up and saw ... speedboat no more than twenty yards away. It was hopeless to shout and attract... attention of ... pilot. He couldn't hear us.
9. So this is ... place. I've always wanted to have ... look at it. ... house was Built by my grandfather just before ... war.
10. He took ... girl down to ... ground floor and out to ... terrace. On ... steps she stopped to say good-bye.
11. More than 2,000 small planets known as asteroids were found by astronomers in ... area between Mars and Jupiter. ... theory is that ... satellite of Jupiter exploded

and created ... tiny planets. 12. They went out of ... car and looked at ... house. ... house was ... good buy. They knew it from ... beginning. ... problem was where to get ... money for ... down payment (первый взнос). 13. As we ran out of ... house, I turned my head and saw ... man at ... gates. 14. Suddenly we heard ... noise that sounded like ... hundred balloons burst right in front of us.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Столовая находится на втором этаже главного корпуса. 2. Столовая не работает. 3. В этом здании есть столовая? 4. Внизу под окнами припаркована машина. Я видел ее вчера. Машина стояла на том же месте. 5. Где я могу купить учебник шведского языка? Я хочу выучить этот язык. 6. У тебя есть словарь с собой? Я забыл свой словарь дома. 7. Передай мне, пожалуйста, соль. 8. Могли бы Вы передать Максу записку? 9. Не хотите чашку кофе? 10. Фильм был довольно скучный. 11. Это был интересный фильм, и мы хорошо провели время. 12. Угощайтесь! Пирог очень вкусный. Это новый рецепт. 13. Я подожду тебя внизу в холле. 14. Это распространенное повествовательное предложение. 15. Это новое слово для меня. 16. Слово *teacher* является частью именного сказуемого в данном предложении.

Ex. 8. Insert articles in the following joke and retell it.

When I arrived at ... gate for ... early-morning flight from San Diego to Baltimore, there was no one at ... check-in desk. Then ... fellow in ... airline uniform walked to ... jet's gateway (рукав, ведущий к самолету) entrance and tried several times to enter ... numbers to unlock ... door. He did not have any success with it. Then, he went behind ... check-in desk and tried to switch on ... computer. Thinking that I could check in for my flight, I approached him. 'I don't know ... new code for ... gateways,' he said. 'I can't get ... computer to work, and I am not going to check you in.' Deciding that a bit of humour might help, I said, 'Are we having ... bad day?' /You'd better hope not/ he replied. 'I am your pilot.'

Ex. 9. Give answers to the questions using adverbial clauses of time. Use *when*, *before* or *after*.

Model: When will you come to see us? — I shall come to see you when (before, after) I get a holiday.

1. When will you visit your sick friend? 2. When will she start learning French? 3. When will he give up smoking? 4. When will the meet-

ing begin? 5. When will you speak to him about it? 6. When will you translate the article? 7. When will you send us a telegram? 8. When will you take your exam? 9. When will she see him? 10. When will he begin to build the new house? 11. When will he receive the fax? 12. When will you get down to business? 13. When will they publish your book?

Ex. 10. Insert the correct reflexive pronoun.

I don't like getting ready for exams by I always work better with a friend. I have a great friend at the University with whom I usually study for all the tests we take. In spite of some mishaps, we usually enjoy ... getting ready for our term exams. This year we decided to invite two more classmates to join us. There was too much to read and we hoped to combine our efforts. Besides, we consider ... smart and organized people and were sure that the four of us can work together well. As a group we got along fine. We felt comfortable with ... and there was little tension. Of course we forgot to elect a leader and found ... one day in the middle of an argument. One of us, Peggy, considers ... very creative and always comes up with ideas. She suggested that every day we should have a different group leader. We liked the idea because we could take the advantage of teaching ... how to moderate a discussion. We enjoyed ... and got ready for the exam. We learned how to work together and had more respect for

Unit8

The Article with Nouns Modified by *Such, Rather, What, Quite*. The Simple Present Tense. The Gender of the Noun

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences.

- A** 1. Золото тяжелее серебра. 2. У нас английская грамматика два раза в неделю. 3. Вода кипит при 100° по Цельсию. 4. Они просят тебя прийти сюда. 5. Мы работаем в лаборатории три раза в неделю, б. Почему ты не отвечаешь? 7. Солнце садится на западе. 8. Как называется этот журнал. 9. В котором часу вы обедаете? 10. Это меня беспокоит. 11. Температура в этой пещере все время держится на десяти градусах по Цельсию. 12. Зимой обычно идет снег. 13. Я преподаю вам английский. 14. Я вам говорю, что вы не правы. 15. Туристы всегда поражаются обилию цветов в голландских городах.

В 1. Вы опоздаете на поезд, если не возьмете такси. 2. Я не уйду, пока вы не вернетесь. 3. Пока она будет в своей комнате, я спущусь вниз. 4. Когда мне исполнится 25, я женюсь. 5. Будет полночь, когда мы доберемся до Кембриджа. 6. Я подожду, пока вы просмотрите мои документы. 7. Я расскажу тебе что-то, если ты пообещаешь ничего не говорить маме. 8. Я уверен, что он вам понравится, когда вы его увидите. 9. Если вы не скажете, кто вы, я вас не впущу. 10. Если он что-нибудь пообещает, он сдержит свое слово. 11. Когда вы приедете, я буду уже дома. 12. Если вы не поспешите, вы опоздаете на лекцию.

С 1. Я не могу сказать, придет ли он на собрание, но если он придет, он будет выступать. 2. Я бы хотел узнать, когда ваша сестра приедет в Лондон. 3. Я не знаю, сумею ли я это сделать. 4. Я бы хотел выяснить, когда он приедет. 5. Вы знаете, когда он будет дома. 6. Не могу сказать, придет ли она к нам завтра. 7. Никто не знает, когда он снова увидит Англию. 8. Боюсь, что не скажу вам, когда он будет дома. 9. Никто не надеется, что он приедет. 10. Никто не знает, что он будет рассказывать. 11. Интересно, когда он будет с ним разговаривать об этом?

Ex. 2. Put the adverbs in the following sentences into their proper places.

I. Where do you spend your summer (usually)? 2. Do you prepare your lessons in the afternoon (always)? 3. Does she come so late (always)? 4. Are you on time (always)? 5. She comes to visit her brother (rarely). 6. When do you start working (usually)? 7. The temperature falls at night during this month (frequently). 8. Do the children quarrel with each other (often)? 9. They are eager to go hiking in the mountains (always). 10. Swimming is popular with students (generally). II. You should become upset over these things (never). 12. I come to this park to relax when I have time (often). 13. We make fire in our country house to sit by it and enjoy looking at the flames (sometimes). 14. My mother goes to our country house in winter (seldom).

Ex. 3. Insert the right article before the nouns modified by the words *such*, *rather*, *what*, *quite*.

1. It's a pity you don't realize what ... great chance it is! 2. I can't believe that such ... small things can upset you so much. 3. How can you marry such ... young girl! 4. Frederic is quite ... decent chap. 5. It turned out to be quite ... pleasant party. 6. Rebecca was rather ... unusual writer. 7. Nobody expected him to write such ... birthday essay. 8. We mustn't ignore such ... serious symptoms. 9. I just don't know what ... possibility I might have. 10. This candy is really such ... temptation. 11. What ... surprise! A diamond ring! 12. Have you

ever met such ... whizz kid? 13. We are having rather ... unusual weather this summer. 14. My friends are quite ... ordinary people. 15. We've got rather ... unusual information this morning.

Ex. 4. Comment on the use of the Simple Present Tense.

1. She speaks English. 2. She is fond of children. 3. Vegetables grow well in this climate. 4. We have three exams each term. 5. He takes a vitamin pill every day. 6. I hear somebody speaking in the hall. 7. I'll give you a call if he shows up. 8. Three times three makes nine. 9. The river Amazon flows into the Pacific Ocean. 10. Jack plays tennis twice a week. 11. I understand what you mean. 12. Every morning I come to the office, turn on my computer, check E-mail and answer the messages. 13. I am told that you are leaving us soon. 14. I can't do anything unless he gives me the permission.

Ex. 5. Translate using the Simple Present Tense.

1. Я слышала, что вы едете работать в Англию этим летом. 2. Я не знаю, кто отвечает за оформление зала. 3. Единственная вещь, которая является постоянной в этом мире, это изменение. 4. То, что я слышу, звучит весьма странно. 5. Я хорошо помню выражение его лица в ту минуту. 6. Они уедут, как только придет автобус. 7. Я не люблю фильмы ужасов и никогда не смотрю их. 8. Вечером после работы он обычно гуляет с собакой около часа, затем ужинает, просматривает почту и читает газеты. 9. Цены на продукты меняются почти еженедельно. 10. Этот университет предлагает очень интересный курс по психологии. 11. Ваши ремарки не позволяют мне сосредоточиться. 12. Он обожает спорить обо всем. 13. Все больше и больше людей осознает важность сохранения природных ресурсов для будущих поколений. 14. Она умеет печатать со скоростью 150 слов в минуту всеми пальцами. 15. Этот цветок сладко пахнет.

Ex. 6. Give answers to the following negative statements.

Model: Mary doesn't read a lot. — *Yes, she does.* Нет, она много читает.

Nick doesn't like coffee with every meal. — *No, he doesn't.* Да, он не любит.

1. — They don't know the town. — Да, не знают. 2. — She doesn't need help. — Нет, нужна. 3. — You don't understand his question. — Нет, понимаю. 4. — They don't like your pronunciation. — Да, не нравится. 5. — He never needs anything. — Нет, нуждается. 6. — They never get dressed at the same time. — Да, не одеваются. 7. — He, hasn't entered the University. — Нет, он поступил. 8. — They don't know

the rule. — Нет, знают. 9. — He doesn't drink coffee. — Да, не пьет. 10. — Dick doesn't play the piano. — Нет, он играет. 11. — Diane doesn't smoke. — Нет, курит. 12. — He never comes home late. — Да, не приходит.

Ex. 7. Insert articles in the following story and then put questions to the words and phrases in bold type.

It is ... story from ... **book of fables** by **Aesop**. ... **boy was swimming** in ... river and sank into ... deep water. He was in danger of being drowned. ... **man** who was passing by heard his cries for help. Running to ... riverside, ... **man began to scold** ... boy for his carelessness. ... man did not make ... attempt **to help** ... boy. Nearly sinking, ... boy yelled, '**Help me first, then scold me.**' Aesop's moral is '**In... crisis, give... assistance, not... advice.**'

Ex. 8. Choose the right word.

1. He has ... own business.
a) his b) an c) the d) him
2. What I would really like is a car of... own.
a) the b) one's c) my d) mine
3. We had no difficulty in making ... understood.
a) us b) our c) ourselves
4. Ted is old enough to ... now.
a) dress himself b) get dressed c) be dressed d) dressed
5. They are very fond of
a) themselves b) himself c) oneselves d) each other
6. Richard is very conceited and has a very high opinion of
a) himself b) his c) him d) them
7. Don't do everything for..., he must learn to do things for
a) him b) himself c) themselves d) his
8. The painting belongs to an old friend of
a) of my father b) of my father's c) from my father
9. If you ask me I prefer to let people make up ... minds.
a) their own b) each other's c) one another's d) the others'
10. Don't tell me your problems. I've got enough problems of
a) me b) my own c) my d) mine own

Ex. 9. Find all the nouns in the following sentences and explain how you understand their gender.

1. Mr. Harris was a born bachelor.
2. The mass media is discussing the potential candidacy of Hilary Clinton as the first woman President of the United States.
3. Three times a week Alex had to work as

a waitress to supplement her parents' allowance. 4. Frances was an heiress to a large fortune. 5. Brandon loves his boat. She is his greatest passion. 6. Switzerland is very popular with her neighbors. 7. We made a voyage on *The Beauty of the West!* She is a great ship. 8. I have a collie. He is two years old. 9. Please repeat the question to the applicant so that he understands it. 10. As a member of Congress he took part in the campaign. 11. The fire-fighter did his best to save the people. 12. Every citizen should know his rights. 13. Every house has its advantages and disadvantages. 14. I patted the dog and she wagged her tail. 15. This cat's a he, not a she.

Ex. 10. Put the verbs in brackets in the right form.

1. Bacteria (consist) of only a single cell, but don't let their small size and seeming simplicity fool you. 2. Bacteria (be) an amazingly complex and fascinating group of creatures. 3. Bacteria (have been found) that can live in temperatures above the boiling point and in cold that would freeze your blood. 4. Bacteria 'eat' everything from sugar and starch to sunlight, sulfur and iron. 5. There's even a species of bacteria that (withstand) blasts of radiation 1,000 times greater than would kill a human being. 6. The memoranda (discuss) the basics of foreign policy. 7. Like the plants, the green algae (contain) two forms of chlorophyll, which is used to capture light energy. 8. The vertebrae (be) the bones that compose the spine. 9. The antenna (be) broken by the gust of the wind and we had no reception last Sunday. 10. A certain datum (be) already provided at the previous meeting but we all needed more information to make an intelligent decision. 11. The blood samples were sent to the Center for Disease Control in Atlanta and the diagnoses (be confirmed). 12. It was University's 150th anniversary and thousands of alumni (be present) at the new stadium to enjoy the celebration.

Unit 9

The Use of Articles with Countable and Uncountable Nouns. The Simple Present Tense

Ex. 1. Translate what is given in brackets using the Simple Present or the Simple Future Tense.

1. She will tell you (если вы ее об этом спросите). 2. She won't tell you (если вы ее об этом не спросите). 3. She tells me (что ничего не будет готово). 4. I'm not sure at all (когда она вернется). 5. I shall stay here

(до тех пор, пока он не придет). 6. I wonder (когда вы будете готовы). 7. I'll tell her about it (как только она меня спросит). 8. Read this letter to me (пока я буду есть). 9. I wonder (понравится ли ей эта книга). 10. Wait (пока он не придет). 11. I don't know (когда концерт закончится). 12. Keep doing the good job (пока ты не достигнешь желаемого результата). 13. Nobody knows (когда театр вернется с гастролей). 14. I don't recommend you to talk to him (пока он не одобрит). 15. He won't take any steps (пока не вернется его шеф).

Ex. 2. Complete the following sentences in any suitable way.

1. I'll be able to pay as soon as I ... 2. Don't give him any money until ... 3. I shall prepare dinner while you ... 4. I shall do my shopping after ... 5. He'll do his homework before he ... 6. When I see him ... 7. I shall never forget you as long as I ... 8. Don't forget to remind him about it when you ... 9. While the children are playing in the garden she ... 10. As soon as she persuades me I ... 11. Even if he has a computer he ... 12. Unless you tell him the truth he ... 13. After she graduates from the college she ... 14. Until he knows all the facts he ... 15. Before you agree to this assignment you ...

Ex. 3. Give a complete answer to each question.

Model: What will you do if the weather is fine tomorrow? — If the weather is fine tomorrow, I shall go to the park.

1. What will you do if it rains tomorrow? 2. What will the teacher say if you don't do your homework? 3. What will you do if I ask you to tell a story? 4. What will you say if I ask you to lend me some money? 5. What will you do if there are no classes tomorrow? 6. What will you do if you lose your student card? 7. What will you do if your friend falls ill? 8. What will you do if you have free time tonight? 9. What will you say if your friend invites you to the theatre? 10. What will you say if somebody asks you a question that you can't answer? 11. What will you do if you win a lottery? 12. What will you answer if somebody dials your number by mistake? 13. What places will you visit if you go to London? 14. What countries will you visit if you have time and money? 15. What will you do if you find yourself on an uninhabited island?

Ex. 4. Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

Model: I go (in summer, to Paris, usually). — I usually go to Paris in summer.

1. We meet (on Sunday afternoon, in the park, always). 2. I saw John (in the office, about an hour ago). 3. Sarah has a cup of tea (in bed,

always, before she gets up). 4. We must invite them (next week to your house). 5. Mary goes to church (on Sunday, always). 6. We eat (usually, when we go to the theatre, out). 7. He plays (well, in an important game, always). 8. He spoke (very well, at the debate, last night). 9. He arrived (at the meeting, at eight o'clock). 10. We are meeting (tomorrow, at John's house, at nine o'clock). 11. We waited for him (yesterday, at the bus stop, for an hour). 12. A car in front of us moved (into the left lane, suddenly). 13. Jack was (inattentive, yesterday, in class).
 14. He comes on time (always, for our club meetings, on Tuesdays).
 15. We go (seldom, to the country house, in winter).

Ex. 5. Insert the required articles.

1. ... spoon is made of ... wood. 2. This bed is made of ... oak. 3. ... butter and ... cheese are made from ... milk. 4. I can write ... letter with ... ink or ... pencil. 5. I want ... glass of ... cold milk. 6. ... tea is very hot. 7. Would you like ... cup of ... tea? 8. She ate ... ice-cream after dinner and fell ill. 9. I'm afraid ... milk has gone sour, Ann. 10. The melting point of ... ice is zero Centigrade. 11. What is ... paper made from? 12. ... good furniture is usually made of ... wood. 13. ... spoon of ... good honey will make you sleep well. 14. ... word of ... truth could save ... situation. 15. It's too hot. There is not ... breath of ... air.

Ex. 6. Translate into English paying particular attention to the use of articles.

1. Где файлы? 2. Ты узнаешь эту женщину? Это известная актриса. 3. Это такая очевидная ложь! 4. Подлежащее этого предложения — местоимение. 5. Он не отрицает ни единого обвинения (accusation). 6. Где факс? Он мне нужен немедленно. 7. Где мой портфель? Нет, это не мой. Мой — темно-коричневый. 8. Плакат очень яркий. Его надо повесить напротив входа. 9. Библиотека в нашем университете не очень большая, но современная. Это новая, современная библиотека, где ты можешь через компьютер заказать какую угодно книгу из любого университета. 10. Вторник — выходной, и мы собираемся за город. 11. Я собираюсь провести год в Англии. 12. Вам понравилась статья о голландских городах в последнем журнале? 13. Не могли бы вы одолжить мне словарь на это занятие? 14. Странный цветок рос у края дороги. 15. Можно мне чашку горячего шоколада?

Ex. 7. Make the sentences complete by using the words in brackets.

1. You should explain this term in (скобках). 2. I have never seen such a (вид) before. 3. I have never thought of it as a (кризис). 4. I

don't understand this (формула). 5. What an interesting (явление)! 6. I don't think that these (данные) are correct. 7. The doctor confirmed the (диагноз) and the boy was taken to hospital. 8. There are no (оснований) for this accusation. 9. Environmental studies have become a part of the new school (учебного плана). 10. Such (темы) for dissertations have become very popular recently. 11. This (гипотеза) cannot be proved. 12. The entire day was filled with one (кризис) after another. 13. He was invited to participate only on the (основе) that he might tell us some new facts about the matter. 14. I enjoyed the (серии) about Australia and I wouldn't mind watching them once again. 15. I sent him a (меморандум, докладная записка) regarding our program two days ago but he hasn't replied yet.

Ex. 8. Practise the use of common and possessive case of nouns and correct the wrong sentences.

1. After the curtain dropped there was a moment silence and then the audience burst into applause. 2. London's double-decker can be found on any tourist flyer about England. 3. He decided to send the girl to her aunt in Australia for her to be out of harms way. 4. The Tate Gallery houses two great collections: of British art from the 16th century to the present day, and of modern international art. 5. Eton is a famous boys school. 6. David and Bill's business is flourishing. 7. Clinton administration concentrated on the reforming of national welfare system. 8. I couldn't choose between Jack and Todd's points of view. 9. They announced that all teachers' salaries will be raised three percent. 10. We'll walk there. The theatre is just around the corner, at a stone's throw from here. 11. Two applicants interviews are scheduled for today. 12. This book gives valuable information on women's nutrition needs. 13. Only seven out of 123 Sophocles's tragedies are preserved in full till our days. 14. The world's history was an elective subject for the seniors. 15. I am pretty sure that he can't come on Sunday. It's his sister's-in-law birthday.

Ex. 9. Find the right uncountable noun. Make up your own sentence with this word

1. It is sweet, it is used to make candies. 2. A drink made of fruit. 3. Expensive metal used to make jewelry. 4. You write with it. 5. You breathe it. 6. You put it on a sandwich. 7. Frozen water. 8. You earn it. 9. It is your life energy source. 10. People usually sleep during this time. 11. They say it makes the world go round. 12. Dostoevsky believed that it would save the world. 13. Traditional Russian houses are made from this material. 14. Every room has it. 15. They say, that there is no fire without it.

Unit 10

The Indefinite Pronouns. The Simple Present and the Simple Future Tense

Ex. 1. Give answers to the questions using adverbial clauses of time.

Model: When will you call him? — *I will call him as soon as I get home.*

1. When will you tell us about the journey? 2. When will you take your holiday? 3. When will you be free? 4. When will you move to your new flat? 5. When will you make a report? 6. When will you translate this article? 7. When will they discuss this book? 8. When will she get the dinner ready? 9. When will you speak to him? 10. When will you write him a letter? 11. When will you buy the computer? 12. When will he give you the information? 13. When will you speak with him about our problem? 14. When will you go to England?

Ex. 2. Answer the questions in the affirmative using clauses of time and condition.

Model: — There will be a meeting at your University at six.

— *Yes. I know there will be one.*

— Will you attend it if you finish your studies by then?

— *If I finish my studies, I shall certainly go there.*

1. We are having fine weather now, aren't we? Will you go to the country this week if it keeps fine? 2. You don't like shopping but sometimes you have to do some. Will you go shopping today if your day's work is over? 3. I am sorry. The director is busy and can't see you right now. Will you wait till he has time to see you? 4. Your friend is not very good at English. Will her parents be disappointed if she makes poor progress? 5. You are going to leave, aren't you? Will you wait for me if I promise to be back by five? 6. The patient doesn't feel well, does he? Will he stay in bed until he feels well again? 7. You aren't ready, are you? Will you be ready with your work if we come at six? 8. You can't come for the interview next Monday, can you? Will you come on Tuesday if our executive director finds time to talk to you? 9. I am sorry but the tickets are sold out. Will you be able to make it if I call you half an hour before the play in case of cancellations? 10. You are very busy in November, aren't you? Will you make your presentation in December if we can change the dates of the meeting? 11. I am sorry we don't have the right equipment for your slide show. Will you do it tomorrow if we find the right projector? 12. He is not going to be there tonight, is

he? Will you talk to him some other time if we persuade him to listen to your arguments? 13. He refuses the operation, doesn't he? Will he change his mind if we find him another surgeon? 14. You don't believe that the plan will work, do you?—Will you meet with us if we agree to reconsider some points? 15. You are not interested in this job, are you? Will you change your mind if they offer you a higher salary?

Ex. 3. Use *unless* to replace *if not* in the following sentences.

Model: If it doesn't stop raining soon they'll have to cancel the ball game. — *Unless it stops raining soon they'll have to cancel the ball game.*

1. If he doesn't study harder, he won't pass the exam. 2. If she doesn't learn to be more courteous, she will never have any friends. 3. If there isn't more snow, we won't be able to go skiing. 4. If we don't leave right away we'll miss our bus. 5. You'll lose the money if you don't put it in a safe place. 6. If you don't watch your diet, you'll become sick. 7. If he doesn't get here soon, we'll have to leave without him. 8. Your pronunciation won't improve if you don't work harder at it. 9. Don't make any conclusions if you don't know all the facts. 10. They won't hire you if you don't make a good impression on the selection committee. 11. We won't get there on time if you don't make the reservations today. 12. The negotiations will be very difficult if you don't have two interpreters there. 13. We won't move forward with this if you don't talk to him personally. 14. You won't believe it if you don't see it with your own eyes. 15. The cake won't taste good if you don't add some more sugar.

Ex. 4. Paraphrase the following sentences using adverbs or adjectives. Make all the necessary changes.

Model: It's quite safe to discuss the question with him. — *You can discuss the question quite safely with him.*

1. Her English is very nice. 2. Eight o'clock is the usual supper time for our family. 3. She was quick in giving answers to my questions. 4. He is a careful worker. 5. She has a beautiful voice. 6. When he woke up there was a heavy snowfall. 7. — Are you going to the station to meet them? — We don't know the exact time of their arrival. 8. It was an abrupt end of the conversation. 9. How bright the sun is! 10. She is a poor player. 11. There was a rapid knock on the door. 12. It was a quick reaction to the remark. 13. It was a slow movement on his part but we noticed it. 14. His smile was happy and

we knew that everything was fine. 15. His behaviour was strange and it aroused some suspicions.

Ex. 5. Read the following sentences paying attention to the nouns. Explain when the nouns are countable and when they are uncountables.

1. The melting point of ice is zero Centigrade. Will you bring us two strawberry ices? 2. When water freezes, it changes into ice. 3. This vase is made of glass. I'm terribly sorry, but I've broken two of your beautiful glasses. I can't read without glasses. 4. I've seen three fires in the last month. In many English houses there are wood fires, coal fires and electric fires. 5. Two coffees, please. I like strong coffee. 6. Our house is made of brick. He carried a brick in each hand. 7. Steel is made of iron and carbon. It's always good to take a small iron when you travel. 8. We have more hours of light in summer than in winter. You should turn off all the lights when you leave the house. 9. Wine can develop better taste through aging. I like sweet wine. 10. In a good restaurant a fruit is sometimes served at the end of dinner. Fruit is a part of a balanced diet. 11. There was a hair in my glass and I couldn't make myself drink the juice. Get your hair set at the hairdresser's. 12. A strong cheese is usually aged. Cheese is made from milk. 13. Tea is sold in many flavours. A good restaurant usually gives you a selection of teas.

Ex. 6. Insert *some, any, no*.

1. Are there ... messages for me? — No, there aren't ... messages for you. There are ... letters in the mail-box. 2. I have got ... interesting news to tell you. 3. There isn't ... butter on the table. 4. There aren't ... magazines here. 5. If ... letters arrive for me, can you forward them to this address? 6. Take ... fresh butter from the fridge. 7. Wash your hands and face. There is ... hot water in the kettle. 8. Are there ... mistakes in his test? 9. Have you got any English CDs at home? 10. You may read ... books you like. 11. Where can I buy ... flowers? 12. You can come ... day you like. 13. Could I have ... of those apples? 14. I hope there won't be ... rain tomorrow. 15. ... of the glasses were broken. 16. He denies finding ... letters.

Ex. 7. Translate the following sentences.

1. У него не осталось денег. 2. У вас есть друзья в Москве? 3. Он дал мне несколько книг, которые я просил. 4. Он не сообщил нам никаких новостей. 5. Не хотите супу? 6. Вы читали какие-нибудь романы Джона Гришема в прошлом году? 7. Он не смог найти никакой книги на эту тему. 8. Некоторые словари совершенно бесполезны. 9. Пожалуйста, купите молока. 10. Положите сахару в

чай. 11. В классе было несколько человек. 12. Я не получал никаких писем вчера. 13. Вы можете сесть на любой автобус. Они все едут в центр. 14. У меня нет вопросов. 15. Он сделал весь перевод без чьей-либо помощи.

Ex. 8. Insert *such a*, *rather a*, *quite a* or *what a* to modify a noun phrase

1. Why are you ... loser, John! 2. Love was ... substantial deficit in this strange family. 3. I can't stand it any longer. We have ... a dysfunctional relationship. 4. I was impressed with his vision and ability to design such an intriguing web page. ... site! 5. That is ... a box of tricks! 6. Jennet woke up with a start. That was ... dream. 7. She smiled. 'That was ... vacation!' 8. To write for this magazine! He was excited. That is ... a challenge! 9. Curt look at the structure in front of him. That was ... house. 10. We listened to it all — blues, gospel, rock, rap. ... time! 11. Why are you in ... a bad mood? 12. He substitute several words with their synonyms, shifted some paragraphs and the story took a different turn. ... difference. 13. All of them were happy to meet Uncle George. They had heard so much about him. ... a character! 14. — What is a Thanksgiving? — It is ... special day. 15. It was ... disaster. 16. James was bored. It was ... long party and he was ready to go home. 17. The story took ... interesting turn. 18. Nobody smiled. It was ... clumsy joke. 19. Elegant is ... a good word to use to describe these flowers. 20. You shouldn't take these pills for so long. This is ... strong medicine.

Unit 11

Revision (Units 1 to 10)

Ex. 1. Comment on the syntactic function of the words in bold type.

1. He is a **geologist** and spends his days **drawing maps**. 2. **We** usually have a **huge dinner** on Christmas. 3. There were wonderful **presents** for all the kids in the box. 4. She felt **homesick** in a foreign country. 5. Helen **practises** her French every day. 6. Susan **looked** at Robert **admiringly**. 7. The girl **looked** innocent and charming. 8. How can you **doubt** my words, sir? 9. Go right away, and **be** as quick as you can. 10. Now she **stopped crying** and began **to work**. 11. The boy **was smiling** to himself as he **fell asleep**. 12. I had such a **delicious big** supper **last night!** 13. My parents **don't seem** too **sympathetic** to my new lifestyle. 14. I **think** Edward **is making** a serious mistake. 15. The window **must have been broken by the wind**.

Ex. 2. Ask as many questions as you can about the following sentences. Remember information.

1. The best-known Indo-European language family represents about 1.6 billion people and includes most of the languages of Europe, northern India and several languages of the region in between. 2. Twenty-six letters of the English alphabet are based on the Roman alphabet, which is about 2,500 years old. 3. The most complete 13-volume dictionary of the English language, the Oxford English Dictionary, contains 500,000 words. 4. It has been estimated, however, that the present English vocabulary consists of more than one million words, including slang and dialect expressions, scientific and technical terms. 5. There is a bit more than two pounds in a kilogram. 6. Smithsonian Institute in New York is the world's largest museum complex, containing fourteen museums and the National Zoo. 7. Coffee was first known to the Abyssinians in eastern Africa. 8. London's population reached its peak of 8.5 million in 1939. 9. Since then it is falling down by around 10% a year as people move out to greener suburbs. 10. Around a million and a quarter commuters travel in and out every day from places as far afield as Oxford, Brighton, or Peterborough. 11. London also receives 23 million visitors a year from all over the globe. 12. The most ancient and romantic symbol of British monarchy is a simple sandstone set at the base of the Coronation Chair in Westminster Abbey. 13. It came from Ireland, where it was known as Stone of Destiny, and was used to crown the Kings of Tara as early as the fourth and the fifth centuries. 14. The Stone then went to Scotland, and its first recorded use was in 1057, when Macbeth's stepson Lulach, was crowned King of Scotland at Scone, Perthshire. 15. Edward I carried it off to Westminster in 1296 and it has been used for the coronation of every English monarch since.

Ex. 3. Put the adverbs in the proper places in the sentences.

1. Jennie goes to bed around 11 o'clock p.m. (usually, every day). 2. The telephone rang (loudly, at 7 a.m., in the study) and woke me up. 3. He studied (vigorously, at the University, in 1994). 4. Mary spoke to a group of people (lively, at the registration desk). 5. The orchestra played (at the concert, very well, yesterday). 6. Mark worked (yesterday, very late) and is pretty tired today. 7. Chuck spoke (at the conference, very well, last week). 8. The actors performed (at the play, the other day, superbly). 9. Barbara behaved (last week, during our meeting, strangely). 10. Brian drove (last night, carelessly). 11. The speaker droned on (бубнить) (yesterday, endlessly, at the presentation) and everybody got bored. 12. Cheryl takes notes (in

class, always). 13. The Prime Minister spoke on the issue (at the press conference, carefully, the other day). 14. The team played (last week, badly). 15. She sang (extremely well, last night, at the concert).

Ex. 4. Choose the right form of the verbs and the pronouns in brackets.

1. There (is, are) no bases to (this, these) accusations. 2. (This, these) data (is, are) interesting. 3. (This, these) formulae (has, have) to be changed. 4. The memoranda on comparative prices (is, are) on your table. 5. (This, these) criteria (is, are) not valid (обоснованы). 6. The vertebra (is, are) broken. 7. (This, these) phenomenon (is, are) worth studying. 8. What (is, are) the graduation criteria in Britain? 9. The candelabra in the concert hall (was, were) gorgeous. 10. The chemist was not satisfied with (this, these) analyses. 11. We must fasten (this, these) globe on (its, their) axis. 12. (This, these) oasis (was, were) a mirage. 13. Appendices (are, is) usually given at the end of the book. 14. (This, these) diagnoses (is, are) being checked now. 15. (This, these) hypothesis (is, are) true.

Ex. 5. Insert the right article.

1. ... tourists made ... fire in ... forest to cook ... hot meal. 2. ... pilgrim is ... person who travels ... long way, usually to visit ... holy place. 3. ... way to ... man's heart is through his stomach. 4. This is ... matter in which ... women differ greatly from ... men. 5. We didn't find ... boy in ... house. His mother said he was having ... kick-boxing lesson. 6. Think about ... situation, there must be ... way out of it. 7. It's ... wonderful part of England and ... scenery is beautiful. 8. With ... fifth century came ... fall of Roman Empire. 9. ... whole story is ... myth. Not ... soul will believe it. 10. ... short skirt like this one may be all right for ... teenager, but not for ... grown-up woman like me. 11. — Is there ...bistro near here? — ... nearest one is just down ... road on ... left. 12. Here is ... sad ending of ... film. Not ... happy end as usual. 13. ... grammar seminar begins in ... hour in ... lecture hall. 14. ... hot shower always gives me ... nice feeling of ... relaxation. 15. — I personally don't think ... idea will work. — Why, it's ... smashing idea.

Ex. 6. Translate into English paying special attention to the use of articles.

1. Английский, на котором мы говорим сегодня, это не английский начала века. 2. Рейс 427 из Гааги прибывает через четверть часа. 3. Булочная находится на противоположной стороне улицы. 4. У тебя орфографическая ошибка в третьем абзаце, в предложе-

нии номер девять. 5. Ольга купила новый словарь. Она заплатила полстипендии за книгу. 6. Полицейский заметил странного человека около банка. Он узнал парня. Он был известным грабителем. 7. Жил-да-был волшебник. Волшебник мог творить чудеса. 8. Однажды Молли нашла древнюю книгу в библиотеке. Она нашла удивительный рецепт в книге. 9. Студенты, которых она учит, делают большие успехи. 10. Не могу понять текст — язык такой трудный. 11. Это минеральная вода. Вода газированная. 12. Я нашел нового тренера. Новый тренер очень опытный. 13. Пора сделать перерыв и перекусить. 14. У луна должна быть хорошая память. 15. Я просто не могу выполнять такую трудную работу в такое великолепное утро! Давай лучше прогуляемся по парку.

Ex. 7. Insert articles.

A Lion and a Mouse

Once ... lion was sleeping under ... tree. ... small mouse ran over his face and woke him. He grew very angry and caught ... little mouse. While he was holding ... mouse, she said, 'Oh, ... King of Beasts, don't kill me.' I'll help you one day.' ... lion only laughed at ... thought that such ... small animal could help him. But he let ... mouse go. Some time later people caught ... lion in ... net of strong ropes and, though ... lion used all his strength to free himself, he could do nothing. He only roared in anger. ... mouse heard his roar and came to ... place where he was lying. 'I heard your voice,' she said. 'I've come to help you. Do you remember what I said?' ... mouse began to cut ... net with her sharp teeth. Bit by bit she did ... work, and ... hole in ... net became bigger and bigger. At last... hole was big enough for ... lion to get out of ... net. Sometimes ... strongest need ... help of ... weakest.

Ex. 8. Use the verbs in brackets in the Simple Present or the Simple Future Tense.

1. If people in the next century (learn) how to live longer, they might have several careers in their lives. 2. They don't know if he (go) to the conference next week. 3. Don't tell him all the details unless he (ask). 4. Stay here while I (check the place). 5. I am not sure if he (talk to you about this matter). 6. I wonder if we (stay) in touch after I (move). 7. If you (move), you will touch the live wire. 8. If you (want) to find me you know where I will be. 9. I am not sure if he (join) us for the hike. 10. Everybody wonders if he (cooperate). 11. I shall make the conclusion after I (study) the report. 12. If I (take) this job, I will expect a raise. 13. You can leave after you (sign) the

papers. 14. We shall consider your application after you (provide) the recommendation.
15. Until you (become) more experienced, you won't earn much.

Ex. 9. Translate into English.

1. Ты будешь чувствовать себя более уверенно после того, как ты проработаешь несколько дней. 2. Мы должны встретиться до того, как начнется конференция. 3. Интересно, когда он сдаст свой отчет. 4. Я собираюсь найти себе другую работу, после того как закончу компьютерные курсы. 5. Если ты будешь регулярно заниматься гимнастикой, ты будешь чувствовать себя лучше. 6. Если ты дашь мне свои пленки, то я проявлю их завтра. 7. Мы посмотрим фильм после того, как прочитаем книгу. 8. Когда ты поймешь, что время — деньги, ты будешь тратить его более осторожно. 9. Последуйте моему совету и прочитайте предисловие, прежде чем вы возьметесь за книгу. 10. Дайте мне знать, пожалуйста, прежде чем вы примете окончательное решение. 11. Если они будут возражать, то мы изменим наш план. 12. Пока вы обдумываете ваши ответы, я напишу новые слова на доске. 13. Я приду на собрание обязательно, если только не заболею. 14. Пожалуйста, оставайтесь на своих местах, пока не прозвонит звонок. 15. Мы начнем действовать, как только получим от них известие.

Unit 12

The Simple Present and the Simple Future Tense. Articles with Nouns Modified by Descriptive and Limiting Attributes, indefinite Pronouns

Ex. 1. Comment on the use of articles in the following sentences.

1. Marion bought a smart dress. It's an expensive one. 2. This is the very suit I bought in London. 3. Can you remember the first girl you fell in love with? 4. It was a magic moment. Yes, it was the moment I'll remember till the end of my days. 5. At last I've got the present I've been dreaming of! What a wonderful gift! 6. The National Gallery is the most famous museum in Great Britain. 7. The whole group has participated in the phonetic contest. 8. This is the news you should know. 9. If you take the left turn you'll get to the right place. 10. St. Petersburg is the second largest city in Russia. 11. I usually

prefer to be the last one to answer at the exams. 12. My cousin takes great interest in languages. 13. He and I have the same interests. 14. I do hope that I'll get the vacancy I applied for. It's a well-paid job. 15. In a huge city like Moscow it can take two hours to get to the center of it.

Ex. 2. Insert the right article.

1. ... book on ... upper shelf seems to be ... one I've been looking for since Monday. 2. Once upon ... time there lived ... greedy king. ... king was not popular with his people. 3. Tell me something about ... islands which you've just visited. Was it ... enjoyable voyage? 4. All ... people hope for ... best. 5. ... greatest problem with many people now is ... influence of the weather on their health. 6. Alice told ... children ... following story. 7. Susan was ... only girl diaries had ever loved. 8. We shall speak about the Article at ... next seminar. 9. You have ... misprint in ... third passage, in ... sentence seven. 10. ... people she works with are very understanding. 11. ... bank is on ... opposite side of ... street. 12. Every season people try to dress in ... different style. 13. Why, Pam, you are wearing ... mini skirt! 14. And now we are going to discuss ... tests which you wrote at ... final seminar. 15. We enjoyed ... holiday we had on ... shore of the Red Sea.

Ex. 3. Translate into English paying particular attention to the use of articles with countable and uncountable nouns.

- A** 1. По телефону ответил мальчик, и он попросил кого-то из родителей. 2. У вас очаровательная дочь. 3. Девочки обычно не играют в такие игры. 4. Девочки с удовольствием примерили новые платья. 5. Книга — хороший подарок. 6. Книга на столе — не моя, я отдал свою Джеку. 7. Ты отнес книги в библиотеку? 8. Это странные замечания. 9. Это интересное предложение. 10. Какая замечательная идея! 11. Мне нравятся старые карты. 12. Карта всегда пригодится в походе. 13. Карта очень старая, обращайся с ней поаккуратней. 14. У вас есть автоответчик? 15. Автоответчик — удобное изобретение. 16. Автоответчик мигает (blink). Вам кто-то звонил.
- B** 1. Мне нравится цветное стекло. 2. Я предпочитаю пить чай из стакана. 3. Ребенок должен выпивать стакан молока в день. 4. Молоко было странным на вкус. 5. Я люблю травяной чай. 6. Чай был горячим. 7. Пожалуйста, чай и булочку. 8. Больше всего из деревьев мне нравится дуб. 9. Эта рамка сделана из дуба. 10. Железо было известно в Египте более чем 3000 лет до нашей эры.

11. У вас есть уют? 12. Есть люди, которые никогда не видели снег. 13. Снег во дворе был грязным. 14. Он все ест с хлебом. 15. Хлеб черствый. Нужно купить батон свежего хлеба. 1. Какой странный совет! Я не могу его принять. 2. Ваши новости никого не удивляют. 3. Я не могу принять эти деньги. Я их не заработал. 4. Информация, которую вы мне дали, бесполезна. 5. Погода постоянно меняется. 6. Новости передаются по телевидению 24 часа в сутки. 7. Часть денег пропала. Где они? 8. Это легкая работа, я могу сделать ее за час. 9. Какая хорошая погода! Я хорошо себя чувствую в такую погоду. 10. Его глубокие знания всегда удивляют меня.

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences paying attention to the nouns modified by limiting attributes.

1. Он рассказал нам историю их любви. 2. Визит иностранной делегации был довольно продолжительным. 3. Дай мне, пожалуйста, книгу, которую я купил вчера. 4. Человек, который стоит у окна, наш преподаватель английского языка. 5. Самые высокие горы находятся в Азии. 6. Контора расположена на третьем этаже. 7. Для него она была самой прекрасной девушкой в мире. 8. Это был первый человек, которого я встретила в доме. 9. Глава пятая — самая интересная в книге. 10. Давайте сделаем упражнения на странице девяносто. 11. Большинство книг в их библиотеке рассказывают об истории. 12. Ни один студент не сделал ошибки в упражнении. 13. Он рассказал нам следующую историю. 14. Вы пошли не в том направлении. 15. Это единственная книга, которая у меня есть по этому вопросу. 16. Вы тот самый человек, который мне нужен. 17. На столе две ручки. Одна — красная, другая — черная.

Ex. 5. Translate the following sentences paying attention to object clauses, clauses of time and condition.

1. Я не знаю, придет ли он к нам вечером, но если он придет, я расскажу ему об этом. 2. Я не знаю, позвонит ли она мне, но если она позвонит, я приглашу ее на день рождения. 3. Я еще не знаю, поеду ли я в Крым, но если я поеду, я возьму тебя с собой. 4. Мы не знаем, пойдет ли она смотреть этот фильм, но если она пойдет, мы к ней присоединимся. 5. Мы не имеем ни малейшего представления о том, когда он вернется из Нью-Джерси, но когда он вернется, он навестит нас. 6. Спросите ее, когда она закончит читать эту книгу. Когда она ее закончит, она должна будет вернуть ее в библиотеку. 7. Я не знаю, когда он нас навестит, но когда он зай-

дет, я представлю вас ему. 8. Я не знаю, когда он купит новую машину, но когда он ее купит, он поедет путешествовать. 9. Интересно, закончит ли она свою работу вовремя, и если закончит, пойдет ли в кино. 10. Мы не знаем, когда закончится собрание, но когда оно закончится, мы пойдем в лабораторию. 11. Я не знаю, когда мама придет с работы, но как только она придет, я тебе позвоню. 12. Я думаю, что мне не понадобится много времени, чтобы убрать квартиру, и как только я освобожусь, я дам тебе знать. 13. Я не уверена, вернется ли он в офис или пойдет прямо в зал, где все собираются. Но если он зайдет, скажи ему, чтобы он прослушал свой автоответчик. 14. Интересно, когда они закончат переделку этого крыла здания. Я знаю, что как только они его завершат, мы туда переедем. 15. Мы не знаем, когда он будет выступать в Москве, но когда он придет, мы обязательно пойдем на его концерт.

Ex. 6. Choose the correct case form of the personal pronoun.

1. My friend and (I, me) are going to London for the Spring break. Irene lent my friend and (I, me) a car to go to the country house. Will the chairman be (he, him) or Mr. Cline?
4. Perhaps you and (me, I) can have a talk tonight about this. 5. Your attitude appeals to both George and (I, me). 6. All of the students except (he, him) will participate in the show. 7. Could it have been (they, them)? 8. Mary has learned to play the piano as well as (I, me). 9. (We, us) students are going to be the future managers of our resources. 10. Nobody has a better sense of humour than (he, him). 11. Just as (we, us) women finished preparing dinner, the children showed up. 12. The team will not win without Brian and (I, me). 13. No one except (he, him) knows the truth. 14. Many people believe I am (she, her). 15. I know that it was (they, them) who did it. 16. The news surprised Joan and (I, me).

Ex. 7. Insert the right indefinite pronoun in the following sentences.

1. Is there ... way to do it quickly? 2. Will you agree to ... changes in the schedule? 3. If you have ... idea of where to reach him, please let us know. 4. The lecture gave us ... interesting facts about air pollution on the planet. 5. Are you sure you don't want ... soft drink? 6. Can you show me ... different styles of shirts? 7. Do you have ... new information about this problem? 8. — What kind of motel do you have in mind? — ... will do as long as it is near the park entrance. 9. Do you have ... books on English history? 10. Fix me a drink please with ... orange juice in it. 11. I'd like to look at ... of your new car models. 12. Are there ... articles on this topic in to-

day's newspaper? 13. I'd like to have ... more dessert please. 14. Is there ... soup left to eat? 15. I really don't care about this blouse. Do you have ... other colours? 16. If I can be of ... help to you in the future, don't hesitate to call me.

Unit 18

indefinite Pronouns and interrogative Pronouns. Articles

Ex. 1. Use the necessary indefinite pronoun.

1. Put ... sugar into your tea. There is ... in it. 2. Have ... jam. It is very good. 3. He took out ... instruments from his bag. 4. Did ... students answer better than she? 5. — Have ... more ice-cream. — Thanks, ... more for me. 6. You have ... water colours here. 7. There isn't ... butter on the table. Take ... fresh butter from the fridge. 8. You may read ... book you like. 9. May I have ... water, please? 10. I have ... time to speak to you. 11. I am interested in ... information you can give me on this subject. 12. Do you have ... English CDs at home? 13. I feel tired because I didn't have ... sleep last night. 14. I looked at the faces around me ... of them seemed happy. 15. I hardly have ... time to do the work you are asking me to do. 16. You don't have ... right to tease others like that. 17. I don't expect ... difficulty to arise from this situation.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. — У вас есть масло? — Да, немного осталось. 2. — Есть ли какая-нибудь разница между ними? — Я не вижу разницы и думаю, что ее нет. 3. Если у вас есть какие-нибудь вопросы, задавайте их в письменном виде. 4. Он рассказал нам несколько смешных историй. 5. Если вы найдете какие-нибудь ошибки в этой работе, исправьте их, пожалуйста. 6. У него так мало книг в доме. 7. Он положил так много сахара в чай, что не смог его выпить. 8. Спасибо, мне не нужно столько бумаги, мне надо написать только одно письмо. 9. Вы сделали много ошибок в последнем диктанте. 10. У вас нет никаких оснований (reason) не доверять ему. 11. К сожалению, этот синий цвет мне не подходит. У вас есть какие-нибудь другие оттенки? 12. Вы можете доложиться на любого из них. 13. Я многое не понимаю из того, что он говорит. 14. Мне понравилась эта статья. Я считаю, что там много новых интересных идей. 15. У него не много идей по этому поводу. Поговори лучше с Грейс.

Ex. 3. Translate into English. Be careful of the use of articles before nouns modified by limiting attributes.

1. У меня нет факса, о котором Вы говорите. 2. Я хочу купить раму для картины, которая висит над моим письменным столом. 3. Ни один из участников не знал испанского языка. 4. Кто-нибудь из студентов должен пойти и принести книгу. 5. Студенты сдают там экзамен. 6. Не входи в комнату. 7. Моя сестра живет на третьем этаже. 8. Это самый простой вопрос. 9. Окна дома были темными. 10. Дом, где мы живем, стоит на холме. 11. Рассказы в этой книге очень простые. 12. Она произнесла последние слова с улыбкой. 13. Свет погас во всем районе. 14. На предыдущем уроке мы обсуждали неопределенные местоимения. 15. В этом упражнении есть исчисляемые и неисчисляемые существительные. Первые могут употребляться во множественном числе, а последние — нет. 16. Это первый том, а глава вторая — во втором. 17. Первая глава содержит описание детства героя. 18. Вы вложили письмо не в тот конверт.

Ex. 4. Translate into English. Be careful of the use of time, condition and in object clauses.

1. Я уеду, как только сдам экзамен. 2. Не уходите, пока я с ней не поговорю. 3. Я не знаю, когда он вернется. 4. Вы ничего не поймете, если не прочтете книгу сами. 5. Я пойду спрошу, пойдет ли она в кино, пока ты будешь кормить детей. 6. Почитай газету, пока я уложу вещи. 7. Ничего не будет сделано, пока отец не вернется. 8. Я вам все объясню, когда мы увидимся в университете. 9. Хотела бы я знать, придет ли он сегодня. 10. Интересно, когда он будет делать доклад о своей поездке в Англию. 11. Если он найдет время, он поговорит с ним до отъезда. 12. Ты все поймешь, когда станешь старше. 13. Я спрошу их, когда они устраивают вечер. 14. Если самолет не опоздает, они будут дома в семь часов. 15. Интересно, когда она скажет нам всю правду?

Ex. 5. Dictation-translation.

1. Любит ли он чай с лимоном? 2. Глубокий снег покрыл землю. 3. Железо — металл. 4. Я не знаю, придет ли она на дискотеку, но если придет, то мы будем танцевать. 5. У меня мало тетрадей, дай мне несколько. 6. Спроси его, когда он закончит перевод. Когда он его закончит, мы пойдем в парк. 7. — Ты положил деньги в банк? — Извини, я их истратил. 8. Есть кто-нибудь в комнате? 9. Это самая интересная книга в его библиотеке. 10. Принеси мне сахар, он в столе на кухне. 11. Новости плохие, не так ли? 12. Не уходи, пока он не вернется. 13. Есть ли здесь кто-нибудь из Санкт-

Петербурга? 14. Ты думаешь, стол выглядит хорошо? 15. Я наблюдал довольно странное природное явление на днях.

Ex. 6. Use the necessary article.

A Mr. and Mrs. Bixby lived in ... small flat somewhere in ... suburbs of New York City. Mr. Bixby was ... dentist, who earned ... average amount of ... money. Mrs. Bixby was ... woman who was full of ... life. Once ... month, always on ... Friday afternoon, Mrs. Bixby would get on ... train at Pennsylvania Station and travel to Baltimore to visit... aunt of hers. She would spend ... night with ... aunt and returned to ... city on... following day, in time to cook ... supper for ... family.

B ... children waited ... while, then started off down ... lane in ... direction of ... sound of singing. As they turned ... corner they saw ... figure sitting under ... tree at ... side of ... lane. It was ... young girl, ... little older than Jack and Molly; such ... pretty girl, with ... grey-green eyes and ... straight nose, and ... deep golden hair. She looked up and saw ... children. She smiled such ... friendly, sweet smile. 'We are glad to see you,' said Jack. 'We haven't met ... soul since ... morning.'

Ex. 7. Use introductory *it* or *there* as the subject of the following sentences.

1. ... is wonderful to hear such great news. 2. ... was wonderful news in the morning paper. 3. ... is good sportsmanship to accept defeat with a good face. 4. ... will be a high tide on this coast. You should be careful. 5. They parted and ... is very, very sad. 6. ... was a lot of time left. 7. ... seemed like a good idea. 8. ... will be a power cut again this evening. 9. ... is impossible to make any decision. 10. ... was not a house in sight. 11. ... doesn't matter, does ...? 12. ... must be a reason for their silence. 13. ... took me some time to work out what she meant. 14. ... are so many things to do today. 15. ... is such a hectic life!

Unit 14

The Present Progressive Tense and Other Tenses. Articles

Ex. 1. Explain the use of the Present Progressive in the following sentences and translate them into Russian.

A 1. What's the code you are using? 2. Listen! Something is making a strange noise. 3. Look! He is enjoying the show so much! 4. I am telling you this for the last time. 5. Watch out! The cars are moving very fast. 6. He is winning!

- B** 1. Technology is making its way into our lives. We are already making advantages of computers and Internet. 2. He is thinking about taking a new job. 3. He is working at a joint venture now. 4. She is staying at the friend's apartment in London. 5. We are planning to open a business school. 6. Who is taking the calls today?
- C** 1. We are leaving for Italy tomorrow. 2. That's a nice coincidence. We are going there too. 3. She is coming in the evening. 4. The expedition is starting off in a few days. 5. I am getting there by car. 6. She is moving to a new apartment next week.
- D** 1. My grandmother is always grumbling. 2. Brian is a trouble maker. He is constantly worrying his parents. 3. Stop that, Mark! You are always picking on me! 4. I don't believe you. You are always making a mountain out of a mole hill! 5. Jane is so absent-minded! She is constantly losing things! 6. He is always interrupting people! It is so annoying!

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

- A** 1. — Что ты здесь делаешь? — Жду друзей. Они должны прийти, как только закончится собрание. 2. Не обижайся на него. Он просто делает свою работу. 3. О чем ты говоришь? Я ничего не понимаю. 4. На что ты смотришь? Там ничего нет. 5. Почему ты улыбаешься? Я не вижу в этом ничего смешного. 6. Он играет довольно хорошо.
- B** 1. Что ты планируешь делать на каникулы? 2. Я ожидаю получить от него ответ на днях. 3. Он работает сейчас над новым романом. 4. Извини, я не могу увидеться с тобой на этой неделе. Я работаю над срочной статьей для журнала и очень занят. 5. Он переводит новый роман Джона Гришема. 6. Они готовятся к путешествию по Индии.
- C** 1. Мы уезжаем через два дня. 2. Ты делаешь доклад в понедельник. 3. Моя сестра возвращается домой в воскресенье. 4. Мы идем на концерт сегодня. 5. Я готовлю пирог на твой день рождения. 6. Я планирую поговорить с ним после экзамена.
- D** 1. Ты все время разговариваешь на уроках! 2. Вечно она ворчит! 3. Твоя тетка постоянно дает бесполезные советы. 4. Ты постоянно теряешь библиотечные книги! 5. Вечно она приносит плохие новости! 6. Ты постоянно меняешь свои решения!

Ex. 3. Contrast the Simple Present with the Present Progressive Tense.

1. He (speak) five foreign languages. 2. He now (learn) French. 3. The moon (go) round the Earth. 4. He (listen) to his favourite pop-group. Don't disturb him. 5. He always (complain) about his health! 6. I don't like any of the candidates. None of them (speak) well. 7. The term (end) in January. 8. You (understand) what he (talk) about?

9. You (stand) in my way. 10. What you (try) to draw? 11. Jack is so lazy! He never (get) up before 9 o'clock. 12. Listen! Someone (sing) there! 13. I (see) what you (mean). 14. I (mean) you, David. Will you be silent please? You (talk) too much today. 15. Who is (speak) next?

Ex. 4. Translate into English the following pairs of sentences.

1. Ты много читаешь? Что ты читаешь? 2. Здесь часто идет дождь. По-моему, идет дождь. 3. Он часто пишет родителям. Он занят. Он что-то пишет. 4. Он не носит теплого пальто зимой. Он сегодня в новом пальто. 5. Ребенок просыпается несколько раз за ночь. Посмотрите, ребенок просыпается. 6. Они часто обсуждают такие проблемы. Они обсуждают что-то интересное. 7. Погода в Англии часто меняется. Возьми плащ, погода меняется. 8. — Ты можешь прийти в понедельник вечером? — Извини, к сожалению, я не смогу, я уезжаю в экспедицию. — Действительно, ты же всегда уезжаешь из города в это время. 9. Он проживает в гостинице «Космос». Он всегда останавливается в этой гостинице, когда приезжает в Москву. 10. — Послушай, по-моему, кто-то играет на пианино у соседей. — Да, это 12-летняя девочка, она всегда занимается музыкой в это время дня. 11. — Мы едем на машине? — Да, ты же знаешь, я всегда езжу на дачу на машине. 12. — Что он там делает? — Он рассказывает сыну сказку. Он всегда рассказывает ему сказки перед сном. 13. Я говорю вам правду. Я всегда говорю правду, как бы тяжела она ни была. 14. — На каком языке он говорит? — Я не уверен. Похоже на португальский. — Откуда ты знаешь? — Я знаю, что он говорит на португальском. 15. — Ты берешь с собой сына? — Да, я всегда беру его в такие поездки.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Он делает большие успехи в английском. 2. Он совершенствует свой язык, слушая новости Си-Эн-Эн каждый день. 3. Он также расширяет свой словарь, стараясь употреблять как можно больше новых слов в речи. 4. Он выписывает новые слова на карточки и постоянно смотрит на них, если забывает что-то. 5. Я пытаюсь изменить свою систему питания, так как хочу похудеть. 6. Почему они так странно смотрят на меня? Я плохо выгляжу? 7. Поторопись! Они заканчивают регистрацию багажа. 8. Ты очень худеешь. Ты не больна? 9. Почему вы все время ссоритесь?! 10. Почему ты влезаешь в это дело? Это не твоя проблема. 11. Он покупает новую машину на следующей неделе. 12. Он сейчас подрабатывает официантом в ресторане. 13. Вечно он жалуется! 14. Ты вернешься к собранию в понедельник? 15. Я сейчас очень экономлю, чтобы накопить денег на курсы испанского языка.

Ex. 6. Insert the right article.

1. Most people prefer ... warm, sunny weather. 2. Roberta needs ... good advice and she'll get it. 3. What ... kicking news! Who brought ... message? 4. There is ... big money in this oil business. 5. What ... awful mess! There is ... rubbish everywhere. 6. I like ... fresh bread. I think I'll buy ... loaf of it. 7. He is so fond of ... shocking ideas! 8. The scout brought such ... important information. 9. My chief is such ... bossy woman! 10. Nigel had ... cold champagne at the party and now he has ... sore throat. 11. What ... unexpected money! What ... surprise! 12. He got ... first rate education at Yale. 13. ... easy money goes fast. 14. We walked in the forest enjoying ... autumnal weather. 15. — What ... intelligent man! — Yes, ... such smart people are rare nowadays.

Ex. 7. Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of articles.

- A** 1. Это очень хороший совет! 2. Совет хорош. 3. Что нового? 4. Новости хорошие? 5. Он принес плохие новости. 6. Такие сведения всегда нужны. 7. Это довольно странный совет. 8. Он дал нам такой отличный совет. 9. Какая отвратительная погода! 10. Это такая увлекательная работа! 11. Это очень полезная информация. 12. Информация была интересная. 13. Это нечестные деньги. 14. Я согласен на ваши условия. Деньги хорошие.
- B** 1. Какой красивый цветок! 2. Что за ребенок! 3. Он еще такой ребенок. 4. Какой интересный рассказ я прочитала вчера! 5. Он такой интересный человек! 6. Она довольно хорошая студентка. 7. Это вполне хороший совет. 8. Он довольно смелый человек. 9. Это совсем легкая контрольная. 10. Это был такой неожиданный конец. 11. Это довольно смешной рассказ. 12. Это совершенно неуместное замечание. 13. Это довольно неприятное положение. 14. Это совершенно не нужная вещь. 15. Это довольно странное задание.

Unit 15

The Use of Tenses and Articles

Ex. 1. Put the verb in brackets into either the Simple Present or the Present Progressive Tense.

1. Several of us (work) overtime next week because of the coming conference. 2. We (work) eight hours each day in our office. 3. — I am sorry I can't do this. I give up. — I am sure you can. You just

(not try) hard enough. 4. I like this car. It (drive) at top speed. This car (drive) at high speed. It might get into an accident. Photographers (use) high-speed films to take pictures. 7. What film you (use) for your camera today? 8. They are the best of friends. They always (play) together and never (fight). 9. Look! The driver has seen us! He (stop) the car. 10. She's grown out of her coat. She (grow) very fast now. 11. I understand you. I only (think) of how I can best help you. 12. I am afraid you (make) a mistake. We all (make) such mistakes when we are young. 13. Jane usually (wear) pants and sweaters to go to the country. 14. Why you (wear) this heavy sweater? Isn't it a bit too warm for it? 15. Can't you see that you (disturb) him?

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. — Где Кристина? — Она обсуждает свою контрольную с преподавателем. 2. Мы наслаждаемся хорошей погодой этой осенью. 3. Он уверенно набирает знания по грамматике. 4. Надень плащ и возьми зонт. На улице идет сильный дождь. 5. Ты чувствуешь себя лучше сегодня? 6. Ты все еще работаешь над своей курсовой? 7. — Почему она не может пойти с нами? — Она убирает квартиру сегодня, а затем готовится к докладу. 8. Они репетируют несколько новых песен. Я хочу пойти на их следующий концерт. 9. Не беспокой его, когда он работает. 10. Ты нарушаешь правила. Это нечестно! 11. Я выступаю завтра на конференции. 12. Вечно ты перебиваешь меня! 13. Мне кажется, что телефон звонит. Проверь, пожалуйста. 14. Я приду с братом на вечер. 15. Ты предлагаешь нам бросить это дело?

Ex. 3. Translate into English and reproduce the dialogues.

1 — Почему ты сидишь в темноте? Что, нет электричества!
— Нет, с электричеством все в порядке. Я просто отдыхаю. У меня глаза устали от компьютера.
2. — Где Джон? Я нигде его не вижу. Он играет во дворе?
— Нет, он занимается. Он готовит уроки.
— А Маргарет?
— Она работает в саду.
3. — Кого вы ждете? Почему вы всё еще здесь?
— Я жду сестру, она разговаривает по телефону.
4. — Анна, ты снова читаешь в темноте. Включи свет.
— Да, действительно становится темно.
— Что ты читаешь?
— Английскую книгу, очень интересную.

5. — Почему ты хромаешь, Алан? Что случилось?
 — Я играл вчера в футбол и повредил колено. Очень болит. Я едва могу ходить.
6. — Где Салли?
 — Она делает покупки.
 — Ты не знаешь, почему она опаздывает?
 — Наверное, в магазине много народа.
 — Не в это время. Она, наверное, болтает с подружкой на улице.
 — Возможно, ты права. Но она не знает, что мы ее ждем. Мы не можем начать, пока она не придет.
7. — Что ты смотришь?
 — Я смотрю документальный фильм об Австралии.
 — Странный выбор. Ты собираешься поехать туда?
 — Нет. Не собираюсь. Мы сейчас обсуждаем страны, в которых говорят на английском, и я завтра рассказываю об Австралии.

Ex. 4. Complete these sentences with *some, any, someone, anyone, somebody, anybody, something, anything, somewhere, anywhere*.

1. I don't mind what you do. You can do 2. The film is really great. You can ask ... who has seen it. 3. Does ... mind if I smoke? 4. Do you live ... near the University? 5. Can you give me ... information about places to see in this city? 6. It doesn't matter what time you phone. You can phone ... time. 7. What are you looking for? Have you lost...? 8. If ... saw the accident, they should contact the police. 9. He left home without... money. 10. Would you like ... to eat ...? 11. You can cash these travellers' cheques at ... bank. 12. I haven't read ... of these books, but Tom has read ... of them. 13. It doesn't matter which flight you travel on. You can take ... 14. What's wrong with your eye? Have you got... in it? 15. You can have ... you want for your birthday present 16. I'd rather go ... than stay at home during my holiday.

Ex. 5. Insert articles where necessary.

London is ... enormous city of 600 square miles situated on ... small island. ... river running through its centre has always linked ... city with ... sea. At some time in the past the river helped to build ... empire. ... Empire is long gone but... river still runs through ... city and serves it. There are 32 boroughs in London and each of them has its own style. It's ... cliché but London is ... city of ... villages. ... British Museum and ... University of London dominate Bloomsbury. Chelsea is ... former gathering place for artists and writers and ... expensive area at present. ... City is the heart of financial Britain and the oldest part of town. Covent Garden is ... collection of narrow

streets and pedestrian malls. Originally it was ... vegetable market, then ... flower market. Somewhere in the 1870s ... market was turned into clothing shops and craft stalls. The East End contains ... best street markets in England. Soho has... international flavour. Elite houses are situated in Knightsbridge. Knightsbridge became ... part of London because British king William III suffered asthma. He had difficulty in breathing because of the Thames mists and he decided to buy Nottingham House in ... village of Kensington so that he could breath more easily. This part of London has unique shops. One of them is well known all over the world and is called Harrods. The famous Victoria and Albert Museum is situated in Kensington. The V&A, as it is known, is ... storehouse of different treasures. The origin of ... museum is traced back to the Great Exhibition of 1851, ... celebration of the arts, crafts, and industrial products from the British Empire. Prince Albert, the driving force behind ... exhibition, wanted this to be ... permanent collection displaying ... best examples of commercial art and design as ... source of inspiration for future generations.

Ex. 6. Translate the following sentences paying particular attention to the use of articles.

1. Моя сестра — студентка. 2. У меня есть собственная книга на эту тему. 3. Мальчики разговаривали на площадке. 4. У него не было денег. 5. Чай холодный. Дай мне, пожалуйста, еще стакан. 6. Положите сахар в чай. 7. Какие новости? 8. Вчера я встретил старого друга. 9. Это такая полезная информация. 10. В ее глазах было любопытство. 11. За час можно написать упражнение. 12. Она — сама доброта. 13. Молодая женщина лет тридцати подошла ко мне в холле. 14. Вы едете не в том направлении. 15. Он единственный человек, которого я знаю в этом городе. 16. — Есть ли другие дети в семье? — Нет, он единственный ребенок. 17. В супе не хватает соли. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, соль. 18. Это трудные упражнения. Я не переведу ни одного предложения без словаря. 19. На улице много людей, не так ли? 20. Он был известным певцом. 21. Дверь заперта. 22. У нее взрослый сын. 23. Это была последняя встреча. 24. Погода сегодня отличная. 25. Он такой спокойный человек! 26. Земля была холодная и сырая. 27. Какая интересная новость! 28. Масло и сыр делают из молока.

Ex. 7. Put the verbs in brackets into proper tenses. State the type of a subordinate clause (an object clause, an adverbial clause of time or condition),

1. I (phone) him when he (be in). 2. Ask the secretary when he (be in). 3. I want to know if Tom (call) on me after classes. 4. I wonder if

Dave (come) if you ask him. 5. Do you know when we (begin) to study a second foreign language? 6. Will you find out when we (have) our next class in phonetics? 7. When we (have) our next class in phonetics, we (recite) an extract from *To Kill A Mocking Bird* by Harper Lee. 8. I really don't know when I (be back). 9. I wonder if you (do) it for me. 10. I don't know whether Collin (be able to pass) his exams, he is such a poor student. 11. It (take you) four days to get there if you (go) by train. 12. Sorry, I can't tell you anything until she (give) the permission.

Ex. 8. Translate into English.

1. Если вы напишете новые слова несколько раз, вы запомните их правописание. 2. Она ничего вам не скажет, если только вы ее не спросите. 3. Если вы не закроете окно, то в комнате будет холодно. 4. Скажи, будешь ли ты дома сегодня вечером? 5. Когда мой брат закончит институт, он будет архитектором. 6. Когда урок закончится, мы пойдем в столовую. 7. Перед тем, как мы поедем домой, мы дадим родителям телеграмму. 8. Я не смогу вовремя приготовить обед, если ты мне не поможешь. 9. Она спрашивает, разрешишь ли ты ей пойти в кино, если она помоеет посуду. 10. Не знаю, смогу ли я помочь вам, я буду занята на следующей неделе. 11. Я не уверен, буду ли я свободен и зайду ли к вам. 12. Не уходи, пока он не придет. Он хотел поговорить с тобой. 13. Если погода изменится, то у меня опять будет болеть голова. 14. Если ксерокс сломается, то у нас не будет раздаточного материала (handouts). 15. Если она выполнит работу так же хорошо, как обещает, то это будет здорово.

Ex. 9. Make up sentences to illustrate the countable and uncountable meaning of the following nouns.

Model: Religion has been a powerful force in history. — *Many religions are practised in such a multinational country as Canada.*

I. Art — arts. 2. Life — lives. 3. Pizza — pizzas. 4. Sculpture — sculptures. 5. Paper — papers. 6. Skin — skins. 7. Trouble — troubles. 8. Water — waters. 9. Oil — oils. 10. Bread — breads.

II. Work — works. 12. Coffee — coffees. 13. Cake — cakes. 14. Light — lights. 15. Perfume — perfumes. 16. Meat — meats. 17. Beer — beers. 18. Jam — jams. 19. Cheese — cheeses. 20. Fish — fishes.

Unit 16

Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives. Indefinite Pronouns

Ex. 1. Translate the pronouns in brackets.

1. Did he read (много) English books at school? 2. Does he spend (много) time on reading? 3. We have very (мало) time left. Hurry up! 4. I don't know very (много) extracts by heart. 5. It was late and there were very (мало) people in the streets. 6. When there's (мало) wood the fire burns low. 7. We didn't understand (много) of what the speaker was saying in English. 8. (Многие) of those present at the student's meeting spoke of the coming examinations. 9. In (несколько) minutes she came back. 10. (Много) talk (мало) work (*proverb*). 11. Can you stay (немного) longer? 12. I don't like how he treats me. I can't take (большое количество) of this. I must speak to him. 13. Only (немногие) people knew about the outcome of the meeting. 14. I eat (мало) vegetables. I know that I should eat more. 15. We have (мало) information to act upon. Try to find some more.

Ex. 2. Translate the following using *little, a little, few, a few*.

1. В том, что ты рассказываешь, мало правды. 2. Он немного подумал, прежде чем ответить. 3. Погода понемногу меняется к лучшему. 4. Не уходи, мы будем обедать через несколько минут. 5. Его мало кто понимает, он говорит с сильным акцентом. 6. Он всегда мало говорит. 7. Мало кто ездит этим поездом. 8. Я увижу его через несколько дней. 9. Мало кто знает об этом. 10. У меня в библиотеке много английских книг и только несколько французских. 11. Только несколько человек правильно ответили на этот вопрос. 12. — Хотите еще пирога? — Да, только чуть-чуть. 13. Немногие в моей семье похожи на меня. 14. На этом столе меньше яблок. 15. Давай меньше советов и не раздражай людей.

Ex. 3. In place of the adjectives in brackets put the forms required by the situation. Add *more* or *most* where necessary.

1. What (nice) present is there than a box of chocolates? 2. Your work is much (bad) than I thought. 3. My cigarettes are not the (expensive) in London. 4. This is the (wonderful) and (beautiful) picture that has ever come out of Hollywood. 5. Sheila is (old) than Robert she is the (old) in the family. 6. Summer is (warm) than winter. 7. Summer is the (warm) of all the seasons. 8. London is (big) than Manchester. 9. The airplane is (fast) than the train. 10. Frieda is (pretty) than her sister. 11. Winter in London is (foggy) than in

Paris. 12. I think I am the (bad) dancer in the world. 13. You are not (bad) than I am. 14. What (good) present is there than a box of cigarettes? 15. Ivy League is the name for several of (prestigious) Universities in the United States.

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences into English paying particular attention to adverbial clauses of time and condition.

1. Если вы отодвинете книжный шкаф от окна, то в комнате будет светлее. 2. Если вы будете проходить мимо, купите билеты на новую картину. 3. Как только я найду ее адрес, я вам позвоню. 4. Сколько времени вам понадобится на дорогу в университет, если вы будете жить за городом? 5. Что мы будем делать, если она опоздает? 6. Если она останется дома с ребенком, я поеду с вами. 7. Если погода будет дождливая, я возьму плащ. 8. Мы не начнем обсуждать этот вопрос, пока не придут все студенты нашей группы. 9. Подумай хорошенько, прежде чем дать ответ. 10. Я останусь в городе, пока не установится хорошая погода. 11. Когда ты сообщишь мне свой адрес, я отвечу тебе телеграммой и сразу выеду. 12. Пока ты ходишь по магазинам, я собираю вещи. 13. Если у меня останется немного денег в конце месяца, то я куплю себе новый Оксфордский русско-английский словарь. 14. Если ты поедешь в Лондон, то постарайся попасть на какой-нибудь спектакль Королевского шекспировского театра в центре Барбикан. 15. Когда новая рекламная брошюра будет готова, мы разошлем ее в несколько крупных городов России.

Ex. 5. Use the proper article.

A Timothy came into ... room, pausing on ... mat at ... sight of ... strangers. He was ... fat, awkward-looking boy, with ... puffy cheeks and round eyes, and with ... simple expression. 'Timothy has been out to ... tea-party today,' said Miss Marigold to ... children. 'Have you had ... good time?' — 'Umth,' muttered ... boy in ... thick voice, sitting down on ... extreme edge of ... chair. 'But you ought to have been home ... hour ago, you know I don't like you being out after dusk.'

B Early in ... afternoon ... children reached ... beginning of... Third Lane; and here they decided to make ... stop, have ... short rest and ... lunch. They sat down on ... soft grass by ... side of ... lane and started on ... tempting little sandwiches which Glan had given them. Over lunch they got out ... map and studied it. 'What ... lonely piece of country ... place seems,' Jack remarked. 'Do you know, we haven't met ... single person since we started ... search.'

Ex. 6. Use the correct form of the pronoun.

1. Everyone believed it was (she, her). 2. I hope that nobody knew that it was (we, us) the children. 3. I know that it was (they, them) to whom he referred. 4. I always confuse the twins. Is this (she, her) or Christine? 5. It maybe (she, her) at the door. 6. Do you think it was (they, them) who warned the police? 7. The presentation will be done by (she, her) and (I, me). 8. Stuart and (I, me) stayed after school. 9. Why don't you like Susan and (she, her)? 10. He says that you and (I, me) are his best friends. 11. The disagreement between Maria and (she, her) was easily settled. 12. My brother and (I, me) did all the preparations fry the party. 13. Her sister is better looking than (she, her). 14. Please call Mr. Johnson or (I, me) if you need help. 15. The flowers are from Tavor and (I, me).

Ex. 7. Comment on the use of abstract nouns.

1. Time is long, life is short. 2. It was a time, when life was simple and happy. 3. Times have changed. 4. Christmas is a time for giving. 5. Life still goes on. 6. To lead a better life I need my love to be here. 7. Who can say how many lives were given for the victory! Memory is a person's ability to remember facts and past events. Pat has a good memory for names. 10. I have the warmest memories of our friendship. 11. Experience is not required for this job. It was quite an experience! It was the experience of a lifetime! 12. Andrew is studying law at Harvard University. 14. There is a law against stopping on a motorway. 15. Education should be a preparation for life. 16. A classical education won't help you much in practical life.

Ex. 8. Open the brackets using the adjective or the adverb.

1. Mike was feeling (angry, angrily) about his bad luck. 2. His story sounds (suspicious, suspiciously) to me. 3. The trip cannot be made as (rapid, rapidly) as you think. 4. Try to clean this table (good, well) before setting it. 5. This car model runs (good, well) on regular gas. 6. These scissors cut (good, well). 7. The band was (good, well) and it played (good, well). 8. Christie tasted the dish (cautious, cautiously). The dish tasted (sweet, sweetly). 9. The house smells (strange, strangely). 10. We could smell the burning pie (distinct, distinctly). 11. The swimmer (hesitant, hesitantly) felt the water. 12. I feel very (happy, happily) about it. 13. The drums sound (loud, loudly). 14. The President looked (careful, carefully) at all the applications. 15. To some people avocado looks (strange, strangely).

Unit 17

Modal Verbs. Degrees of Comparison. Tenses

Ex. 1. Make up short dialogues as shown in the model.

Model: A: Is exercise eighteen as easy as exercise ten?

B: No, it isn't. Exercise eighteen is not so easy as exercise ten, In fact it is more difficult than exercise ten.

1. Is room four as large as room 48? 2. Is chapter one is as long as chapter three? 3. Is Unit ten as long as Unit fifteen? 4. Are the mountains in the Crimea as high as the mountains in the Caucasus? 5. Is the Severn as long as the Thames? 6. Is Scotland as rich in minerals as Wales? 7. Is the Asov Sea as large as the Black Sea? 8. Is the use of the Present Perfect Tense as easy as the use of the Simple Present Tense? 9. Is England as hot in summer as Spain? 10. Is Europe as large as Asia? 11. Is the Pacific Ocean as warm as the Atlantic? 12. Is New York as old as London?

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Я не знаю последних новостей. 2. Этот рассказ напечатан в последнем номере журнала «Москва». 3. Завтра мой старший брат уезжает в Крым. 4. — Кто старше всех в вашей группе? — Катя. 5. Он старше меня на три года. 6. Дополнительные детали не нужны. 7. Школа расположена в дальнем конце деревни. 8. У меня меньше опыта в этом деле. 9. Он купил игрушку в ближайшем магазине. 10. Следующий дом представлял собой современное здание. 11. Это любимая группа Лайзы. У нее есть все их самые последние диски. 12. Эмили — самая популярная из сестер Бронте. 13. Последние исследования дали интересные результаты.

Ex. 3. Analyse the use of the modal verbs in the following dialogue. Learn the dialogue by heart.

Tony: Well, I am afraid I must go now.

Susan: Must you really? Can't you stay a little longer?

Tony: No, I really can't. The last bus to Hammersmith leaves at 11.30. I mustn't miss it.

Susan: But you needn't bother about the bus. Someone will give you a lift. I'll ask Robert.

Tony: But I must get up early tomorrow and study.

Susan: Tomorrow? Tomorrow's Sunday. You needn't get up till mid-day
— at the earliest.

Tony: Perhaps you needn't, but I must. I've got exams in two weeks' time.

Susan: Oh, well. If you must, you must. But please, drop round any time you're passing
this way... and good luck in the exams.

Tony: Thanks. Be seeing you. Bye.

Susan: Bye!

Ex. 4. Change the sentences according to the models.

Model: We have no news of him. — *We haven't any news of him.*

There is no explanation for the failure. — *There isn't an explanation for the failure.*

1. Some women have no sense of humour. 2. It makes no difference to me. 3. He gave us no instructions. 4. Kelly has no brother or sister. 5. Mrs. Johnson is no person to let you down. 6. Sam was in no mood to join us. 7. No teacher is perfect. 8. There is no life on Mars. 9. No whisky for me today. 10. Robert is no fool, believe me. 11. Brendon has no job, no money, no family to support him. 12. There is no sign of Astrid yet. 13. It's no problem at all. 14. They had no plans for the summer. 15. We need no food today, we'll dine out.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Дерево плавает в воде, а железо тонет. 2. Посмотри, по-моему, этот корабль тонет. 3. Я слышал, что ты едешь в Париж на следующей неделе. 4. Моя тетушка приезжает сегодня. Ты ее помнишь? 5. Каждое воскресенье моя семья выезжает на пикник. Но сегодня мы навещали родственников. 6. Я помог им и горжусь этим. 7. Мое здоровье в порядке и я хорошо себя чувствую. А вы хорошо себя чувствуете? 8. Обычно они обедают на кухне, но сегодня они обедают в столовой, так как у них гости. 9. Николас играет в футбол каждый выходной. Но на сей раз он не играет. 10. Я беру с собой удочки, потому что собираюсь на рыбалку. 11. Мы обычно пьем вино за обедом, но сегодня я пью минеральную воду, так как я за рулем. 12. Мы не любим оставлять детей дома одних без присмотра. И сегодня мы тоже берем их с собой посмотреть на Манеж. 13. Катрина регулярно убирает дом. Но сегодня она работает в саду и получает от этого огромное удовольствие. 14. Моя дочь обычно делает бутерброды на завтрак. Однако сегодня она жарит

яичницу. 15. Сегодня я покупаю билеты и завтра уезжаю в Новгород. Мой двоюродный брат женится.

Ex. 6. Rewrite the following sentences using *unless* instead of *if not*.

Model: I won't go if he doesn't go. — *I won't go unless he goes.*

1. He won't pass the examination if he doesn't work harder. 2. I will not go if you don't take the car. 3. I wouldn't say so if I was not certain. 4. You won't like it if you don't read it aloud. 5. She won't go if you don't invite her sister as well. 6. I shan't go if the weather doesn't improve. 7. He won't go anywhere if I don't take him. 8. If we don't leave immediately, we shall be late. 9. I don't like soup if it is not hot. 10. Don't go if you really don't want to. 11. Don't volunteer any information if you are not asked. 12. He will never sign a document if he doesn't read it thoroughly. 13. Don't buy this car if you are not sure you like it. 14. I won't agree to take part in it if he doesn't approve. 15. If you don't check the information, don't publish the article.

Ex. 7. Answer the following questions using the adverbial clauses of condition.

A *Model:* When will the train pass Tambov? (not be late). — *If it is not late, it will pass the town at 2:30.*

1. How long will it take you to read a book of three hundred pages? (do nothing else). 2. When will you finish your course paper? (everything, be all right). 3. Will you go to the club tomorrow? (not work). 4. Will he travel to the Crimea by train? (not get the ticket for the train, go there by plane). 5. When will he make his report on Britain's economy? (get well).

B *Model:* What will happen if...? — *If we all talk at once, we will hear nothing.*

1. We all talk at once? (hear nothing). 2. You teach him everything at once? (learn nothing). 3. We don't wait for him? (not find the way to the museum). 4. You don't work hard at your English? (get a poor mark). 5. He doesn't arrive in time? (not wait for him). 6. The weather doesn't change for the better? (stay in town).

Ex. 8. Insert the articles.

... story of building the Brooklyn Bridge in New York is ... amazing one bridge itself is ... tribute to man's greatness. ... designer of ... bridge, John Roebling, was ... very creative person. When he

came up with ... idea of this bridge, everybody thought he was crazy. ... only person who believed that ... construction was possible was Roebling's son, Washington. The father and the son convinced the bankers to finance ... project ... construction began. ... couple of months after ... construction of ... bridge started ... tragic accident happened. John Roebling was killed and his son was severely injured. The doctors managed to save Washington's life but he could not walk or talk. He could only move one finger. Washington learned to communicate with his wife by tapping his finger on her arm. For 13 years he tapped ... instructions to his wife on how to build ... bridge. The Brooklyn bridge has become ... monument not only to the great engineering idea but also to ... great spirit of ... amazing man.

Ex. 9. Name the parts of speech that the words in bold type represent. Define the function of the words in bold type in the sentence.

1. She spoke very well at the meeting.
2. The clown rode around the ring in a funny car.
3. The man is young and handsome.
4. Ouch! That hurt! Don't you ever pinch me again!
5. Jack or she will call.
6. Well! What a surprise!
7. I am not really sure when he will be back.
8. Martin left for London on Friday.
9. None of the students knew the answer to the question.
10. Mark said that he would buy a new laptop next week.

Unit 18

Degrees of Comparison. Articles with Geographical Names. Modal Verbs. Tenses

Ex. 1. Fill in the blank spaces with the necessary form of *must* or *need*.

1. She ... go to bed early, tomorrow is a holiday.
2. You ... an umbrella, it's not raining.
3. You ... cross the road when the lights are red.
4. You ... tell everybody what I've just told you. It's a secret.
5. You ... go to the library. I can lend you this book.
6. You ... finish it if you aren't hungry.
7. You ... smoke in here. It's forbidden.
8. You... drive a car without a license.
9. You ... warm it. I like cold coffee.
10. People ... wear warm clothes in this cold climate.
11. He said he ... go, he had promised to come.
12. I think you ... pull yourself together.
13. He feels he ... spend more time with his family.
14. You ... come and see our new kitchen.
15. Polite neighbors ... make noise after 10.00 p.m.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Вам не нужно делать это сегодня, вы можете сделать это позже. Вы не можете взять книгу, мой брат ее читает. 3. Генри не может пойти туда сейчас, он очень занят. 4. Вы должны посоветоваться с врачом. 5. Я должен был пойти туда немедленно. 6. Вам не нужно приходить так рано. 7. Ему нужна моя помощь? 8. Роберту разрешат пойти туда? 9. Должен ли я ехать туда завтра? 10. Он должен был остаться дома вчера? 11. Вы не должны говорить ему об этом. 12. Я должен подождать сестру. 13. Вам не надо переписывать всю статью. Перепишите только первые два абзаца. 14. Вы должны участвовать в этой дискуссии? 15. Пошли, мне не надо оставаться после репетиции.

Ex. 3. Make up dialogues as shown in the model. Use the words given to you. Pay attention to the modal verbs.

Model 1: **A:** I feel very tired these days. (1)
B: You mustn't sit at the computer all day long.
A: But I don't.
B: And you mustn't stay at home too much, either. (2)

(1) go to too many dances, sit up too late, work too hard at night, read till early morning, exercise too much, work as a waiter (wait the tables);
(2) play too much football, do much heavy work, smoke too much, watch TV so much, eat junk food, stay indoors.

Model 2: **A:** Where are Jack and Jill? Mother says she needs them at home.
B: What for?
A: Jack is *to look after the children* and Jill is *to cook dinner*.

Make the beds, set the table, do the dusting, sweep the floor, take the dog out, put the toys away, help with the washing up, iron the linen, clean the closet, pull the weeds, pick strawberries.

Model 3: **A:** I'd like to have a long chat with you.
B: Could you come and see me tomorrow? (1)
A: I'm afraid I can't tomorrow, but I can on Tuesday.
B: Tuesday will suit me perfectly. (2)

(1) drop in and see me, come round to my place, come to tea, call me;
(2) Wednesday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday, next week, this afternoon.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

I. Как будет *расписание* во множественном числе? 2. Это не косвенное дополнение. Если в английском предложении есть косвенное дополнение, то оно всегда прямое. 3. Подлежащее предложения может быть выражено субстантивированной частью речи. 4. Новости действительно плохие. Не удивительно, что он выглядит расстроенным. 5. Я беру пару выходных на следующей неделе, чтобы съездить навестить родителей. 6. Это интересная работа, но я не могу ее сделать. У меня нет времени. 7. Какая потрясающая картина! 8. Вечно ты болтаешь часами по телефону! Невозможно дозвониться! 9. Сколько у тебя занимает дорога в университет? 10. Тридцатый автобус здесь не останавливается. II. Кто самый старший в вашей группе? 12. Врачи рекомендуют съедать в день пять порций овощей и фруктов. Но мало кто это делает. 13. Если ты добавишь немного специй в салат, он будет вкуснее. 14. Ты не должна так разговаривать со своим начальником. Он тебя уволит. 15. Это самое опасное животное в нашей местности. 16. Я определенно чувствую лимон в этом пироге. 17. Вы извините, но ваша идея звучит странно.

Ex. 5. Insert articles where necessary.

1. ... Fleet Street in London takes its name from ... Fleet River, which till 1765 ran into ... Thames. 2. His ship nearly sank in ... Pacific. 3. She showed me some pictures taken in ... Swiss Alps. 4. The article says that the events in ... Asia and now in ... Africa are not without their repercussions (последствия) in ... Latin America. 5. They stood for some time, talking in quiet tones, comparing ... Thames with ... Seine. 6. ... Asia Minor is the part of ... Asia between ... Black Sea and ... Mediterranean Sea. 7. ... Sahara is a great desert in ... North Africa, extending from ... Atlantic Ocean to ... Nile. 8. ... Rhine flows into ... North Sea, north of ... Hague. 9. ... Mont Blanc is the highest peak of ... Alps. 10. ... British Isles are bounded on the north and west by ... Atlantic Ocean, on the east ... North Sea separates them from ... Germany. 11. It hasn't rained for several hundred years in ... Atakama in ... South America. 12. This street is going to be paved from ... Third Avenue to ... Sunset Drive. 13. ... Erie Canal connect ... Hudson River with ... Lake Erie. 14. We left ... France in the morning by ferry, crossed ... English Channel and six hours later found ourselves on ... British Isles. 15. Babylon, ... capital of ... Babylonia, was on ... Euphrates River.

Ex. 6. Practise degrees of comparison and translate the words in brackets.

1. Out of all the lemons, that one was (самый кислый). 2. The lines I have drawn are (более прямые, чем твои). 3. There is another carton of milk in the fridge. Use it. I think it is (свежее). 4. John said that he had just received (самые пренеприятные новости). 5. Of Winston's sisters, Joanna is (самая симпатичная). 6. A plane is (самый быстрый) means of travel. 7. This is (самый простой) recipe for the lemon cake I have seen. 8. During our third year at school the work is going to be (гораздо тяжелее, чем сейчас). 9. Susan is (быстрее, чем любой другой игрок в ее команде). 10. Thank you. I am feeling (гораздо лучше) today. 11. He is by far (самый умный человек) I have met. 12. The superlative degree of adjectives is (более трудная) to use. 13. I have never had (более счастливый день) in my life. 14. Margarine is (дешевле) than butter but not (полезнее). 15. I have never seen (более зеленую) grass.

Ex. 7. Use the right form of the following irregular verbs in brackets.

I. He (give) me what I wanted. 2. The package should be (freeze) at once. 3. The thermometer must not be (break). 4. She (draw) a picture for us yesterday 5. You should have (drive) a little farther. 6. Have you ever (fly) across the Atlantic? 7. The temperature has (fall) pretty much. 8. This team has never been (beat). 9. I have (choose) the wrong number. 10. The whistle (blow) and the train started off. II. He never (swim) as fast as he did that day. 12. Who (give) you this beautiful necklace? 13. The bell has not (ring) yet. 14. Have you ever (sing) this song? 15. I (run) as fast as I could.

Ex. 8. Put the verb to be in the singular or in the plural, paying attention to the agreement between the subject and the predicate.

1. My favourite breakfast (be) cereal with fruit and milk, and a cup of coffee. 2. Mistakes in spelling (be) the only problem in this test. 3. Twenty pounds (be) a lot of money. 4. Fish and chips (be) nice to eat. 5. Two hundreds dollars for this purse (be) expensive. Do you have something cheaper? 6. Here (be) the papers you requested. 7. Our children (be) our future. 8. Nuts and seeds (be) a classic vegetarian appetizer. 9. Human misbehaviours (be) simply an immature way of solving problems. 10. Another value of saving our forests (be) the large number of medicinal herbs that grow there. 11. Plastics made from recycled materials (be) a great way to help the environment. 12. When you are in love, three people (be) a crowd.

Unit 19

The Present Perfect Tense. The Resultative Type. Modal Verbs.

Articles

Ex. 1. Make up short dialogues as shown in the model, Be careful of the use of the auxiliary verb *to do* with the modal expression *to have to* in the interrogative form.

Model: **A:** I had to stay at home on Sunday.

B: *Why did you have to stay at home on Sunday?*

A: *I had to stay at home on Sunday because I was ill.*

1. I had to hurry to my office.
2. Margaret had to rewrite her paper.
3. I had to use a dictionary for my translation.
4. He had to study at the evening Department.
5. Jack had to return home.
6. Ann had to call on her again?
7. I had to sit up late yesterday.
8. Helen had to get up early last Sunday.
9. Peter had to help his sister with her homework.
10. Jane had to write another letter to her friend.
11. Alex had to stay home for the holiday.
12. During spring term Max had to do some odd jobs.
13. Jane had to make another pie for the party.
14. Kathy had to take the test again last week.
15. Mark had to apologize for his behaviour.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Ложись спать, ты должен рано встать завтра.
2. Она должна была заботиться о своем брате.
3. Филипп вынужден был извиниться.
4. Я должен идти, иначе я опоздаю на поезд.
5. Не могли бы вы мне помочь?
6. Вам необязательно выходить на этой остановке, следующая может быть ближе.
7. Не надо покупать словарь, я вам дам свой.
8. Не могли бы вы передать мне соль, пожалуйста.
9. Могу я увидеть вас сегодня вечером?
10. — Я должен сделать это сегодня? — Нет, вы можете сделать это завтра.
11. Нет необходимости напоминать ему о завтрашнем собрании.
12. Ты в состоянии добраться до дома?
13. — Я должен сдать работу сегодня? — Нет, ты можешь принести ее завтра.
14. Можно попросить вас передать ему сообщение?
15. Вам не нужно ехать в прокат, у меня достаточно видеокассет дома.

Ex. 3. Supply *the* wherever needed.

1. ... Amazon is the largest river system in the world.
2. A few seas have names of colours: ... Black Sea, ... Red Sea, ... Yellow Sea.
3. ... Suez Canal is in ... Middle East.
4. ... Far East or ... Orient, refers to the area of ... Asia, where ... China and ... Japan are located-

ed. 5. He used to live in ... South, but then he moved to ... California. 6. ... Russia and ... Alaska almost meet at ... Bering Strait. 7. ... Norway and ... Sweden occupy ... Scandinavian Peninsula. 8. Tea is grown in many parts of ... Southern-Africa, and especially in ... India and ... Sri Lanka. 9. There are many beautiful shops on ... Fifth Avenue in ... New York. 10. ... Istanbul was once called ... Constantinople. 11. ... Quartier Latin is one of the most beautiful places in ... Paris. 12. If you have a chance you should visit the area of ... Great Lakes and ... Niagara Falls. 13. ... Atlantic Ocean and ... Gulf of Mexico are both seen from the bridges of ... Florida Keys. 14. ... New York stands on ... Hudson River. 15. ... Quebec is one of the provinces of ... Canada.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Эльбрус — очень красивая гора. 2. Средиземное море находится между Европой, Азией и Африкой. 3. Ливингстон погиб в Центральной Африке. 4. Кейптаун — город в Южной Африке. 5. Озеро Байкал — самое глубокое в мире. 6. Турция и Греция стали популярными местами отдыха летом. 7. Западная Индия — это цепь островов между Северной и Южной Америкой. 8. Красота природы Крыма и Кавказа привлекала многих русских поэтов и писателей. 9. Мы провели лето на Дону. 10. Оска — порт пяти морей: Белого, Балтийского, Каспийского, Черного и Азовского. 11. Западное побережье Англии омывается Атлантическим океаном. 12. На следующей неделе экспедиция отправится в Арктику. 13. Есть ли беспосадочный рейс Москва — Сидней? 14. Озеро Окачоби расположено недалеко от города Орландо в штате Флорида, США. 15. Озеро Онтарио — одно из самых красивых Великих озер.

Ex. 5. Answer the questions using the Present Perfect Tense.

1. Have you ever been to St. Petersburg? 2. Have you ever written verses? 3. Have you ever read anything by John Updike? 4. Has it ever been so warm in November before? 5. Have you ever been to the Far East? 6. How many times have you ever been to the Bolshoi Theatre? 7. Have you ever travelled by air? 8. Have you ever seen a flying saucer? 9. Have you ever had your holiday in spring? 10. Have you ever received letters from foreign countries? 11. Have you ever earned your own money? 12. Have you ever tried to paint? 13. Has your boy (girl)-friend ever promised you eternal love? 14. Have you ever tried Japanese food? 15. Has it ever occurred to you that you are wrong?

Ex. 6. Translate into English, using the Present Perfect Tense.

1. Мы еще не видели картин этого художника. 2. Что вы приготовили на сегодня? 3. Они решили много важных проблем сегодня. 4. Он был в Лондоне три раза. 5. Мы еще не начали готовиться к тесту. 6. На какие вопросы вы уже ответили? 7. Что-то случилось с этим мальчиком, он очень бледен. 8. Он рассказал нам историю своей жизни. 9. Он уже рассказал вам о своих планах на будущее? 10. Посмотрите, Вы сделали три ошибки в контрольной. 11. Мы заходили к вам несколько раз. 12. Его нет на занятиях, он простудился. 13. Он ни разу еще не нарушил своего слова. 14. Здесь никогда не было такого сильного дождя раньше. 15. Я никогда в жизни не играл в гольф. 16. Я всегда знала, что ты мне друг. Вы всегда мне нравились, но сегодня вы себя странно ведете. Я считаю, что ты и так уже много сказал. Пора остановиться. И все-таки я Вас люблю, даже после всего того, что Вы натворили. 20. — Где Андрей? — Ушел в сапожную мастерскую.

Ex. 7. Comment on the types of predicates in the following sentences.

1. They stopped working and began to chat. 2. The flowers arrived. They were fresh and lovely. 3. This stream runs dry in the summer. 4. The question remains open to discussion. 5. Let's have a chat, shall we? 6. They have been dating for a year already. 7. The door stood open, inviting her to come in. 8. You must think twice before marrying her. 9. The senator stood firm on his principles. 10. The garden had run wild. 11. I can't help feeling dead serious about the coming elections. 12. Am I to give in or shall I stick to my ground? 13. They looked at me in despair. 14. They looked desperate and lost. 15. This small country has been fighting desperately for its independence for twenty years. 16. The milk went sour. 17. It's autumn. The leaves turn yellow.

Ex. 8. Write the following sentences choosing the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. She sang the song (beautiful, beautifully). 2. He has always been a (careful, carefully) driver. 3. Some of the passengers were very (bad, badly) wounded. 4. Please speak (slow, slowly). I can't understand you when you speak (quick, quickly). 5. He works very (hard, hardly). 6. He looks rather (strange, strangely) to me. 7. He looked at me (strange, strangely). 8. He speaks English (good, well). 9. I am not (complete, completely) satisfied. 10. He feels (unhappy, unhappily) about the situation. 11. Why do you look so (unhappy, unhappily)? 12. The coffee tastes very (good, well). 13. He is (happy, happily) married. 14. He seemed (angry, angrily) although he spoke (calm,

calmly). 15. Does he (usually, usually) speak so (good, well)? 16. Please, don't drive so (fast, fastly). Be (careful, carefully).

Ex. 9. Insert the definite article before the abstract and material nouns where necessary.

1. Information is a precious commodity in our computerized world. Warmth of the sun causes water to evaporate. 3. We were served bread and cheese. Bread was somewhat stale, but cheese was delicious. 4. Information in this file is incorrect. 5. Sugar consumed in large quantities is a contributing factor for diabetes. 6. Coal mined in this area is used in making steel. 7. Milk that is sold in the store next to our apartment building is marketed only locally. 8. Butter is hard. 9. I asked him to turn music down. It was too noisy and we couldn't hear each other. 10. Wheats of Canada differ from those of the Ukraine. 11. Gold was discovered in the Klondike at the end of the 19th century. 12. Furniture is reasonably priced. 13. There is a saying in the islands that if you have sand in your shoes, you will come to the islands again. 14. Do you like honey with comb or with out it? 15. Advice was to take off before it started to rain.

Unit 20

The Present Perfect Tense. The Durative Type. Articles with the Names of Meals

Ex. 1. Complete the following situations according to the model.

Model: It's cold in the room (the window, to be open, for a long time). — *The window has been open for a long time.*

1. It's warm (the weather, to be fine, all week). 2. Peter is absent (he, to be ill, for a week). 3. She can't show you the way there (never, be there). 4. He may go to the cinema (he, do one's work). 5. I can't say anything about the film (not, see, it, yet). 6. Let's go for a walk (rain, stop). 7. There are piles of snow everywhere. It (snow) a lot. 8. Don't describe the place to me (I, be there, several times). 9. I know him very well (be friends, since childhood). 10. You look wonderful (I, just, come back, after a good vacation). 11. It's getting colder every day (winter, come). 12. There is *no* coffee in the house. You (not buy, any). 13. He has no money left. He (spend, it, all). 14. He's really upset. He (lose, his wallet). 15. We are losing our way. The night (fall).

Ex. 2. Construct sentences according to the model.

Model 1: see him — today — *I haven't seen him today.*

Meet her — lately; *go to the cinema—this week; go. to the country — this month; read a lot of English books — this year; speak to him — today.*

Model 2: I haven't seen him since 1970.

Speak to my friend — last month; *go to the theatre — last year; hear from them — last autumn; read anything in English — May; translate from Russian into English — I left school.*

Model 3: Who has taken my book?

Break the glass; leave a notebook; turn on the light; switch on TV; take my pencil.

Model 4: What have you bought?

Lose, find, leave, do, prepare, send, translate, bring, see.

Model 5: Why haven't you done it?

Study the material; learn the rules; put it in its place; close the door; open the window; call on me; explain the case to us; read you messages; check the facts.

Ex. 3. Comment on the use of the Present Perfect Tense. Say whether it expresses a complete action — the Resultative Perfect or an incomplete action — the Durative Perfect.

1. We've made sure that you will enjoy the conference. 2. He has been with us for a fortnight. 3. I have known him all my life. 4. Traditional teaching methods have proven to be effective under a lot of circumstances. 5. I have always dreaded tests. 6. At last you have come. I've been here for an hour. 7. How long have you been in Moscow? 8. I haven't heard from him for a year. 9. Have you read this article? 10. I have been interested in this project for many years. 11. He has made it. 12. She's been excited about it for quite a while. 13. You've come a long way. 14. It's not news for me. I've heard it already. 15. Show me how you do it. I've never done it before. 16. It's been a long week.

Ex. 4. Change the tense in the following sentences into the Present Perfect. Use the adverbial modifiers in brackets.

1. He gets up at 7 o'clock (just). 2. I usually go to Kiev by air (never). 3. I watch TV programmes every day (often). 4. Now I read a lot

of interesting books in the original (lately). 5. She reads historical novels with great interest (always). 6. The boys are finishing breakfast (yet). 7. Does he read books on travel? (ever). 8. I look through morning newspapers at breakfast (already). 9. Nick shows his films to his friends (often). 10. I meet my fellow-worker on my way to the office (just). 11. I live in Moscow (always). 12. Do you travel to exotic places (ever)? 13. I use a digital camera (never)? 14. I don't hear about it every day (yet). 15. I don't often use my VCR (yet).

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Вы виделись с ним с тех пор, как он уехал из Петербурга? 2. — Он уже вернулся? — Да, он вернулся три дня назад. 3. Я никогда не видела этого человека. 4. Сколько английских книг вы прочитали за последнее время? 5. Он только что ушел. 6. Я потеряла ключ от квартиры и теперь не могу туда попасть. 7. Они не убирали комнату уже неделю. 8. Я купил интересную книгу. Хотите ее прочесть? 9. Кто-то разбил в комнате окно и теперь холодно. 10. Ты проверял сегодня электронную почту? 11. Я оставил часы дома и не могу сказать вам который час. 12. Сыну моей сестры всего четыре года, но он уже научился читать. 13. Я никогда об этом не слышала. 14. Вы уже переехали на новую квартиру? 15. Вы сделали много ошибок в диктанте. 16. В этом месяце я прочитал три английские книги. 17. Мой приятель уехал в Брайтон неделю назад и до сих пор мне не написал. 18. Я не встречал его последнее время. 19. Куда ты положила мою шапку? Я нигде не могу ее найти. 20. Все пришли, можно начинать собрание. 21. Я пришел, чтобы поговорить с вами. 22. Вы поняли правило? 23. Вы читали сегодня в газете статью о нашем университете?

Ex. 6. Insert the correct article.

1. I usually have ... breakfast at 7 o'clock. 2. I like to have ... hot breakfast in the morning. 3. — What do you usually have for ... breakfast? — I usually have ... eggs, ... bread ... butter, and ... tea for... breakfast. — It's ... very substantial breakfast, isn't it? 4. ... Dinner today is very good. 5. I like to have ... dinner at home. 6. In summer we have ... dinner at home. 7. ... dinner is already cold, we must warm it up. 8. I have ... supper with my friends three times a week. 9. ... supper was over. 10. ... dinner is ready. 11. Brunch is ... late, morning meal eaten as the first meal of the day. 12. A tuna sandwich is ... popular lunch. 13. The campers had ... early supper and went to their cabins. 14. The maid knocked and carried in ... breakfast. 15. Hope is ... good breakfast but ... bad supper.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Хорошая еда требует много времени для приготовления. 2. Попкорн — популярная еда. 3. Сегодня день рождения мамы, и я готовлю особый обед. 4. Давай поужинаем в китайском ресторане. 5. Зачем же ты положила так много перца в суп? 6. Обед в индийском ресторане был очень острым. 7. Ну почему ты все время забываешь вымыть руки перед обедом! 8. Время обеда. Где будем обедать сегодня? 9. Чай — очень популярный напиток. 10. Она сладкоежка и живет в основном на шоколаде. 11. Ужин состоял из рыбы и жареного картофеля. 12. — Сколько раз в день Вы едите? — Три раза. 13. Давай прервемся и перекусим, хорошо? После обеда нужно немного посидеть, а после ужина погулять. Грейс — вегетарианка и практически никогда не ест мяса.

Ex. 8. Put the adjectives in brackets into the form which best suits the meaning of the sentence.

1. That is (thrilling) western I've ever seen! 2. In your opinion what is (stressful) aspect of being a doctor? 3. Who is (useful) to society: a policeman or a social worker. 4. I think women are (careful) drivers than men. 5. He feels much (fit) since he stopped smoking. 6. There is nothing (annoying) than loosing the door key. 7. Michael prefers to be alone. He is (sociable) person in the office. 8. That is (bad) food I've ever had! 9. We got (modern) equipment available. 10. Which is (good) dress of the two? 11. Of the twins Sarah is (happy). 12. Which computer has (great) capacity, yours or mine? 13. Which room is (large), the family room or living room? 14. Which sales representative is (successful), Mark or Brian? 15. Of the two sisters Monica is (intelligent).

Ex. 9. Use the right article.

... Amazon is ... second longest river in the world after ... Nile. It flows across the continent of ... South America, from ... Andes mountain range to ... Atlantic Ocean. ... Amazon is over 4 thousand miles long and up to 2000 miles wide. Thousand of small rivers flow into ... Amazon, and between them they drain half the vast continent of ... South America. This area is ... Amazon Basin, a huge wilderness of tropical forest and grassy plains. ... Amazon begins only 100 miles from ... Pacific Ocean, but it travels eastwards across the country instead of taking the quick route and flowing down the steep western slopes. Halfway along its length it reaches ... Manaus, the biggest city in ... Amazon region. Near ... Manaus ... Amazon is joined by another huge river, ... Rio Negro, which has very clear water.

At the end of the course, nearly 4000 miles from the beginning, ... Amazon forms ... group of islands in midstream. This area is called a delta. ... Amazon has ... biggest delta in the world; one of ... islands is as big as the country of ... Switzerland.

Unit 21

The Present Perfect Tense. The Simple Past Tense

Ex. 1. Explain the use of the Simple Past and the Present Perfect in the following sentences.

1. We had a nice walk two days ago. 2. When did the last readers' conference take place? 3. When my son was in the country last winter he played snowballs almost every day. 4. He used to ski and to skate in winter. 5. He visited his native town in 1990. 6. The man entered the room, sat down at the table, ordered some food and began to read a newspaper. 7. She looked for a job for several months. 8. I found this purse at the Flea market. 9. We have run out of sugar. Could you spare me some? 10. It's the best picture I have ever taken. II. It has been windy all day. 12. Nick has chosen a story by William Somerset Maugham for his home reading report. 13. I haven't seen anything interesting lately. 14. Have you checked your voice mail today? 15. They will make the decision after they have interviewed all the applicants. 16. It has been a pleasure to be of assistance. 17. I have always believed that she will come back one day.

Ex. 2. Form the Simple Past from the infinitives in brackets, name the signals of this tense.

1. Yesterday I (drop) my watch. 2. Last Sunday our team (play) well. 3. It (rain) last week. 4. Some years ago I (try) to learn this language. 5. It (snow) heavily last night. 6. He (nod) but (say) nothing. 7. On April the first Tom (tell) us a good joke. 8. Yesterday I (catch) a cold. 9. At breakfast I (drink) coffee. 10. I (send) him to the shop two hours ago. 11. I (hurt) my knee when skiing. 12. I (read) something about it in the paper last week. 13. Then one day I (run) into her in the store. 14. We (not speak) to each other for several days. 15. I used to take this route when I (study) at the University.

Ex. 3. Use either the Present Perfect or the Simple Past of the verbs in brackets.

1. I (be) in this city since I (get) a job here. 2. Victor and Victoria (meet) on Christmas and they (not part) for a single day since. 3. Our

families (be) on friendly terms once. But the situation (change). 4. Marion (have) a lot of problems since she (become) the headmistress. 5. — You (tell) me everything? — I think I (explain) the reason last night. 6. Since the term (begin), we (have) four tests. 7. I (not be) to my school since I (leave) it two years ago. 8. — How long you (know) the Snows? — Since we (move) to the neighbourhood. 9. — You (have) your driving license for long? — I (buy) my car three years ago and (get) my license soon after it. 10. We (not be) to any restaurant after the prices (go up) so dramatically. 11. Kelly (leave) for Texas already. She (fly) at two o'clock. 12. Darling, you eat too much! During your last visit the doctor (warn) you to watch your weight. 13. Hob (bring) a packed lunch which his mother (prepare) for him in the morning. 14. — The director already (leave)? — He (drive) off a minute ago. 15. Alan Marshall (be) in this cigarette business for ten years though his wife (be) against it from the very start.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Он часто бывал в Лондоне последнее время. 2. Он пришел в школу без очков и теперь не может ни читать, ни писать. 3. Мистер Грей без работы (be out of work) уже три месяца. 4. Только что пробило двенадцать. 5. Я часто бывал там и хорошо знаю город. 6. Вы много успели сделать сегодня? 7. Ей нездоровится последнее время. 8. Мне до сих пор не удалось побывать там. 9. Он был здесь недавно. 10. Он говорит с легким акцентом. Странно, что я не замечал его раньше. 11. Я так давно читала этот роман, что уже забыла его. 12. Как же давно мы не виделись с тобой, Таня! Как же ты похорошела! 13. Этот фильм был снят двадцать лет назад, но никто его так и не увидел. Джейн счастлива с тех пор, как она вышла замуж за Майкла. С тех пор как он стал художником, он носит бороду.

Ex. 5. Finish the sentences and answer them.

1. Since when haven't you ...? 2. Since when hasn't he ...? 3. Since what time haven't they ...? 4. Since when hasn't she ...?

Ex. 6. Express disagreement and complete the situation according to the model.

Model: Jack hasn't bought the text-book. — *Yes, he has. Here it is.* He has done all his home-work. — *No, he hasn't. He has done only one exercise.*

1. You have never been to the theatre before. 2. He has answered all the questions. 3. They have called on him several times. 4. You've caught a cold. 5. The film has been on at our local cinema. 6. You've made three mistakes in your dictation. 7. He has had lunch already.

8. They haven't translated the article yet. 9. He has made a report on the international situation. 10. He hasn't spoken to her yet. 11. He has won the first prize. 12. They haven't fixed the car yet. 13. She has been out of hospital for several days. 14. He has bought tickets to the theater. 15. He hasn't broken his promise.

Ex. 7. Use the appropriate article wherever necessary.

1. ... tea was delicious. 2. Do you want... tea, darling? 3. Let me arrange ... little dinner. 4. He gave them instructions to lay ... breakfast for two in the study. 5. 'There's ... lunch upstairs,' said Kemp, speaking as easily as possible. 6. Shall I ring for ... tea? 7. She went out with Donald to buy meat for ... dinner. 8. I thought if I had lunch with you first I should feel stronger. 9. Come back to ... tea if you can. 10. We had ... pleasant dinner on Sunday. 11. They met again at ... dinner, thinking and speaking once more about life. 12. Whisky-and-soda and a biscuit is all I've had since breakfast. Would you join us for ... Easter brunch? 14. ... dinner is getting cold. 15. It was ... nice dinner. Thank you for inviting me.

Ex. 8. Use the right form of the modal verb *have to*.

1. Adam's wife is away so he ... look after himself. 2. Antony isn't at home. He ... go to Rome on business again. 3. I don't understand what is going on. You ... explain. 4. The party ended late and we ... stay at Stephen's. 5. You ... join us even if you don't want to. 6. Everybody ... compromise now and then, ... they? 7. Bob had enough money, so he ... borrow any after all. 8. Miranda was in a great hurry, but the receptionist told her that she ... wait for her turn. 9. Your secretaries ... write a lot of letters every day, ...? 10. We are having a dry summer, so we ... water the vegetables in the kitchen garden. 11. The family ... part with the cat as their kid was allergic to it. 12. If the temperature does not fall, we ... take the man to hospital.

Unit 22

The Present Perfect Tense. The Simple Past Tense. Other Tenses

Ex. 1. Make up sentences with the following groups of words. Use either the Simple Past or the Present Perfect. Supply the missing words.

1. The boy, catch cold, no doubt. 2. Shakespeare, many comedies, tragedies. 3. Last night, wonderful ballet, *Swan Lake*, the Bolshoi

Theatre. 4. The writer, not yet, finish, new book, he's writing. 5. During the war, her family, two years, in Siberia. 6. For the last few weeks, thousands, people, visit the Tretyakov Gallery. 7. Last summer, holiday, the Crimea. 8. I am hungry, no lunch. 9. This story. happen, many years ago. 10. Be, many visitors, lately, this exhibit. 11. Jane, visit, her school friend, go to St. Petersburg. 12. Not to be, home, for many months. 13. I, meet, my husband, at a dinner party. 14. He, walk up to me, tell me, the story of his life. 15. Those, finish the work, can leave.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Я купил эту машину, когда был в Германии. 2. Я говорил с ним об этом вчера. 3. Мы получили от него известие месяц назад. 4. Том научился читать, когда ему было 3 года. 5. Она написала ему вчера вечером. 6. Мы позавтракали поздно сегодня. 7. Он встал в половине шестого сегодня. 8. Он выключил свет и вышел. 9. Обычно она писала ему два раза в неделю. 10. Они уехали в Париж два года тому назад. 11. Вчера недалеко от нашего дома произошла авария. 12. Когда-то мне нравились такие романы. 13. Я видела объявление о продаже дешевого факса недавно. 14. Мы заходили к нему на днях. 15. Я разговаривала с ним в среду последний раз.

Ex. 3. Complete the following sentences using *since* and *for* as in the model.

Model: I have not been to the library for three weeks (*duration of the action*)/**since** the 25th of September (*a starting point of the action*).

1. He has worked at his report ... 2. I haven't been to the pictures ... 3. I have known him ... 4. My sister's friend lived in this flat ... 5. I haven't seen much of him ... 6. This teacher has taught children at school ... 7. Petter has read a lot ... 8. This author has written a great many books ... 9. I haven't had a spare moment ... 10. He hasn't talked to me about the matter ... 11. She hasn't typed much ... 12. These suits have been on sale ... 13. I haven't had time to go to the movies ... 14. We have been ready to start ... 15. He has been a member of this committee ...

Ex. 4. Put the verb in brackets into the Present Progressive, the Present Perfect or the Simple Present Tense.

1. I (lose) my key and (can) get into the flat. 2. I (know) him since childhood and we always (be) good friends. 3. My friend (learn) Ger-

man and now he (study) French. 4. I (not look) at the newspaper today so I (not know) the news. 5. At last you (come). We (be) here for an hour. 6. As far as I (know) you (make) good progress in English. 7. He (be) angry with me lately. What (happen) to him? 8. We (study) the use of tenses now and I (not master) it yet. 9. — What you (look for)? — I (lose) my bag and I (want) to find it before it (get dark). 10. He (travel) a lot and (see) a great deal of the world. He (go) to Africa in a few days. 11. He (get) his diploma. He (work) now. 12. There (be) not as much snow as it used to be. I think winters (become) milder. 13. — Where (hurry) to, Jane? You (to have) a party tonight? — Yes, we (...). But we (run out) of mayonnaise and I (go) to the store to get some. Sorry, but I really need to run. The first guests (come) in less than an hour and there are still a lot of things to do.

Ex. 5. Translate into English, using the Durative Perfect.

1. Мы дружим с Аней с тех пор, как поступили в институт. 2. Она любит его с тех пор, как впервые встретила. 3. Я знаю ее с тех пор, как она была ребенком. 4. Я не был у брата уже около месяца. 5. Он не был ни на одном собрании в этом месяце. 6. Вы давно в Москве? 7. Мы здесь уже целый час, но никто еще не пришел. 8. Я знаю его с 1990 года. 9. Мы не получаем от него известия уже полгода. 10. Она очень счастлива, с тех пор как вышла замуж. 11. Ты был умницей сегодня, пошли есть мороженое. 12. Я устала и расстроена. День был тяжелый. 13. Он всегда интересовался историей. 14. Я с детства боюсь темноты. 15. Я всегда знала, что он талантливый человек.

Ex. 6. Ask questions beginning with *Have you ever...?* and give answers.

1. Think about the meaning of life. 2. Read *Matilda* by R. Dahl. 3. Tell a black lie. 4. Catch a big fish. 5. Eat frogs. 6. Be a black sheep in the family. 7. Make your own clothes. 8. Fly in a private plane. 9. Sit on a cactus. 10. Spend a whole day doing nothing. 11. Swim in the ocean. 12. Be in love. 13. Ride a horse. 14. See a ghost. 15. Eat raw fish.

Ex. 7. Translate into English, using the Simple Present, the Present Progressive and the Present Perfect Tense.

1. Я слышала эту шутку тысячу раз. 2. Вы видите доктора Смита? Он стоит у окна. 3. Можно начинать наш вечер. Все пришли. 4. — Сколько лет они женаты? — Двенадцать лет. 5. Боюсь, что не смогу говорить об этой книге, я не прочел ее до конца. 6. Он

только что звонил, он ничего не знает. 7. Дождь кончился, но все еще дует холодный ветер. 8. — Вы где-нибудь были на этой неделе? — Да, мы два раза ходили в кино. 9. — Они уже приехали? — Нет, они приезжают завтра. 10. Я в институте с утра и еще не обедал. 11. — Давно вы дружите? — Я знаю ее всю жизнь. 12. На этой неделе ни один из студентов группы не пропустил ни одного урока. 13. Последнее время я не вижу ее. Она куда-нибудь уехала? 14. — Что ты делаешь вечером? — Я иду в кино. — Не уходи без меня. Подожди, пока я тебе позвоню. 15. Стоимость золота поднималась несколько раз за последние годы.

Ex. 8. Dictation-translation (general revision).

1. Я не могу пойти с вами в кино, я плохо чувствую себя последнее время. 2. На улицах много народа, да? 3. Какой материк самый большой? 4. С понедельника погода ужасная. 5. В этом месяце я прочла меньше английских книг, чем в прошлом. 6. Интересно, когда студенты вернутся из Лондона? 7. Когда он приехал? 8. — У нас есть хоть сколько-то масла? — Нет, нисколько. 9. Я так рада, что вы пришли. 10. Стекло легко бьется. 11. Где ты его встретила? 12. Соединенные Штаты находятся в Северной Америке. 13. Твоя одежда совершенно промокла. Переоденься. 14. Она до сих пор не дала ответа на наше предложение. 15. Слово маркетинг стало очень популярно в русском языке. 16. Последние новости подтвердили переворот в Колумбии. 17. Они не такие способные, как мы. 18. За последние годы многие университеты пересмотрели свои учебные планы. 19. В этом году мы наблюдаем много необычных природных явлений. 20. Мне, пожалуйста, кофе и мороженое.

Ex. 9. Make the right choice.

1. Please ... down. Please ... yourself. ... the vase on the table (sit, seat, set). 2. He ... his hat to greet us. The balloon ... in the sky (raised, rose). 3. The man ... for his country. Her aunt is... (died, dead). 4. He was found guilty and Mother ... the clothes up to dry (hung, hanged). 5. The best cloth is ... in England. I have only ... my duty (done, made). 6. I went and ... down for an hour. The hen has ... an egg this morning (lay, laid). 7. The teacher told him to ... his voice. We had to ... from the table before dinner was over (rise, raise). 8. Her grandfather is He ... of fever (died, dead). 9. He ... on the floor unable to move. I ... the package on the counter (laid, lay). 10. Betty ... aside fat diets once and for all. Nancy ... back, closed her eyes and fell asleep (sat, set).

Unit 23

The Present Perfect Tense in Clauses of Time and Condition.

Other Tenses

Ex. 1. Use Present Perfect for the indefinite time and Simple Past for definite time.

1. He (live) in this house since he was born. 2. Her husband (die) of a heart attack a few years ago. 3. He not (smoke) for several weeks. 4. He always (want) to take a trip around the world. 5. The girl (fall off) her bicycle many times. 6. He (work) in a factory last summer to Sam his tuition for the University. 7. He (be) a member of Congress for many years. 8. We (sell) our house several weeks ago. 9. There (be) many accidents on that road recently. 10. I (have) this toothache since yesterday. 11. He (attend) the University until he ran out of money last year. 12. Because of the storm last night, they (cancel) all flights from the airport. 13. His business (prosper) so far. 14. She (have) the flu last month. She (not feel) well since. 15. Up to now we never (have) any troubles with our refrigerator. 16. In the past more people (live) on farms. 17. He (be) seriously ill for the past few days.

Ex. 2. Answer questions according to the model.

Model: Have you seen this play? (last night) — *Yes, I have. I saw it last night.*

1. Have you wound the clock? (on Monday) 2. Have you found the matches? (in my pocket) 3. Has the boat sailed off? (two hours ago) 4. Has the train got in? (just) 5. Has your flight been called? (no) 6. Have you been to the theatre this month? (the other day) 7. Has she spoken to you yet? (in the morning) 8. Have you seen him lately? (in the cinema) 9. Has the weather been nasty this month? (last week) 10. Have you been very busy the last few months? (in September) 11. Have you had any news from him for some months? (no, last year) 12. Helen has been a student since September, hasn't she? (yes, to become, a student) 13. It hasn't rained here more than a month, has it? (no, in June).

Ex. 3. Make up sentences according to the model. Use the adverbial modifiers given below.

Models: 1. ... since last week. — *I have done a lot of work since last week.*

2. ... last week. — *I attended a lecture on English literature last week.*

1. ... since last year. 2. ... five days ago. 3. ... for five days. 4. ... last year. 5. ... since I saw him last. 6. ... yesterday. 7. ... for a whole month. 8. ... ever since. 9. ... long ago. 10. ... the other day. 11. ... for the last two years. 12. ... last month. 13. ... since then. 14. ... lately. 15. ... in 1995.

Ex. 4. Contrast the Present Perfect Tense with the Simple Past Tense.

- A** 1. Вы уже видели этот фильм? Когда вы его видели? 2. Ваш брат уже перевел статью? Когда он ее перевел? 3. Ваша дочь уже пообедала? Когда она пообедала? 4. Ваша группа уже прочла книгу «Великий Гетсби»? Когда вы закончили читать эту книгу? 5. Вы уже накрыли на стол? Когда вы накрыли на стол? 6. Они уже получили новую квартиру? Когда они ее получили? 7. Папа уже пришел с работы? Когда он пришел? 8. Вы уже записались в нашу библиотеку? Когда вы в нее записались?
- B** 1. Ты дослал Джиму телеграмму вчера? Ты уже послал Джиму телеграмму? 2. Я плохо спал вчера ночью. Я плохо сплю последние ночи. 3. Профессор Уилсон рекомендовал мне несколько статей по этому вопросу на консультации. Профессор Уилсон только что рекомендовал мне несколько статей по этому вопросу. 4. Он жил в Лондоне в 1983 году. Он не был в Лондоне с 1983 года. 5. Я не видел его с воскресенья. Последний раз я видел его в воскресенье. 6. Я знаю Нэнси давно. Я знал ее в возрасте пяти лет. 7. Профессор когда-нибудь говорил об этой книге? Профессор говорил на лекции об этой книге? 8. Николай был взволнован целый день вчера. Николай взволнован весь день. 9. Я говорил с ним минуту назад. Я только что говорил с ним. 10. Мэри была у нас на прошлой неделе. Мэри не была у нас с прошлой недели.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. — Где твой брат? — Он уехал. 2. Я хочу поговорить с ним. Он пришел? 3. Почему вы надели теплое пальто? Сегодня не холодно. 4. Посмотрите. Ваши часы остановились. 5. Я сломал карандаш. Дай мне, пожалуйста, твой. 6. — Вы закончили работу? — Да, я закончил ее вчера. 7. Почему Вы открыли окно? Здесь холодно. 8. Он открыл окно и вышел из комнаты. 9. — Вы закрыли дверь? — Нет, я ее не закрыл. 10. Он закрыл дверь, сел за стол и начал писать. 11. Посмотрите! Я принес вам интересные книги. 12. Сегодня я не могу поговорить с директором, он уже ушел. 13. Он ушел домой после собрания. 14. Я встал очень рано сегодня. 15. — Вы читали этот рассказ? — Да, я читал его несколько лет тому назад.

Ex. 6. Make the sentences more emphatic by using the Present Perfect Tense in clauses of time.

1. Nothing will be done till he arrives. 2. I shall not make any plans until I speak to my doctor. 3. The parents will never agree to it till they see her on the stage. 4. He will phone his mother after he passes his examination. 5. I shall tell you the story when she returns. 6. I shan't go anywhere until he calls and tells us that everything is OK. 7. I won't speak to you until you take your words back. 8. You'll never be well again until you stop smoking. 9. I won't let you go till you promise to come back again. 10. I shall write to him when I get his letter. 11. He will drive his new car after he passes his driver's test. 12. You will lose weight after you stop eating so many candy bars. 13. The editor won't publish this article until you verify the facts. 14. He won't make a move until we tell him.

Ex. 7. Translate the following sentences using the Present Perfect Tense.

1. Я дам тебе эту конфету только после того, как ты выпьешь молоко. 2. Я пойду за покупками только после того, как прочитаю газету. 3. Я не уеду из города, пока мама не выздоровеет. 4. Соревнования начнутся только после того, как вопрос будет решен. 5. Он не заснет, пока я не расскажу ему сказку. 6. Мы не отпустим вас, пока вы не пообедаете с нами. 7. Нельзя пользоваться этим аппаратом, пока вы не изучите инструкцию. 8. Вы начнете свободно читать английскую литературу только после того, как прочтете несколько книг. 9. Никто не будет с вами разговаривать, пока Вы не извинитесь. 10. Мы не будем накрывать на стол, пока не сделаем все салаты. 11. Я не собираюсь смотреть телевизор, пока не просмотрю свою электронную почту. 12. Я смогу этим заняться после того, как уплачу налоги. 13. У меня будет больше времени после того, как дети уедут на дачу. 14. Мы будем заворачивать подарки после того, как украсим елку. 15. Давай поговорим о делах после того, как поедим.

Ex. 8. Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of articles before the names of meals.

1. Когда Вы обедали? 2. Мама готовит обед. 3. Обед имел успех. 4. Я легко позавтракал и чувствовал себя голодным. 5. Я уже позавтракала, можно идти гулять. 6. Они поужинали в восемь. 7. Завтрак состоял из хлеба с маслом, сыра и кофе. 8. Не опаздывайте к обеду. 9. Обед еще не готов. 10. Мойте руки и садитесь за стол. 11. Какой хороший обед! 12. Наши друзья пригласили нас на обед. 13. За обедом они разговаривали, главным образом, о погоде. 14. В

кафе напротив всегда можно заказать горячий завтрак. 15. Что у нас сегодня на ужин? 16. У вас достаточно времени для небольшой прогулки перед завтраком? 17. Мы позавтракаем на террасе, хорошо? 18. Закажи, пожалуйста, обед из трех блюд на меня тоже. 19. Я больше всего люблю кашу на завтрак. 20. Врачи рекомендуют ранний и легкий ужин.

Unit 24

The Use of Tenses. Articles with Nouns in Apposition

Ex. 1. Contrast the Simple Past and the Present Perfect Tense.

Models: Did John see Susan last week? — Yes, he saw Susan last week, but he hasn't seen her since.

Did Peter go to Scotland five years ago? — Yes, he went to Scotland five years ago but he hasn't been there since.

1. Did you do any flying last year? 2. Did you read an English novel last month? 3. Did you go skiing two years ago? 4. Did you come to the class last week? 5. Did you have a cold two months ago? 6. Did Henry go to dances last year? 7. Did you see a good film last week? 8. Did you take any exams last summer? 9. Did Gordon have Italian food when he was in Rome? 10. Did Davis give his wife a present three months ago? 11. Did Eleanor use her car when she did her shopping? 12. Did you go to the dacha during your holidays? 13. Did you see the exhibit of British painters in the Central Exhibit Hall? 14. Did you do your last course paper on the computer? 15. Did you take any pictures of the party with your new camera?

Ex. 2. Translate the following dialogues using the Present Perfect Tense where necessary.

- Привет, Алекс.
- Здравствуй, Макс. Сто лет тебя не видел. Ты где пропадал?
- Да я только что приехал из Англии. Пробыл там все лето.
- Что ты там делал?
- Сначала работал, потом путешествовал. А ты был там?
- Нет, пока не выбрался. А как ты получил визу?
- Через одну студенческую организацию. Они занимаются устройством на работу студентов в каникулярный период. Сейчас таких организаций много. А ты что, тоже хочешь поехать?
- Да не плохо бы. Я много читал об этой стране. А сейчас начал учить язык. Хожу на курсы.

- Да, в Англии есть что посмотреть.
- Ты ездил туда один?
- Нет, нас было несколько человек. Ты помнишь Виктора? Он учился на год старше нас.
- Помню. А он разве не закончил уже университет?
- Нет, еще учится. А как ты? Давно ничего о тебе не слышал. Чем занимаешься, кроме курсов?
- Учусь на экономическом. Закончил компьютерные курсы, занялся языком. В общем, все в порядке.
- Рад был тебя повидать. Заходи, если будет время. У тебя есть мой телефон?
- Если он у тебя не изменился, то есть. Спасибо за приглашение. Звони.

Ex. 3. Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of the Present Perfect Tense and the Past Simple Tense in questions beginning with where why, how.

- A** 1. — Куда она ушла? — Я думаю она ушла в магазин. 2. Куда она уходила? Ее не было два часа. 3. Куда ты ходил утром? 4. Где ты был все это время? 5. — Где ты был минуту назад? — Я был в конторе.
- B** 1. Почему ты открыл окно? В комнате довольно холодно. 2. Зачем ты открыл окно? Я закрыл его снова. 3. Зачем он им это сказал? Они были удивлены. 4. Зачем он нам это сказал? Это нас не касается. 5. Почему ты опоздал на лекцию? Декан очень сердился. 6. Почему вы сделали такую грубую ошибку в этом слове?
- C** 1. Как вы сделали это упражнение? Покажите тетрадь. 2. Как вы делали это упражнение, со словарем или без словаря? 3. Как она написала эту контрольную работу? Ошибки есть? 4. Как они писали эту контрольную работу, на листках или в тетрадях?

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences according to the model.

Model: Я никогда не была в Лондоне.

Cue: In my life. *Key:* I have never been to London.

Cue: No matter how often I visited Britain. *Key:* I never went there.

1. Она читала эту книгу. *Cue:* She may help you with the difficulties. *Cue:* In childhood. 2. Я видела Мэри сегодня. *Cue:* She looks recovered and fresh. *Cue:* When she was engaged in a lovely conversation. 3. Она потеряла свой билет на этой неделе. *Cue:* She will not be able to go to the country on Sunday. *Cue:* When she was riding in a bus. 4. Роберт часто помогал мне. *Cue:* He has always been a good friend. *Cue:* When he stayed at our place. 5. Я видел его только однажды. *Cue:* In the

whole of my life. *Cue:* When he was here. 6. Почтальон пришел. *Cue:* Here is the letter. *Cue:* And dropped a letter into our post-box.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Когда вы сдавали последний экзамен? 2. Ты опоздал сегодня. Ты ехал в трамвае или на автобусе? 3. Что у вас было сегодня на завтрак? 4. Когда и где Дора нашла свой кошелек? 5. Где ты провел каникулы? 6. Ты ходила в кино на этой неделе? 7. Дора опять что-нибудь потеряла? 8. Сколько неправильных глаголов вы уже выучили? 9. Она здесь с утра? 10. Во сколько ты встал сегодня утром? 11. Ты провел субботу с друзьями? 12. Разве вы его не встречали на этой неделе? 13. Я всегда тебе это говорила. 14. Я вас не видел больше месяца. 15. Когда он тебе это сказал? 16. Я говорил с ним о тебе. Он не возражал против твоего отъезда. 17. Я читал эту поэму. Она произвела на меня огромное впечатление. 18. Я уже давно хочу поговорить с вами (to be eager). 19. Когда ты слышал об этом? 20. Ничего удивительного, что он потерял эти бумаги, он всегда был такой рассеянный.

Ex. 6. Insert articles where necessary.

1. ... supper will be served at nine. 2. Father usually reads his morning paper at... breakfast. 3. She had ... breakfast of toast with butter which she washed down with a cup of coffee. 4. He left the house soon after ... breakfast, and promised to be back some time before ... lunch. 5. We shall have ... light supper because we had ... good dinner. 6. Do we have time to watch the film on TV before ... supper? 7. She invited us to stay for ... dinner, and ... dinner, I must say, was very good. 8. There will be nobody to ... dinner except the family. 9. ... dinner she gave us was very good. 10. What ... good dinner! You are a fine cook.

Ex. 7. Insert articles where necessary before the nouns denoting geographic names.

A There are deserts in Africa, Asia, Australia, South America, and North America. In fact nearly a fifth of the Earth's land surface is a desert. Sahara is the world's hottest and largest desert. It stretches across North Africa, covering area almost as big as USA. Most of the centre of Australia is a desert, called 'the Outback.' There are many smaller world deserts. They include Gobi desert in Mongolia, Atakama desert in Chile, and Kalahari in South Africa. Arabia has the most difficult desert country in the world. The 'Empty Quater,' between Persian Gulf and Arabian Sea, is the most barren area of all, a sea of sand with huge dunes.

B Netherlands, also known unofficially as Holland, is a constitutional monarchy of northwestern Europe. It is bordered in the north and west by North Sea, on the east by Germany, and on the south by Belgium. With Belgium and Luxembourg, Netherlands forms the Low, or Benelux, Countries.

Ex. 8. Open the brackets and use the right form of the verb.

1. Have you ever (swum, swam) in the Atlantic ocean? 2. The Russian army (sprang, sprung) a trap on the enemy. 3. The school football team has never been (beaten, beat) in their home town. 4. Mary has (thrown, threw) away her last chance of getting married. 5. The lake has (froze, frozen). 6. Someone has (rang, rung) the front door bell. 7. The committee (cast, casted) votes to select the Chairman. 8. I have been to many countries but I have never (flew, flown) to North America. 9. I did not realize how late it was till the clock (struck, stroke) twelve. 10. The terrorist group (fled, fleed) to the unsettled mountain area. 11. The sun (set, sat) at six o'clock today. 12. The storage space in his small apartment was a problem and he (hung, hang) the bicycle on the wall in the hallway. 13. His out-of-place remarks (drove, driven) everybody mad. 14. The situation was so funny that all the students (burst, bursted) out laughing. 15. Jennet has (rode, ridden) in horse shows since she was ten.

Unit 25

The Use of Tenses

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences according to the model.

Model: Где ты порвала чулок?

Cue: The hole is just on the knee. *Key:* Where have you torn your stocking?

Cue: It was in the bus. *Key:* Where did you tear your stocking?

1. Как он покрасил стены? *Cue:* He used a landing. *Cue:* Very well.
2. Куда она ушла? *Cue:* I need her badly. *Cue:* I called her parents but she wasn't there.
3. Почему ты не поговорил с ним? *Cue:* He was out at the meeting. *Cue:* We don't know his opinion. 4. Что он сделал? *Cue:* He is in prison now. *Cue:* The papers made a point of it then. 5. Почему ты закрыл книгу? *Cue:* When I didn't ask you about it. *Cue:* Open it. We are going to do some exercises. 6. Как ты это сделал? *Cue:* I used my computer and the colour printer. *Cue:* I think

pretty well. The teacher was pleased. 7. Что ты ему сказал? *Cue:* I just told him to shut up. *Cue:* He looks so upset. 8. Зачем ты его предупредил? *Cue:* Nobody asked you to. *Cue:* He will take some steps now. 9. Зачем ты ответил на этот факс? *Cue:* We don't know all the facts yet. *Cue:* When you were asked not to do it.

Ex. 2. Practise the forms of the verbs.

1. The wind has (blow) hard all day. 2. Has everyone (choose) a partner? 3. We have (beat) this team three times. 4. Brian has (break) his arm. 5. Look! The boat has been (blow) out to sea. 6. You have (tear) the sleeve. 7. I have (wear) this coat for six years. 8. I am afraid we have (choose) the wrong man. 9. He has never (break) his promise. 10. I haven't (feel) well lately. 11. Look over there. I think it has (fall) behind the sofa. 12. The water pipe has (burst). 13. The river has (freeze). 14. She has (grow) too fast. 15. Somebody has (steal) my wallet! 16. He has just (run) his last race. 17. I am afraid that you have (tear) your ligament. 18. Have you ever (fly)? 19. I think I have (see) him before. 20. The clock has just (strike) midnight.

Ex. 3. Translate into English using the Simple Past or the Present Perfect Tense.

1. Ты выпил все молоко? 2. Вода еще не замерзла. 3. Мы долетели туда за два часа. 4. Он выпил больше, чем я. 5. — Где ты так поцарапался? — Я упал с дерева. 6. Он подарил мне то, что я хотел. 7. Ты когда-нибудь пил сок папайи? 8. Мы не можем открыть дверь. Замок сломан. 9. Кого ты выбрал себе в помощники? 10. Я проехал 600 км и очень устал. 11. Звонок только что прозвенел. 12. Ты когда-нибудь пела в хоре? 13. Я случайно встретила его в аптеке. 14. Кто разорвал этот учебник? 15. Дерево выросло на 10 см за этот год. 16. Все утро шарик качался на ветке за окном. 17. Кто брал мои каталоги, пока я была в магазине? 18. Внезапный порыв ветра выбросил его за борт. 19. Они плавали, пока не устали. 20. Он сломал несколько ребер.

Ex. 4. Respond to the following remarks. Begin with the words *What has happened to?* or *What happened to?*, then ask a question of your own to justify the use of the Present Perfect or the Simple Past Tense.

Models: They have spoiled my trousers at the dry cleaner's. — *What has happened to them? Have they faded badly?* I went out last night and got soaked. — *What happened? Were you caught in the rain?*

1. Mary wears glasses now. 2. Jim is looking for his book. 3. We were expecting a repair-man yesterday afternoon. He never came.

4. They have returned the letter I wrote to Mary. 5. My pen won't write. 6. He arrived home with no money left. 7. Bill is looking pale today. 8. Helen missed all her classes last week. 9. I did not see him at the conference. 10. It won't do. She won't accept this small print. 11. They did not fix the fax. 12. The children have eaten half of the cake. 13. I am very happy. My article is published in today's newspaper. 14. The room looks different. 15. He never said a word to us.

Ex. 5. Justify by the situation the use of the Simple Past or the Present Perfect Tense.

Models: I have lost the key. — *I have lost the key that's why I can't get into my room.*

I lost the key. — *I lost the key the other day so I had to change the lock.*

1. a) I have had a busy day today.
b) I had a busy day today.
2. a) I read David Copperfield.
b) I have read David Copperfield.
3. a) I have had a good rest.
b) I had a good rest.
4. a) He lived here for some time.
b) He has lived here for some time.
5. a) The leaves have turned yellow.
b) The leaves turned yellow.
6. a) The has spoken to me.
b) He spoke to me.
7. a) He has done a good job.
b) He did a good job.
8. a) I have been to her place.
b) I was at her place.
9. a) She has been married.
b) She was married,
10. a) The snow has melted.
b) The snow melted.
11. a) I have played this game.
b) I played this game.
12. a) I have been on a cruise.
b) I was on a cruise.
13. a) The milk has turned sour.
b) The milk turned sour.
14. a) I have burnt the pie.
b) I burnt the pie.

Ex. 6. Open the brackets, using the right tenses. Make dialogues out of the stories.

Lack of Hospitality

A man knocks at the door of his neighbours' house where he (be) a frequent but not welcome visitor. A servant girl (open) the door and (say) that her Master (go) out. The man (tell) her that it not (matter) because he can (speak) to her Mistress. The girl says that she (go) out too. The visitor (think) a bit and (ask) the girl (let) him (come) in as the day is rather cold and he (want) to sit by the fire for a while. But the servant-girl (answer) that it is out of the question because the fire (go) out too.

Charity Begins at Home

Mr. Brown and Mr. Smith (be) neighbours. They meet one Sunday evening and one of them (ask) the other what he (do) during the day. Mr. Brown (reply) that he (do) a piece of charity work. Mr. Smith (exclaim) that he always (think) Mr. Brown (be) a good neighbour. He also (want) to know what kind of work it (be). Mr. Brown (tell) him that he (buy) a sack of flour for a woman who is sick with the flu. Mr. Smith (enquire) which of their neighbours he (make) happy by this gift, and Mr. Brown (answer) that it is his own wife.

A Sure Sign

John and Billy meet not far from John's house. Billy (hurry) to John's sister and ask his friend if she (expect) him. John says that she (be), and when Billy asks him how he can (be) so sure he (say) that she just (go) out in a hurry and he (know) that it is a sure sign.

A Fine Compliment

The Bid wells are giving a party. Mrs. Bidwell (want) to introduce Mr. Beck, a young film producer, to her daughter, an exceptionally nice-looking girl. Introducing Mr. Beck, Mrs. Bidwell (tell) her daughter that he just (come) back from Vienna, where he (attend) a film festival. Maggy, the daughter, (is) sure that Mr. Beck (see) there the most beautiful women of the time. To that Mr. Beck replies with a smile that he (think) so the day before but now he (change) his mind.

A Kitten

A nephew (come) to visit his aunt and (ask) her about a kitten that he (see) in the house during his last visit. On hearing that he can't (see) the kitten, he (jump) at the conclusion that it (give) away. But his

Aunt (deny) it. Not letting the lady (finish) the explanation the boy (suggest) that the kitten must have been drowned or poisoned. The Aunt (get) angry and tells him that the kitten just (grow) into a cat.

Ex. 7. Choose the right word.

1. She just (sit, set) quietly and never says a word. 2. I am really tired. Can we do it later? I have just (lie, lay) down. 3. He (set, sit) many records that still stand. 4. On a table near the door a packed canvas bag (sit, set) next to a black box. 5. She fell in love with him the moment she had (lie, lay) eyes on him. 6. She finally (rise, raise) rose and went to the window to look out. 7. She (lie, lay) back against the seat cushions and took several deep breaths. 8. On the other photo, (sit, set) in the back row, the same girl, dressed in a dark blue business suit, leaned against a silver Jaguar. 9. He did not answer but (lie, lay) back against the seat. 10. Let's (sit, set) this bookcase here. 11. Every morning they (rise, raise) their shades to let the sunlight in. 12. Never (sit, set) in the front row when you watch the ballet. 13. The passing cars have (raise, rise) a lot of dust. 14. The students (rise, raise) from their seats to show respect for the teachers. 15. He has (rise, raise) to a powerful position in the new government.

Ex. 8. Insert the necessary article.

A There were six of us at ... dinner that night at Mike's house in London. Richard Pratt, the famous enjoyer of ... food and ... wine, was there too. He was president of ... small society known as the Epicures. Mike and his wife had cooked ... special meal for ... famous man. ... moment we entered ... dining room, I could see that... table was laid for ... wonderful meal. ... faint smell of ... roasting meat from ... kitchen made me particular hungry.

B ... children had ... refreshing wash, then sat down to ... well-spread table with ... hot tea, ... toast, ... brown bread and ... butter, ... honey and ... fresh fruit. Over ... tea they discussed ... latest news. While there were talking they heard ... footsteps on ... garden path outside ... window and then came ... tap at ... door. Jack and Molly gave ... start. With ... shake of her head Miss Marigold said: 'Don't worry, it's ... gatekeeper.'

Ex. 8. Make the sentence correct by putting the adjectives in brackets in the right order.

1. She was wearing a (evening long, red,) dress. 2. Have you see a (French, nice) car that Jerry bought? 3. In the corner of the room

there was a (square, large, old, wooden, table). 4. Rebecca bought (round, green, two, old) candles to decorate the table for Christmas dinner. 5. I have always liked (thick, leather-bound, old,) books. 6. My grandfather had an (English, old, round) clock that he used to keep on his bedside table. 7. Jane hated the (yellow, disgusting, plastic) ornament that her brother brought for her from his trip. 8. The (black, fashionable, slim,) skirt was very becoming on her. 9. Julia always wondered what her grandmother kept in that (square, wooden, old) box. 10. She bought a (woolen, new, multicolor, large) carpet for her room.

Unit 26

The Use of Tenses.

Articles with Nouns in Apposition

Ex. 1. Open the brackets, using the Present Perfect or the Simple Past Tense.


1. We (live) in this house since 1970 that's to say ever since my father (die). He (come) to this country twenty years ago. He (be) born in South America and (live) there until he (get) married. 2. Although we (live) in this village six years so far, we not (get) to know many people yet. But our next door neighbours (be) very helpful when we first (move) in. 3. I (receive) John's invitation yesterday and (accept) it at once. I (not see) him for several weeks. 4. That man (catch) any fish yet? I've been watching him for the last hour and he (not move) once. 5. Quick! There (be) an accident. Phone the hospital. The accident (happen) when that red car (shoot) out of the side street without warning. 6. — Why are the flags at half-mast? — General Hopkins (die). He never (recover) from that last operation. 7. My parents (come) to live here in 1965. Since then they (be) much better in health. 8. They (live) here since 1970. They (make) many new friends. 9. Robert (live) in Rome three years ago. Since then I (have) not a word from him. 10. George began listening to English recordings regularly last October. His pronunciation (improve) greatly since then.


Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Уже целый месяц не было ни одного дождливого дня. 2. Ты выключила свет, когда уходила? 3. Я потеряла зонт, думаю, что оставила его в институте. 4. Мы ждали его полчаса, а он так и не появился. 5. С тех пор как я его знаю, он никогда не опаз-

дывает. 6. Насколько я знаю, он всегда был добр к ней. 7. Я видела его на днях и разговаривала с ним. 8. Ты накрыла на стол? Обед готов. 9. Я зажег свет, так как уже темно. 10. — Почему в чашке нет молока? — Я его выпил. 11. — Куда ты поставила голубые чашки? — Я поставила их в сервант. Разве их там нет? 12. — Куда ты положила ножи, когда убирала со стола? — Я положила их в сервант. 13. Он в Лондоне уже месяц, и за это время мы не получили от него ни одного письма. 14. Этот фильм идет уже месяц, но я его еще не видела. 15. — Ты видел этот фильм? — Да, я видел его на прошлой неделе. 16. Извини, я потерял газету, которую ты мне вчера дал. 17. С тех пор как они получили новую квартиру, они счастливы. 18. — Он все еще в библиотеке? — Да. — Давно он там? — Он там с утра. 19. С тех пор как я закончил школу, я его не видел. 20. — Он все еще спит? — Нет, он уже проснулся, но еще не встал.

Ex. 3. Make up dialogues on suggested situations. Use the model below.

I (he, she) have (has) been out of practice  for the last...
 for a *long* time
 since...

I (he, she) haven't (hasn't) done anything  for years
 of the kind for months
 for weeks

1. Andrew would like Caroline to come to a dance with him and asks her if she would do him the favour. Caroline refuses saying she hasn't danced for months and is rather out of practice.
2. Mrs. Green would like her younger son, Steven, to read a French book to her. She has not heard him doing so for weeks. The boy seems rather unwilling to read anything, the more so, in French. He refuses.
3. Mrs. Jerram asks her niece who is visiting her to play the piano. The girl apologizes and refuses. She is out of practice. She hasn't played for years.
4. Mrs. Brown wishes her husband would do some gardening on Saturday afternoon and is telling him so. Mr. Brown doesn't seem to be very enthusiastic about it and is trying to refuse.
5. You ask John to tell you the news from home. He says there isn't any. He's had no news from home for the last few weeks.
6. Janice is going to have a birthday party. Her Aunt Maggie is visiting her this week. Janice remembers how good Aunt's cakes always tasted when she spent summers with her. She asks her Aunt to make a cake for her party. Maggie refuses because she is not sure

of her cooking abilities these days and does not want to disappoint her niece.

7. Bradley and Susan are spending holidays in the mountains. Brad loves hiking in the woods and invites Susan to climb one of the mountains. Susan refuses. She is not sure she is in good shape for the long hike.

8. Lorie is visiting her sister Barbara in Michigan. Barbara invites Lorie to a skating rink. Lorie, who lives in Florida, refuses. She hasn't even seen ice for the last five years.

9. Andrew and Brian are spending the weekend on the beach. Andrew challenges Brian to a swimming race. Brian refuses. He hasn't swum for quite a while.

Ex. 4. Speak about yourself. Use expressions of time: *for many years, all my life since 2001, since we moved here in 1998, since I left school, etc.*

1. Have you always lived in this town? How long have you lived here? 2. Do you enjoy living here in this huge city or do you prefer a smaller and quieter place? 3. Have you ever thought about moving to a different city? 4. Have you ever been out of the city? 5. What towns have you been to? When did you go there and how long did you stay? 6. How long have you been a student? 7. Have you ever been out of the country? 8. Have you ever been to England or America? 9. How long have you been in love with this girl? 10. Has your life been happy so far? 11. Have you ever felt lonely? 12. Have you ever had trouble making friends? 13. Have you had a major interest all your life? 14. Do you think you have changed? 15. What events have made you change? 16. What events have made you more understanding? 17. Have your attitudes towards friends, money, love, death, education changed during your life?

Ex. 5. Use the notional verb in the following sentences in the Present Perfect Tense. Make the new statements more extensive.

Model: They are going to prepare all the things for the experiment. — *They have already prepared all the things for the experiment and can start performing it without any further delay.*

1. The weather is going to change for the worse. 2. They are going to finish their work. 3. They are going to talk these things over. 4. We are going to have a lot of trouble with this second-hand car. 5. She is going to see it with her own eyes. 6. She is going to see the place in the moonlight. 7. He is going to tell us all about the work he is doing now. 8. I am going to speak about this urgent matter more than once. 9. The delegation is not going to leave yet. 10. We are going to write

to him and ask him to share in the work we are doing. 11. I am going to send the message by airmail. 12. He is going to show you some pretty post-cards of the places you are going to visit. 13. It's a pity he is not going to spend the day with them. 14. They are going to install a new computer in their office. 15. He is going to collect new data on this phenomenon.

Ex. 6. Insert articles where necessary.

1. Dylan Thomas, ... well-known English poet, was born in 1914 and died in 1953. 2. Horatio Nelson, ... British naval commander, defeated Napoleon in ... battle of Trafalgar. 3. Harlem, ... former village on ... Manhattan Island, now is ... negro quarter of New York city. 4. Mr. Hammon, editor-in-chief of *Tablets* was ... man of athletic type. 5. I'm sure you know Alfred Hard, ... professor at ... London University. 6. W. Johnson, ... Superintendent of the School, received me in his office. 7. Hart, ... uneasy nervous man, made a few sarcastic remarks. 8. Then I was introduced to Charles March, ... nephew of our host. 9. Erich Maria Remarque, ... Germanborn anti-war writer is very popular in our country. 10. Ann, ... daughter of the landlady, cooked ... breakfast for the boarders. 11. Sir Christopher Wren, ... great English architect, is the creator of St. Paul's athedral. 12. William Caxton, ... father of English printing, died in 1491. 13. Brians was ... midshipman, junior officer in training. 14. An inquiry was held at Plymouth, ... port where the ship docked. 15. The court room, ... eighteen century building, was crowded with excited people. 16. Captain McKay was on the quarter-deck, ... part of the deck which is reserved for officers.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Если я еще здесь посижу, то точно опоздаю. 2. За этим поворотом дорога резко поднимается в гору. 3. Она забыла, куда она положила свои перчатки. 4. Наша кошка любит лежать на телевизоре. 5. Посмотри на собаку, которая сидит на крыльце. 6. Ты завел часы? 7. Никто не думал, что прилив (tide) поднимется так высоко. 8. Мы увидели клубы дыма, поднимающиеся из-за горы. 9. Стоимость электричества постоянно увеличивается. 10. Этот факс лежит в ящике. 11. Дума опять увеличила налоги. 12. Поднялся сильный ветер, и они вынуждены были войти в дом. 13. Кошка сидела и ждала, пока я поставлю перед ней ее миску. 14. Поставь коробку на стол. 15. Несколько студентов одновременно подняли руки.

Unit 27

The Past and the Future Progressive Tenses. The Simple Past and the Past Progressive Tenses. Degrees of Comparison

Ex. 1. Answer the questions using the Past Progressive and the Future Progressive Tenses.

1. Were you doing your home work at six o'clock yesterday?
2. What were you doing then?
3. What will you be doing at 3 o'clock tomorrow?
4. Will you be hurrying home after classes?
5. What was your mother doing when you got home yesterday?
6. Do you know when you will be taking your English exam this year?
7. Where will you be going for your holidays this year?
8. What will you be doing this weekend?
9. Were you having a party when I called you yesterday? I heard people talking and laughing?
10. Were you talking to the Dean when I passed by the hall the other day?
11. Will you be doing a report tomorrow?
12. Will you be studying if I come at 6 p.m.?

Ex. 2. Answer the following questions using the Progressive tense forms (Present, Past, Future).

1. What is the weather like? (rain a little)
2. Why didn't you go to the country yesterday? (rain)
3. What will the weather be like tomorrow? (the radio, give the weather forecast in a few minutes)
4. Why did the militia-man stop him? (walk across the street in the wrong place)
5. Why don't you want to go to the cinema tonight? (finish the book I must give back tomorrow)
6. Where is Mother? (work in the garden)
7. Why didn't he hear the bell? (play football)
8. Why can't we speak to him now? (write business letter)
9. What is the noise about? (watch a football match)
10. Why do you think you won't get much sleep tonight? (travel all night)
11. Will you come to the party? (no, move to a new flat)
12. Why don't you answer the phone? (write my course paper)
13. I called you several times yesterday and the phone was constantly busy. Is it out of order? (work on the Internet)
14. Why didn't you join us for a ride yesterday? (cook for tonight's party)
15. Why don't you want to confront him now? (see him in the office tomorrow)

Ex. 3. Contrast the Simple Past with the Past Progressive Tenses.

1. We (do) a lot of oral work during the first term.
2. She (live) with her parents when the war broke out.
3. Our school football team

(win) the championship last year. 4. The night watchman (sleep) when I called at your house. 5. As we (climb) the mountain our guide (slip) and (fall). 6. We (play) cards in the living-room when thieves (take) some things from the bedroom. 7. The little girl (be afraid) it (get dark). 8. When I (learn) French I often (confuse) the tenses. 9. While he (dig) in the garden, he (find) an old coin. 10. We (drive) to the station as soon as we learned that his father (come) by the afternoon train. 11. This shampoo (last) for a long time. 12. While I (talk) on the phone the soup (boil) over the top of the pan. 13. When we (fish) he (catch) a huge pike. 14. I (cool off) by swimming in the river when I (hear) a shout from the bank. 15. As I (ride) my bike yesterday I (see) an accident on the road.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Я вас ждал в 10 часов вчера. Почему вы не пришли? 2. Мой брат готовил уроки, когда пришел его друг. 3. Что вы делали, когда я вошел? 4. Они не будут играть в шахматы в 12 часов в воскресенье. Они будут гулять в парке. 5. Он будет сдавать экзамен на будущей неделе! 6. Когда вы придете домой сегодня? 7. Студент читал что-то, в то время как преподаватель объяснял задание. 8. Если вы вернетесь в одиннадцать, я все еще буду работать. 9. Мне жаль, что я не смог прийти. Вы меня ждали? 10. На будущей неделе мы будем готовиться к экзаменам. 11. Вы ведь путешествовали в это время в прошлом году, не правда ли? 12. Кто из вас будет встречать делегацию завтра? 13. — Где вы были в двенадцать часов? Я вам звонил, но вас не было. — Я катался на лыжах. 14. Он читал газету, когда я его увидел. 15. Сто лет назад правила королева Виктория. 16. Моя сестра готовила для гостей все утро. 17. Он много читал, когда был студентом. 18. Всю прошлую неделю он красил дом. 19. Когда митинг закончился и мы пошли домой, шел сильный дождь. 20. Я вчера целый час готовился к докладу.

Ex. 5. Complete the following sentences using the Future Progressive Tense according to the model.

Model: Don't leave (we to have supper, in about 10 minutes). — Don't leave, we'll be having supper in about ten minutes.

1. Is there anything you'd like to tell her? (I, see her, at the party today) 2. Don't wait for me (I catch up with you, in a minute) 3. We must leave immediately (they expect us, out there before noon) 4. Don't worry (I write shortly) 5. We needn't trouble to send him the book (he, come, to see us, soon) 6. I can buy the medicine for you (I pass,

by the chemist's) 7. I don't think it's wise to wait for him (he, get home late, this evening) 8. Why worry so much? I am sure (you, hear from him, soon) 9. Hurry up, or the shop (close soon) 10. I do hope we (meet) now regularly. 11. Helen knows that if she doesn't come by ten o'clock her mother (worry) about her. 12. Just wait and see! In a moment she (tell) you all her problems over and over again.

Ex. 6. Insert the right articles.

Bath Festival

Located about **100** miles west of London, ... city of Bath provides one of ... finest examples of 18th century architecture in all of Europe. ... residents of ... Royal Crescent, ... semicircular street in ... heart of Bath lined with Georgian-style houses, light candles in their windows on ... opening night of ... 17-day music festival that has been held there since 1958. While musical events dominate ... festival — there are usually two operas and ... wide variety of ... concerts and ... recitals— in recent years children's events, theatre, film, jazz, dance, art exhibitions, and lectures have been added. Violinist Yehudi Menuhin's 10 years as artistic director of ... festival established it as one of ... most important musical events in Britain. Menuhin also helped train the Bath Festival Orchestra, now recognized as one of ... best small orchestras in ... world.

Bath is known for its mineral hot springs, which were discovered by... Romans when they invaded Britain **2,000** years ago. During ... 18th century it became ... fashionable resort and cultural centre, and ... festival events take place in many of its well-preserved buildings. ... festival ball is held each year in one of ... city's historic homes.

Ex. 7. Open the brackets and use the right degree of comparison.

1. Penicillin proved to be (одним из самых эффективных) drugs. The sun, which is (во много миллионов раз больше, чем) the earth, is nevertheless, only a star of an average size. 3. I chose this story because it was (самый короткий из) of the three. 4. I think that the train is (самый безопасный) means of travel. 5. I have never had (более счастливого) day in my life. 6. It is the (самая зеленая) grass I have ever seen. 7. India is (более солнечная страна) than Norway. 8. Chuck is (умнее) than Ray. 9. My sister has earned (меньше денег) this year than I. 10. Every year people in (все меньше стран) suffer from hunger. 11. Today in Russia families have (меньше детей) than a couple of decades ago. 12. Looks like this term I have (меньше времени) for anything but work. 13. I have got (меньше информации) than I expected. 14. You have brought (гораздо больше)

еды) than I asked you to. 15. The village happened to be (гораздо дальше) than we expected.

Ex. 8. Make the sentence correct by putting the adjectives in brackets in the right order.

1. She was wearing a (evening long, red,) dress. 2. Have you see a (French, nice) car that Jerry bought? 3. In the corner of the room there was a (square, large, old, wooden, table). 4. Rebecca bought (round, green, two, old) candles to decorate the table for Christmas dinner. 5. I have always liked (thick, leather-bound, old,) books. 6. My grandfather had an (English, old, round) clock that he used to keep on his bedside table. 7. Jane hated the (yellow, disgusting, plastic) ornament that her brother brought for her from his trip. 8. The (black, fashionable, slim,) skirt was very becoming on her. 9. Julia always wondered what her grandmother kept in that (square, wooden, old) box. 10. She bought a (woolen, new, multicolor, large) carpet for her room.

Unit 28

Progressive Tenses. The Future Progressive Tense Expressing a *Matter-of-Course Action*. Articles in *with-*, *like-*, *in-*phrases

Ex. 1. Use the Simple Future or Future Progressive Tenses.

1. In a couple of hours the first guests (arrive). 2. You (visit) them this summer? 3. Well, I (see) you later. 4. That's all right, child. He (come) soon now. 5. You (go) home one of these days. 6. I hope she (be) pretty like her mother. 7. Of course, I (do) it if you say so. 8. They (go) back to town in a few days. 9. That (be) a clever move. 10. You (give) any more parties this season? 11. You (be) too tired to go out tonight. 12. If she (ask) I (mention) it. 13. You (take) any more exams this term? 14. You (make a presentation) at tomorrow's meeting?

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Через десять минут мы будем ужинать, поэтому не уходи. 2. Я завтра утром поеду в город и смогу подвезти вас. 3. Я увижусь с Леной на днях и расскажу ей о твоём деле. 4. Он приедет скоро, так что мы вернём ему книгу. 5. Я ему завтра буду писать и скажу о твоей просьбе. 6. Она скоро придёт. 7. Он будет сдавать экза-

мен на будущей неделе. 8. Я повидаю их, если у меня будет время. 9. До свидания, увидимся завтра. 10. Кто из вас будет встречать делегацию? 11. Мэри придет на будущей неделе. 12. Мэри приезжает на будущей неделе. 13. Он будет там сегодня вечером. 14. Мой брат остановится у меня на несколько дней. 15. Завтра в это время мы будем подъезжать к Москве. 16. Когда у тебя следующий урок? 17. Он читает лекцию о Байроне завтра. 18. Он уезжает через несколько дней. 19. Вы все еще будете работать, если я приду в 9? 20. Я расскажу ему об этом, если увижу.

Ex. 3. Make up dialogues using these sentences.

1. I'll be seeing him next week, so I'll mention it to him. 2. You'll disappoint her if you don't come. Now that you have promised, she'll be expecting you. 3. — Do you think they will be still waiting for us, when we come? — Oh, yes, they won't go until we arrive. 4. — Will you be seeing him tomorrow? — Yes. I hope so. — Well, in that case, will you tell him I got the letter. 5. When you arrive at the airport my cousin will be waiting for you. You'll recognise him easily. He'll be wearing a dark green suit and a yellow tie.

Ex. 4. Insert articles where necessary.

Dr. Carr, ... father of ... family, was ... dear, kind, busy man, who was away from home all day, and sometimes all night, too, taking care of... sick people. ... children had not any Mamma. She had died when Phil was ... baby. Katy could remember her pretty well, to ... rest she was ... sad, sweet name, spoken at prayer-times. In place of this Mamma there was Aunt Lizzie, Papa's sister. She was ... small woman, rather old-looking, and very neat and particular about everything. She was kind to ... children, but they puzzled her much, because they were not a bit like herself when she was ... child. Aunt Lizzy had been ... gentle, tidy little thing, who loved to be told that she was ... good girl. But Dr. Carr wished to have ... children hardy and bold, and encouraged ... rough plays and climbing, in spite of bumps and ragged clothes which resulted. But from ... moment she arrived, Aunt Lizzie had made ... law that they were all to sit on their little chairs and learn ... Bible ... hour ... day. But ... moment ... bell rang, her comfort was over.

Ex. 5. Complete the following phrases.

1. She always speaks in ... 2. It was as simple as ... 3. The child was as happy as ... 4. The guy is sleeping like ... 5. She is always as busy as ... 6. He swims like ... 7. Don't answer me in ... 8. It's as safe

as ... 9. The man is as brave as ... 10. The girl sings like... 11. It's as old as ... 12. He is as poor as ... 18. It's as safe as ... 14. Angela behaves like ... 15. It was as black as ... 16. He was as drunk as ...

Ex. 6. Choose the right modal verb.

1. It is difficult to work with her. Sometimes she ... be very hard to deal with.
a) can b) must c) have to
2. Jack ... look for another job in a month. His position was cut back (сокращена).
a) can b) have to c) must
3. ... I park my car here? — No, you (...). It is a no parking zone.
a) can b) may c) shall
4. Simon borrowed 2,000 for a year; the year is almost over and he ... pay it back.
a) have to b) can c) may
5. I hate to say that but I ... cancel the meeting. The proposals are not ready yet.
a) have to b) must c) need
6. She ... pass her exams otherwise she will be expelled from the University.
a) is able to b) must c) may
7. You ... help me if you don't have time. I can do the job myself.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) can't
8. You ... go into that room. It's forbidden!
a) don't have to b) might c) may not
9. I ... take the bus yesterday because the subway was closed.
a) had to b) must c) could
10. If you want to be in her class you ... sign up for it by Friday.
a) must b) can c) may
11. If you explain to me how to get there I ... go by myself.
a) may b) can c) must
12. If she really tries she ... pass the exam.
a) may b) can c) must

Ex. 7. Make the right choice.

1. The news (is, are) on at 9.00 p.m.
2. The basis for her statement (was, were) unsound.
3. Athletics (is, are) good for young people.
4. Linguistics (is, are) the study of language.
5. The criteria for selecting the candidates (is, are) explained in the brochure.
6. Darts (is, are) a popular game in England.
7. The recent crisis in the Cabinet (has, have) received special attention from the press.
8. Billiards

(is, are) played all over the world. 9. Parentheses (is, are) used to enclose references and explanations. 10. The faculty (was, were) assigned to (its, their) new offices in the new building. 11. The jury (has, have) reached a decision. 12. (Does, do) the analyses of the past enrollments show any interesting trends? 13. The memoranda, which (is, are) on your desk((explains, explain) the new procedures. 14. The change of the school science curriculum (has, have) been a long process. 15. The hypotheses (is, are) carefully explained in the introduction to the article.

Ex. 8. Insert the right article.

1. Donald married Angelica, ... classmate of his. 2. There was once ... king, ... cruel and greedy man. 3. ... Prince Edward was a pilot in the British Army. 4. Rebecca, ... art observer, wrote satirical stories. 5. Chuk, ... naughty boy, drives his parents to despair. 6. Marina, ... headstudent of the group, keeps the register. 7. The next morning, ... Monday, I was up early. 8. ... painter Constable was a master of landscape. 9. ... director and ... manager are out at the moment. 10. The film about ... Admiral Nelson and ... Lady Hamilton is my favourite one. 11. We bought some sweets for the party, ... box of Anthon Berg. 12. Mr. Brown was elected ... president of the firm. 13. ... president Clinton will appear on television tonight. 14. Will ... Prime Minister discuss the problem with ... Queen? 15. My cousin, ... talented musician, participated in the Chaikovski Contest.

Unit 29

Ways of Expressing Futurity. Articles with Nouns Denoting Parts of the Day and Names of Seasons

Ex. 1. Translate into English.

1. Он станет хорошим преподавателем. 2, Если ты будешь читать целый вечер, я пойду в кино. 3. Через неделю они уезжают из Москвы. 4. Я буду дома в семь. 5. Мама возвращается завтра. 6. Это сделать в классе или дома? 7. Вы будете там вечером? 8. Я скоро вернусь. 9. Моя сестра переезжает на новую квартиру на днях. 10. Я буду рад увидеть вас в Москве. 11. Вы не забыли, что завтра делаете доклад? 13. Вы идете сегодня в театр? 13. Когда она закончит университет, она будет работать в школе. 14. Я надеюсь, что мы будем наслаждаться хорошей погодой в выходные.

Ex. 2. Open the brackets. Choose the most suitable of all the Progressive Tenses. Give reasons for your choice.

1. What you (do) here so late? You always (do) your lessons in the reading room? 2. You didn't see me, I (sit) in the back row. 3. I can give her your message, I (see) her at the lecture. 4. Why you always (change) your mind? 5. He asks me who else (come) to the party. 6. It (rain) when I first came to St. Petersburg. 7. We (play) chess for an hour and went for a walk. 8. We (play) chess when you like. 9. I (read) for my examination. 10. Well, so long then, I'll phone you one of these days. 11. We'll come at 12 a.m. 12. They (rehearse) the second act. 13. He (lose) constantly things! 14. Sorry, I really have to go. They (wait) for me. 15. What you (do) after dinner?

Ex. 3. Translate into English, using the most suitable tenses.

1. Вы всегда обедаете в это время, не так ли? 2. Почему ты еще читаешь? Уже поздно. Иди спать. 3. Кто может сказать мне, когда закончится урок? 4. Спроси старосту, будет ли у нас завтра собрание. 5. Можно задать вам вопрос? — Да, пожалуйста. 6. Давайте пойдем в воскресенье в парк, если не будет дождя. 7. В лесу много снега зимой, не так ли? 8. Мы должны прочитать весь текст? — Нет, не нужно. Прочитайте только первую часть. 9. Мы будем здесь, пока он не придет. 10. Я тебя не слышу, потому что радио говорит слишком громко. 11. Я не знаю, сколько времени я здесь пробуду. 12. Если он не позвонит в 10 часов, я позвоню ему сама. 13. Вы никогда ничего не забываете, правда? 14. Здесь нет денег, где они? — Они на полке. 15. На улицах много народа. Куда они спешат?

Ex. 4. Make up short dialogues as shown in the model.

Model: Teacher: Ask student B. what she was doing at 4 o'clock yesterday.

Student A: What were you doing at 4 o'clock yesterday?

Student B: I was learning by heart an extract for our class in phonetics.

Teacher: Ask student B:

what she was doing at this time yesterday,

what she was doing while her mother was cooking supper,

where he was hurrying to when you saw him,

what she was doing at this time on Monday,

what she was doing when you rang her up,

what she was reading when you came,

why she was running when we saw her,

what she was discussing when we came in,

what she was doing when the teacher entered the classroom,
how she will be receiving guests when they arrive,
in what way she will be entertaining her guests,
what she will be wearing at the party, —
how she will be redecorating her kitchen,
what everybody will be doing on New Year's Eve,
what texts she will be answering at the exam in Old English,
what Mary will be doing at exactly this time tomorrow.

Ex. 5. Insert the correct article in the blank spaces.

1. ... morning was bright and sunny. 2. It all happened on ... bright sunny morning. 3. When ... morning came we were already out in the sea. 4. It was ... early morning, the sun had just risen. 5. It was early in ... morning that a loud knock took me out of bed. 6. ... day broke, cold and windy. 7. We returned late in ... afternoon. 8. It was ... late afternoon when we returned. 9. ... evening fell, lights began to appear in the windows. 10. It is nice to go for a walk on such ... evening. 11. We are expecting them towards ... evening. 12. He spent ... restless night. 13. In winter they used to plan what they would do on ... warm day in ... summer. 14. Have you got enough wood for ... winter? 15. It was ... cold snowy winter.

Ex. 6. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. He blew up the balloon so big that it (burst). 2. They have (drink) our complete reserve of water. 3. The stock market has (fall) again. 4. I am glad that the day is past when human beings were (hang) for the crime they had performed. 5. The entire house was (blow) away by the tornado. 6. We enjoyed the movie very much. It was an adventure of the kids who were accidentally (shrink) to a tiny size by their father's experiment. 7. I am sorry to hear that. You have (throw) away a great opportunity. 8. That autumn the well (run) dry very soon. 9. Look, our juice has (freeze) solid. 10. When we arrived the car had already (strike) the wall. 11. Be sure that the headlights are not (break). 12. It (cost) us a lot to repair the damage. 13. You've (tear) your sleeve somehow. 14. I haven't (wear) this jacket for a year. 15. I don't like the place where you (hang) this picture. 16. He's exhausted. He has (ride) his bike for 3 hours. 17. Everybody was really (shake) by the news. 18. The boy was (bite) by a dog.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Школа, четырехэтажное серое здание, была построена еще до войны. 2. Максим, один из моих друзей, пригласил меня на

свой день рождения. 3. Познакомься с моими друзьями, музыкантами. 4. Лермонтов, великий русский поэт, погиб очень молодым. 5. Академик Сахаров был известным физиком. 6. Жизнь императора Наполеона была полна взлетов и падений. 7. Елена и Наташа, второкурсницы, будут работать летом с английской делегацией. 8. Он продемонстрировал нам свою машину, шикарный серебристый линкольн. 9. Максимов, лидер фракции демократов, экономист. 10. Кто президент в этой маленькой стране? — Ею управляет королева и глава правительства — премьер-министр. 11. Премьер-министр Великобритании Маргарет Тэтчер была незаурядной личностью. 12. Белая Звезда, грациозная лошадь, выиграла на скачках. 13. Наш комод, антикварный предмет мебели XVIII века — моя гордость. 14. Его избрали шерифом округа. 15. Молодые люди с нетерпением ждали сентября, месяца своей свадьбы.

Unit 30

The Use of Tenses and Articles

Ex. 1. Translate into English paying attention to the ways of expressing future actions.

1. Через неделю в это время мы будем гулять по Лондону. 2. Не волнуйтесь. Когда вы подойдете к музею, вас там уже будет ждать экскурсовод. 3. Вот увидите, через несколько минут после начала разговора он будет рассказывать вам о концерте группы «Роллинг Стоунз» в Москве. 4. Не торопись, а то, когда мы приедем к ней, она все еще будет заниматься, и нам придется ждать. 5. Шесть часов — неподходящее время. Они как раз будут уходить домой. 6. Мы посидим в фойе, пока актеры будут репетировать последнюю сцену. 7. Теперь я буду заходить к вам почаще. 8. Спускайтесь, я вас сейчас догоню. 9. Не звони мне от трех до пяти. Я буду работать в Интернете, и телефон будет занят. 10. Он скоро приедет сюда, так что вам нечего беспокоиться и посылать ему книги по почте. 11. Я тебе вскоре напишу. Обещаю, что как только устроюсь, сразу дам тебе знать. 12. Он будет уезжать на днях и увезет твои вещи в своей машине. 13. Я не встречу его в этот приезд, я скоро уезжаю на Север. 14. Они уедут на следующей неделе, у них будет достаточно времени, чтобы осмотреть город. 15. Некоторое время она молча смотрела на него. «Я буду ждать», — услышал он ее тихий голос. — «Возвращайся поскорее». 16. Я буду

очень занят в ближайшие дни. Я заканчиваю перевод, который я должен сдать к концу недели. 17. Поторапливайся! Он будет удивляться тому, что нас так долго нет. 18. Я останусь здесь, если ты будешь работать. 19. Этим летом мы останемся в городе и будем ремонтировать квартиру. 20. Пока, Джейн. Увидимся в университете.

Ex. 2. Make sentences out of the following, using either the Simple Past Tense or the Past Progressive Tense.

1. When we got off the train it (rain) heavily. 2. The summer of that year was cold. It often (rain). 3. The weather was foggy. Cars and buses (move) slowly. 4. While I (pack) my things, he (ring) up for a taxi to take me to the station. 5. The house was quiet. The boys (play) chess and Mary (read) a book. 6. When you (see) him last? 7. I (buy) this guide book in London. 8. In 1990 he (be) in Siberia with a group of volunteers. They (make trails) in one of the national parks there. 9. Who (speak) over the phone at five o'clock yesterday. I couldn't get through for an hour. 10. The whole family (watch) a detective film on TV when I (come) home. 11. I (look) into the window and (see) an old woman (sit) by it. The picture (take) me back to my childhood. 12. Ships (travel) from Southampton to New York in four or five days in those times. 13. I (call) the dog but it would not come. It (dig) something at the far end of the garden. 14. It was hot and stuffy. I (drive) to my parents' house. I (turn) on air-conditioning but it not (work). 15. When I (go) down the library steps I (see) that my friends wait for me across the street.

Ex. 3. Complete the following descriptions stating what was happening at some moment in the past.

1. It was a fine day, early in June. The air was bright. I went out ... 2. It was night outside. The wind was blowing up the lake and the waves were rather high. We sat waiting ... 3. Night closed in, very quiet and still. The moon was setting. He was still walking up and down the room ... 4. It was lunch-time and I was beginning to feel hungry. I went to a nearby cafe. A queue of about 10 people was waiting ... 5. It was a very important day for me. The last test. I sat in the room waiting for the examiners to pass over the test. I looked around ... 6. It was a hectic day for me. I wanted to get out of the office and have some fresh air. As soon as the clock struck 6.00 p.m. I left my desk and went to the park. I like to watch people in the park ... 7. I used to hate going to the dentist. I changed my attitude recently after I had, a couple of teeth done in one of the new-type

dental offices full of modern dental technology and pain-killing medicine. I was sitting now in my dentist's office waiting for my turn and watching the people around me ...

Ex. 4. Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of the Progressive Tenses.

1. Когда мы пришли, они уже заканчивали ужин. 2. В чем дело? Почему ребенок плачет? 3. — Что вы ищете? — Я ищу кошелек. Я его вчера оставила на столе и не могу найти теперь. 4. Вчера я случайно встретился с Джеком. Мы ехали вместе в метро. 5. Генри редко пишет родителям, но часто звонит. 6. — Где профессор Пайк? — Он у себя в кабинете. 7. Пока дети спали, она готовила обед. 8. С кем разговаривает ваш брат? 9. В этом году я редко хожу в театр. У меня очень много работы. 10. Как вы обычно проводите выходной? 11. Мы всегда делаем много устных упражнений на уроке. 12. Кэти гуляет сейчас. Она любит гулять в дождливую погоду. 13. Я встретила Анну на прошлой неделе, но мы не разговаривали. Она спешила в кино. 14. Когда я заглянула в аудиторию, студенты второго курса писали контрольную. 15. У него сейчас отпуск. 16. Когда мы жили в Петербурге, я часто ходила в Эрмитаж. 17. Вчера в это время я смотрела телевизор. 18. — Когда вы уезжаете? — Я уезжаю завтра, а Нора — в понедельник. 19. — Вы кого-нибудь здесь ждете? — Нет, я просто отдыхаю после работы. 20. С четырех до шести мы играли в теннис.

Ex. 5. Fill in the blanks with articles where necessary.

1. Autumn has come and early in ... morning sheets of ... ice cover the puddles on the road. 2. ... rain never stopped in ... night, and ... morning started with full rain typical of ... late morning. 3. We had ... cold winter last year with lots of ... snow. 4. The champion said that he would always remember ... winter of 1990 when he went mountain-skiing for the first time. 5. All through ... winter the old hunter is alone in the taiga, the first tourists come only in ... summer. 6. You can get to Yakutsk by plane but in bad weather there may be no flights and the passengers have to wait in the airport all through ... night hoping that ... weather may change for the better in ... morning. 7. It was ... late afternoon on ... foggy September day when we left the town in our car. 8. We are expecting them in ... evening, some time after seven. 9. ... summer is ... warmest season, but ... summer of 1998 was unusually hot in many places over the globe. 10. I met him on ... morning of the exam; in ... autumn of 1997. 11. Foul morning may turn into ... fair day. 12. ... hour in ... morning is worth two in ... evening. 13. ... night before Christmas is

... most wonderful time of ... year! 14. ... spring of **1998** came to an end, summer started to evolve. 15. Look at ... sunset! What will ... weather be like in ... morning?

Ex. 6. Practise the use of the pronouns. Revise each incorrect sentence.

1. There are fewer students in the third period class. 2. She speaks a little English. 3. We have got less replies to our ads this year. 4. I have the fewest letters to answer. 5. He has much knowledge about computers. 6. We had few money left. 7. Will you give me little jam, please. 8. There is so much industry in this city. 9. There is less fruit in this basket. 10. There is too much violence on TV these days. 11. I have less friends than she. 12. As you grow older, you find less opportunities to change jobs. 13. I've got few jewelry. 14. This situation can create many problems for us. 15. I am sorry but I know a little about Internet. 16. Few of the students knew the answers.

Ex. 7. insert the right article.

Traditions of Christmas

There are many different ways to celebrate Christmas around ... world. In ... Netherlands the children leave their shoes to be filled with ... presents from ... Father Christmas. In ... France ... gifts of ... fruit, such as ... oranges, are highly prized. The decorating of the trees for Christmas and the kissing under ... mistletoe is believed to have come from the Germanic countries. Bells on ... trees are said to be good luck and when they ring ... angel gets her wings. ... star on top of ... trees was started as ... remembrance of ... star the three wise men followed to the Christ child. One of ... other three top traditions, the angel, is traced back to ... Christmas eve at ... North Pole many, many, many Christmases ago. As ... story goes, Santa was getting ... bad night getting ready for his annual trip. His jacket tore as he was putting it on and Mrs. Clause was sewing it up. He was not able to find his favorite whip to spur on his reindeer. As he was walking out to ... sleigh he slipped on ... ice and fell twisting his knee. Then he threw his sack of toys on ... sleigh and ... sack ripped spilling ... toys and presents all over ... ground. Santa was very upset and running ... hour behind ... schedule. He was just about to mount up and take off for his night's work when ... small angel came running out with ... tree from ... toy store. As ... angel was running with ... tree she was shouting, 'Santa, Santa, what should I do with... tree?' And that is how ... tradition of the angel on top of ... Christmas tree was started.

Unit 31

The Use of Tenses. Reported Speech

Ex. 1. Use the following sentences in short dialogues.

Model: She has fallen ill.

— Hello, Ann! Give Helen a call. She has fallen ill and is in bed.

— What a pity! What is wrong with her?

— The doctor says she has got the flu.

1. He is taking his exam in English. 2. He has missed several classes since then. 3. Have you seen him since? 4. You are always forgetting things. 5. He is wearing glasses now. 6. I am worried about you. 7. What is going on? 8. It's been a long time since I first saw this kind of money. 9. I've never tasted anything like this. 10. Where did you see him?

Ex. 2. Replace the infinitives in brackets with the most suitable tenses.

1. What you (come) here to ask for? 2. She (write) a lot of letters to us when she was in London. 3. Thank you, Dad! You've helped me to make up my mind. I am going to Capri with Stephen next week. I (refuse) up to now. 4. I am pretty sure about you and Chris. I (watch) you. 5. Don't worry! It not (come) to that yet. 6. You (see) him in London? 7. He not (listen) but still heard what they (speak) about. 8. He (breath) hard and (stop) every few minutes. 9. While they (talk), the boy (wait) outside. 10. Then I understood that they not, (return) that year. 11. He did not answer. His lips (tremble). 12. 'And Sondra says that Stuart hoped that you would come up there and spend a lot of time this summer.' 'Oh, did he?' replied Gilbert. 'I (work) this summer.' 13. That (happen) every day. 14. 'I am worried about him,' said Elinor. Philip nodded. 'Being seventy is no joke. He (begin) to look his age.' 15. Don't think any more about me or anything I (say). 16. — I'm going away for some days. — I am sorry. I (miss) you. 17. She (take) off her hat and (hold) it on her knee. 18. Here you are, sir. I believe, I (find) the material you asked for. 19. — I don't think that Mr. DuPont is here to listen to your complaints, dear. — I (not complain) I just (tell) the truth. 20. I think you should thank me. I (bring) you what you wanted.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Если вы еще не догадались, что значит это слово, то я могу вам подсказать. 2. Я не верю ни одному слову, которое вы тут

сказали. 3. Этот дом пустует уже два года. 4. Какой рассказ вы приготовили на сегодня? 5. Я часто встречаю этого человека по дороге в университет. 6. Как ты провел воскресенье? 7. О чем вы там так долго разговаривали? 8. Давно вы там не были? 9. Ты разговаривал с ней? Она сказала тебе о нашей беседе? 10. Нам не пришлось заходить к Джеку еще раз. Он позвонил нам, как только приехал. 11. Я не понимаю, о чем ты говоришь. Мы ведь договорились поехать туда в субботу. 12. Я слышал, что вы уезжаете на Кавказ. Мне сказали, что ваша дочь едет с вами. 13. — Сколько времени ты знаешь его? — Мы познакомились давно. Да... я знаю его очень давно. 14. — Ты слышишь меня? — Извини, я не слышал, что ты сказал. — Я говорю, что давно не получаю от него известий. 15. Сколько текстов вы выучили на сегодняшний день? 16. — А что ты думаешь, Кейт? — Я всегда возражала против его участия в этом проекте. 17. — Вы такая бледная. Что-нибудь случилось? — Ничего особенного, я здорова. Я просто устала после такого тяжелого дня. 18. Целый час я ждал и наблюдал за тем, что происходит вокруг. Вдруг я увидел Мэри. Она воскликнула: «Как я рада тебя видеть!» 19. Почему ты не поговорил с ним об этом на работе? 20. Должна признаться, что никогда об этом не думала.

Ex. 4. Speak on the suggested situations, using the given hints.

- A** You went to the theatre last week to see a first night performance of a ballet. You arrived rather late. Say what was going on in the hall as you entered. (The late-comers, to hurry, to their seats. The lights, to go out. The curtains, to go up. The orchestra, to tune up. The public, to look at the stage waiting for the performance to begin.)
- B** A few days ago you went to the airport to meet a delegation of foreign scientists. The plane was due to arrive at 6.30 a.m. You were there at this time. Say what was going on at the airfield while you stood waiting for the plane to land. (Planes, to land, to take off, to touch down. Passengers, to get excited, to board the plane, to go up (down) the gangway. Friends, relatives and acquaintances, to give some last-minute advice, to wave good-bye, to watch the plane taking off and going up high.)
- C** Last night you went to a concert and enjoyed listening to the delightful music played by the orchestra. You didn't like to get home straight after the concert was over. Describe what was going on around you as you walked in the cool night air. (Cars, to pass by. Pedestrians, to walk slowly and leisurely. People, to wait at the bus stop.)

Ex. 5. Put into reported speech the following statements.

1. Mother says, 'Jane, Aunt Eliza is coming to tea in the evening.' 2. My sister Mary says, 'It is time to get up and start getting ready for your work.' 3. Nick says, 'I like to listen to the news on the radio while I am having breakfast.' 4. My friend says, 'If I have time I walk to the University, and if I have no time I take a bus.' 5. The students say, 'We must be at the University at 6 p.m.' 6. The teacher says, 'You can easily translate this text without a dictionary.' 7. Jane says, 'I always help my mother to wash up the dishes after meals.' 8. Jack says, 'In our new flat we have large spacious rooms.' 9. My colleague says, 'There is a bus stop quite near my house.' 10. My father says, 'On Sundays I don't like to get up very early.' 11. Jack says, 'Don't call me early tomorrow.' 12. Nat says, 'I am really having trouble communicating this to you.' 13. He says, 'I can't find him anywhere.' 14. Mother says, 'Don't jump at conclusions, dear.' 15. Brian says, 'I am trying to cut down on the number of cigarettes I smoke a day.'

Ex. 6. Put into reported speech the questions using the following introductory phrases : *I'd like to know; Could you, please, tell me; I don't have any idea; I wonder; Would you mind telling me, etc.*

1. Who wakes you up in the morning? 2. When does your working day begin? 3. Do you usually do morning exercises? 4. Do you air your room before you go away? 5. What do you usually have for breakfast? 6. How long does it take you to get to the University? 7. Do you go there by Subway or by bus? 8. Is there a bus stop near your house? 9. How long does your working day last? 10. Do you often go out for dinner? 11. What time do you usually come home? 12. Do you cook the meals yourself? 13. Do you have supper with your parents at home? 14. Do you have time to watch TV programmes in the evenings? 15. At what time do you usually go to bed?

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. За окном была ночь. 2. Была тихая летняя ночь. 3. Ночь была тихой. 4. Был туманный ноябрьский вечер. 5. Вечером мы играли в бридж. 6. Позднее утро. Пора вставать. 7. Был вечер, и мы пошли гулять. 8. Думаю, что будет хороший день. 9. Нам предстоит тяжелая ночь. 10. Это произошло ранним утром. 11. Ночь была ветренная. 12. Пришла ночь, и он лег спать. 13. Я встал в шесть утра. 14. Она провела бессонную ночь. 15. Я работал с утра до ночи. 16. Я уговорил его остаться ночевать. 17. День уходил, я почувствовал усталость. 18. Я не могу описать красоту этой ночи.

19. Мы остались там на день, а вечером уехали в город. 20. Это случилось осенью 1998 года.

Unit 32

The Use of Tenses. Reported Speech

Ex. 1. Report the following statements by using the verbs: say, tell somebody, state, assert in the present tense.

Model: It is getting dark. — *Father says it is getting dark.*

1. I've never seen this man before. 2. They will find the book rather dull. 3. At that time they were watching television. They always do. 4. Come and see me when you are in town. 5. I lost him in the crowd when the lights went down. 6. He wrote the play in 1990. 7. There was no one in when I came. 8. Some boys were playing football in the yard. 9. I am perfectly sure that I have never seen this film before. 10. Neither of us like(s) adventure stories. 11. None of us will stay in Moscow for the holidays. 12. We've been in the Caucasus since the tenth of July. 13. If I see him, I'll recognize him. 14. I can't join you either. 15. Don't worry, I have done it before.

Ex. 2. Report the following questions by using the verbs: ask, wonder, want to know, inquire, doubt, etc.

Model: Have they read the book? — *He wonders if they have read the book.*

1. Can it be true? 2. Will they manage it? 3. Who broke the cup? 4. Are you waiting for me? 5. Have you been taking dancing lessons? 6. Have you spoken to her about me? 7. Can I wait here? 8. Is it difficult to get tickets to the ballet *The Nutcracker* in the Bolshoi? 9. Did you have enough time to finish the book or are you still reading it? 10. Have you been busy lately? 11. What are you having for lunch today? 12. Why didn't Mr. Green agree to our conditions? 13. When did you see the Browns last? 14. How often do you go to the language laboratory? 15. How much time do you need to finish the essay? 16. How long have you been here? 17. How many countries has he visited this year? 18. Why didn't you stay for two more days? 19. When did your family arrive? 20. Which of the biggest factories in the city do you want to visit?

Ex. 3. Make up 10 indirect questions about the book you are reading now. Begin with *I'd like to know, I wonder, etc.*

Ex. 4. Talk on the suggested situations.

1. You come into the hall. A lecture is going to be given there and there is only one person sitting in the front row. 2. You would like to know if Roger will be doing anything special this time tomorrow night. 3. It's about ten o'clock in the evening. There is no one studying in the reading hall but one of your fellow students. You are surprised to see him there so late. 4. You would like your elder brother to take you to the movies tonight and you are trying to find out if he will be doing any work tonight. 5. It's of interest to you whose paper they will be discussing at three o'clock tomorrow. You ask your friend to find it out for you. 6. You don't know much about Internet. You are talking to your friend who has become a real expert on this subject. You ask him questions about Internet origin and development. 7. You are getting ready for your first trip abroad. You have never flown before. You are flying to London and you are asking your friend who visited London not long ago to tell you what will happen to you when you arrive at London airport Heathrow. 8. You need to earn some money and through your friend you contacted an agency specializing in dubbing foreign films. Tell us about your conversation with the agency representative about your job and responsibilities.

Ex. 5. Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. We (go) to the theatre last night. 2. He usually (write) in black ink. 3. She (play) the piano when our guests (arrive) last night. 4. She just (come) and you (see) her in five minutes. 5. I (come) as soon as my work (finish). 6. Where you (go) for your holiday last year? 7. I (not visit) Moscow since we (go) there three years ago. 8. My mother (come) to stay with us next weekend. 9. They (meet) only three days ago and already (decide) to get married. 10. Jan never (see) snow. 11. She always (come) late! 12. The telephone (ring) when she (dress). 13. I (lose) my key. I can't remember where I (see) it last. 14. I never (forget) what you just (tell) me. 15. They (prepare) Christmas dinner today. 16. He (walk) very quickly when I (meet) him yesterday. 17. Yesterday I (buy) a new watch. 18. We (meet) tomorrow after I (finish) my work. 19. He says he is sorry he (give) me so much trouble. 20. I am sorry that I (not to know) that you (leave) your book when you (come) to see me last Thursday.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Я не пойду спать. Я буду его ждать. Он обещал быть дома к одиннадцати. 2. Я давно смотрела этот фильм. Я уже забыла, о

чем он. 3. Ты опять работал на моем компьютере, пока меня не было? Ты переставил мои файлы, а я этого не люблю. 4. Если увидишь его, скажи, что я буду ждать его внизу в холле. 5. Я покажу ему статью только после того, как поговорю с главным инженером. 6. Какая чудесная погода! Снег перестал и солнце светит ярко! 7. Вас хотят видеть молодой человек и девушка. Девушка такая красивая! 8. Я нечасто обедаю дома. Мне приходится завтракать и обедать в столовой. 9. Я не слышал, что ты сказал. Повтори, пожалуйста. 10. Вы знаете, когда Брауны будут в Лондоне? 11. Тому понадобится полчаса, чтобы доехать до института. 12. Пока она будет доделывать упражнения, мы поиграем в шахматы. 13. Диккенс — мой любимый писатель. Я прочла все его книги. 14. «Концерт начался. Я буду ждать тебя в холле», — сказала она шепотом. 15. У меня чай совсем не сладкий. 16. Они готовятся сдавать экзамен на водительские права. Не мешай им.

Ex. 7. Insert the correct article.

1. ... thermometer, ... instrument for measuring ... temperature, can be found in any home. 2. Lomonosov, ... great Russian scientist, was born in ... small village on ... shore of ... White Sea. 3. ... delegation, ... group of environmental educators, was met by H. Hensel, ... head of the Biology Department. 4. Henry studies ... ancient history, ... very interesting subject. 5. ... mink coat, ... luxurious thing, cost her husband ... pretty sum of money. 6. Tchkalov, ... famous pilot, was ... first man to fly over to ... North Pole. 7. In this country September, ... warm and sunny month, is ... best time for ... weddings. 8. Budapest, ... capital of ... Hungary, is divided into two parts by ... Danube. 9. ... brothers Grimm were ... well-known German linguists. 10. Jakob Grimm, ... famous German linguist, is more known as ... fairy-tale writer. 11. There is ... monument to ... Prime Minister Churchill in London. 12. Will ... Prime Minister keep ... promises he gave in ... traditional speech? 13. ... Queen had to consult ... Lord Chancellor on ... matter. 14. Harold Wilson was ... leader of ... Democratic Party. 15. ... hall, ... bright and spacious room, was beautifully decorated for ... ceremony.

Ex. 8. Translate into English.

1. Весна. 2. Зима. Холодно. Часто идет снег. 3. Ранняя весна. В парке много цветов. 4. Поздняя осень. 5. Была солнечная осень. 6. Осень была дождливая. 7. Была дождливая осень. 8. Утро. 9. Раннее утро. 10. День был жаркий. 11. Был жаркий полдень. 12. Я вернусь через день. 13. Пришел день моего отъезда. 14. День рождения — это осо-

бый день. 15. День был ясный, но морозный. 16. Это было весной 1984 года. 17. Вчера я проснулся рано утром. 18. Я люблю гулять в лесу ранним утром. 19. Он возвращается домой поздно вечером практически каждый день. 20. Эта история произошла однажды в январе, поздним вечером, в доме моих друзей. 21. Ночью на небе много звезд. 22. Приятно встретить рассвет прекрасным утром. 23. Я не люблю находиться в городе душным днем. 24. Делегация приехала утром 20 сентября. 25. Прошлой ночью шел дождь.

Unit 33

The Use of Tenses and Articles. The Generic Use of the Definite Article

Ex. 1. Change the questions into indirect ones introducing them by: *I wonder, I'd like to know, I am interested (eager, anxious, curious) to know, could you tell me.* Supply answers. In case you don't know the exact answer begin with: *I don't really know, I have no idea, I can't imagine.*

Model: *Teacher:* How long have you lived in this place?

Student A: I wonder how long you have lived in this place.

Student B: Oh, let me see how long I have lived in this place — for almost ten years, since 1989, to be more exact.

1. How many years have passed since your friend came to live here? 2. How many years have you learned English? When did you begin learning it? Have you made much progress since you began learning it? 3. Have you seen any films in English since you began learning the language? 4. Has your friend read many books in English since he took up the language? 5. How many English books have you read since you began reading books in the original? 6. Your friends are now away on holiday. How long have they been away? 7. You have a VCR, don't you? How long have you had it? 8. How many weeks have passed since you were at the theatre last? 9. I see that this project is done on the computer. I didn't know you had one. How long have you had it? 10. You should have told me about this before. How many days have passed since you got this fax? 11. How much have you translated since you came? 12. How many CDs have you bought since you started the collection? 13. I know that you are doing a telephone survey. How many calls have you made since you started? 14. I know that you have done some translations from English into Russian. It's much more difficult to translate from Russian into English. Have you ever done this kind of translation since you started translating?

Ex. 2. Report the following questions.

1. Why are you saying this? 2. What did she say on the subject? 3. What can I do for you? 4. What have you done to your hair? 5. Who can possibly know where he lives? 6. When did this conversation take place? 7. What measures have been taken? 8. What can you tell us about your plans? 9. What did you tell her? 10. Whom did you say it to? 11. Why didn't you come? 12. What were you speaking about when we came? 13. When did you learn about it? 14. What language did he speak? 15. How will they do the decorating?

Ex. 3. Translate the following sentences. Pay special attention to the use of the Progressive Tenses.

1. Почему вы в пальто в такой теплый день? 2. Вы пойдете на лекцию? Он будет говорить о своей поездке в Центральную Америку. 3. Кого вы ищете? 4. Когда вы вернетесь? 5. Когда вы сдадите последний экзамен? 6. Вас кто-то ждет внизу. 7. Вечно ты читаешь газету за завтраком! 8. Я работала над этим заданием две недели. 9. Я буду работать над этим заданием две недели. 10. Я заканчивала эту работу, когда получила ваше письмо. 11. Вы возьмете детей в кино? 12. Когда вы будете ей писать? 13. Что вы будете обсуждать на следующем уроке грамматики? 14. Что вы будете делать в воскресенье? 15. В 1980 году он жил в Одессе. 16. Он прожил там всю жизнь. 17. Вечно ты споришь! 18. Куда ты идешь?

Ex. 4. Correct the wrong sentences.

1. Her assistant said that there are only three applicants for this position. 2. Everyone who is on our mailing list will receive a copy of this catalogue. 3. There is a brochure you have requested. 4. Mrs. Hooper and me will be leaving on Tuesday, December 1st from Dallas International airport. 5. Each student should complete his/her project and submit it to me by December 15. 6. They have always been proud of their achievements. 7. The basis for her statement was not sound. 8. What is the commonest complaint about this vacuum cleaner? 9. Call me if you need more information about this model. 10. The emergency doctor felt his arm carefully to see if the bone was broken. 11. Peggy sat her dictionary on the desk. 12. Bad luck has driven him to sign this contract. 13. The overripe fruit burst open. 14. Mr. Grey spoke critically of the plan to expand our operation. 15. I don't think you have sufficient data to confirm your research.

Ex. 5. Open the brackets using the right tenses.

A Misunderstanding

Jim drove a black cab and often (hang) around outside Waterloo Station in London, hoping that a rich American tourist (ask) him (take) him to Edinburgh Castle. One, day he (catch) sight of a couple of confused German holidaymakers (stare) at a map. 'Sprechen Sie Deutsch?' the husband (cry) as Jim made the couple (get) inside the cab and then (lay) their luggage at the back. 'Of course I (show) you the city. You (come) here to do a bit of sightseeing? Where you (want) me (take) you first?' Jim started (drive) away without waiting for any answer. He (take) the couplaround Big Ben, the Palace, then to Harrods. All through the way the tourists (go on) (hammer) on the glass which traditionally (separate) the English driver from his passengers. The Germans (keep) (point) their fingers at the map, red in the face. Outside Madame Tussauds they (catch) in a traffic jam. It (occur) that one of the couple's countryfolk (pass) and (hear) them (cry) out of the cab window. The German (let) them (explain) what (happen). Then he (offer) himself as an interpreter, and finally explained that the driver (misunderstand) the situation as the tourists only wanted to know where platform fifteen (be).

Ex. 6. Comment on the use of articles with the nouns in bold type.

1. **The koala**, an animal found chiefly in Australia, climbs trees to eat leaves. 2. **The anaconda**, the heaviest snake in the world, can grow as long as **30 feet** and weigh as much as 330 lbs. 3. **The jaguar**, is the biggest Amazon cat. 4. A **cat** is a gracious animal. 5. The biggest desert tree is **the baobab** or **the bottle tree**, found in the Kalahari and Australia. 6. One of the gentlest of all animals is **the hare**. 7. **The hare** is usually larger than **the rabbit**, and its feet and ears are longer. 8. **The harpy eagle** is the world's largest eagle, with feet the size of a man's hand. 9. **The arapaima**, found in the Amazon river, is the biggest freshwater fish in the world. 10. **A woodpecker** is a very useful bird. 11. **Man** is harsher than iron, harder than stone and more delicate than a rose. 12. **The noun** can denote many different things. 13. The invention of **the wheel** started the technological revolution. 14. I can never stop admiring this wonderful invention — **the telephone**. 15. Agatha Christie is truly considered to be the Queen of **the detective novel**.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Пчела стала символом трудолюбия. 2. Когда муравей встречает другого муравья, они общаются при помощи своих антенн. 3. Во многих странах есть памятники животным: в нашей стране — это

памятник собаке, в Индии — памятник слону, в Соединенных Штатах — памятник обезьяне. 4. Гитара появилась в Испании в XIII веке. 5. Гитара — удобный инструмент. Ее можно носить с собой. 6. Артикль — маленькое, но очень важное слово. 7. Басня была любимым жанром русского писателя Ивана Крылова. 8. Крона — денежная единица Дании. 9. Волынка — музыкальный инструмент, на котором играют шотландцы. 10. Сосна — вечнозеленое растение. 11. Клоун впервые появился в английском цирке. 12. Существительное может выполнять различные функции в предложении. 13. Только лишь человек обладает замечательным даром — говорить. 14. Кленовый лист — символ Канады. 15. Мужчина, женщина, ребенок — это вечно.

Ex. 8. Make up dialogues on the suggested situations.

1. You ask your sister if she has visited her sick friend yet. She hasn't, as she has been too busy for the last few days and has practically no time to go anywhere.
2. You are anxious to know if Mary has heard the latest news yet. She says she hasn't as their radio has been switched off and she hasn't been anywhere out the whole day.
3. Your neighbours have moved into a new flat. You ask Andrew if he has seen any of them since they moved out, also, if he has been to their new place yet.
4. You are wondering what has happened to your friend who shows up in wet clothes. He explains to you that his car broke down five blocks from your place and he had to walk in a pouring rain.
5. You ask Jane, your classmate, about her term project, what it is about, what books she has used, what research she has done, if she has finished writing it and submitted it already.
6. You are helping to organize a conference. Due to some emergency situations your key speakers cannot come at the scheduled time. You have to postpone the conference. This is a crisis because you have to inform about a hundred participants about the change of dates and maybe return a lot of registration fees. You are speaking with your colleagues about how it all has happened, what you have done, whom you have informed and what else needs to be done.
7. You are visiting a friend in another city. He called you the day before yesterday and told you that he couldn't meet you at the rail way station, but a friend of his would. Jack, his friend, would take you to his house and you would wait for him for an hour before he got free and picked you up at Jack's place. You have been at Jack's place for four hours already and your friend hasn't called yet. At last he calls. You are really upset and frustrated by the situation and ask your friend what has happened.

Ex. 9. Read the story and insert the right article.

The Fence

Once there lived ... boy with a bad temper. His father gave him ... bag of nails and told him to hammer ... nail in the back of ... fence every time he lost control. The first day ... boy drove 37 nails into ... fence. Then ... number of nails ... day gradually reduced. ... boy discovered it was easier to hold his temper than to drive those nails into ... fence. Finally ... day came when ... boy did not lose his temper at all. His father suggested that ... boy now pull out one nail for each day he was able to hold his temper. The days passed and ... young boy was finally able to tell his father that all ... nails were gone. ... father led his son to ... fence. 'You have done well, but look at ... holes in ... fence,' he said. 'When you say things in anger, they leave ... scar just like ... nail holes. You can put ... knife in ... person and draw it out. It won't matter how many times you say "I'm sorry," ... wound is still there. ... verbal wound is as bad as ... physical one.'

Unit 34

The Use of Tenses and Articles

Ex. 1. Open the brackets using the Simple Past Tense or the Present Perfect Tense.

1. Your contribution to the last project (be) enormous. 2. I (hear) nothing of this sort so far. 3. When you (hear) it? 4. I (speak) to him at the conference. 5. It's what I always (say). 6. How many times I (tell) you not to bang the door! 7. ... anyone (ask) for me when I was out? 8. What ... he (say)? 9. Margaret, you (read) my letters! Don't deny it! 10. I don't know how you (discover) that I (be) there that night. 11. I (come) to you to ask for information. 12. I (speak) to her about it many times. 13. The young man (tear) the envelope, (open) it and (take) out a small sheet of paper. His hands were shaking a little. 14. I never (hear) the subject mentioned. 15. No, you can't have another ice-cream. You (have) two already. 16. Why, you not (change) at all. I (recognize) you the moment I (see) you. 17. I (hear) that flowers (grow) better in shady place. 18. I (mention) the subject once or twice. He (not to be) interested. 19. Oh, he (explain) everything: he (be out) when you (phone). 20. I wonder what (happen) there since we (leave)?

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

Быть Матерью — трудная работа. Еще труднее быть матерью и работать. У моей сестры два сына, и она работает переводчиком в туристической фирме. Она хорошо зарабатывает, но и работает она много. Работа ее мужа связана с командировками, и он редко бывает дома. Так что я часто помогаю сестре и сижу со своими племянниками. Сестра с мужем накопили достаточно денег и купили дом на окраине города с небольшим участком, где наши мальчишки могут играть без больших волнений для нас. В прошлое воскресенье я сидела с ними, так как муж сестры, как всегда, был в командировке, а сестра работала с какой-то иностранной группой. Я сидела на скамейке перед домом, читала и изредка поглядывала на племянников. Они играли в войну. Было около пяти часов. Подъехала машина, сестра вышла из нее и вошла во двор. Один из мальчишек выстрелил в нее из пистолета и закричал: «Ты убита!» Сестра рухнула на траву. Мы засмеялись. Прошло несколько минут, а она все лежала. Я подбежала к ней проверить, не ушиблась ли она. Когда я склонилась над ней, она открыла один глаз и прошептала: «Не выдавай меня, это мой единственный шанс отдохнуть сегодня!»

Ex. 3. Make up short dialogues about a thing you've mislaid or lost. Use the following phrases.

1. I've mislaid it. 2. I haven't seen it around. 3. I've looked for it everywhere. 4. I've not found it. 5. I can't think where I have left it. 6. I hope you haven't lost it. 7. I've just put it somewhere. 8. I can't imagine what I have done with it. 9. Have you looked in every drawer? 10. Have you accidentally thrown it away? 11. I think I am losing my mind. I can't remember where I have put the keys. 12. I've misplaced my wallet and I need to buy groceries. 13. I've seen it somewhere. Where is it? 14. I've just had it in my hand. 15. I've looked everywhere and I still can't find it.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Мы долго ждали его вчера. 2. Кто взял мой словарь? 3. Ты что, целую библиотеку в портфеле носишь? Почему он такой тяжелый? 4. Я говорил с ним на конференции. 5. Где он сейчас работает? 6. Я пытался дозвониться ей полчаса. 7. Я пришла, чтобы поговорить с вами. 8. Я никогда не видела ее такой сердитой. 9. Я не могу даже сказать, как я скучал по тебе. 10. Много времени прошло с тех пор, как она уехала. 11. Я открыл дверь. Студенты все еще сдавали экзамен. 12. Я знаю его давно и совершенно в нем уверена. 13. Сегод-

ня у меня было очень много работы, и я устал. 14. Недавно он приехал из Лондона и рассказал нам много интересного из жизни англичан. 15. Он сердится на меня уже неделю, и я не пойму, в чем дело. 16. Я решил навестить их, так как мы не виделись почти год. 17. Она мне не звонила уже неделю. Что случилось? 18. Когда мы пришли, они нас все еще ждали. 19. Сегодня отец весь день очень усталый. Пусть он поужинает и ложится спать. 20. Она живет в другом городе, с тех пор как она вышла замуж.

Ex. 5. Insert the articles.

Like many of her high school friends, Elizabeth Colon is looking for ... work. She lives with her mother, brother and sisters in ... city project on ... 17th Street in ... Chelsea. Her mother is not working but is taking public assistance. And ... 18 year-old Elizabeth wants to help out.

Her school has prepared her for ... office work. She types and is in ... last year of shorthand. But she sees no prospect for ... work after she graduates. 'The school sent me to see this lawyer on ... Park Place,' she said. 'But he wanted me to work ... full time, I told him I couldn't because of ... school.'

Cheryl Woods, is ... friend of Elizabeth's. She, too, has been looking for ... work to help out her family. Her father, ... janitor (дворник), is only able to support his family 'more or less.' Last summer Cheryl worked at ... day care centre, but ... job ended with ... summer. She found herself in ... same boat with 30 other youths who had been placed in summer jobs.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Обед готов. 2. Мы одного возраста. 3. Что за ребенок! 4. Ты настоящий друг. 5. Какая жалость! 6. Это была настоящая весна. 7. Это был своевременный совет. 8. Впервые мы встретили его имя на странице четыре. 9. У нас нет урока грамматики сегодня. 10. Мама, можно мне мороженое? 11. Кофе хорош? 12. Молчание — золото. 13. Зима в этом году похожа на осень. 14. Он уезжает пятичасовым поездом сегодня. 15. Было раннее утро, и мы решили отправиться на прогулку. 16. Обед имел успех. 17. Вода необходима для жизни. 18. Электрическая лампочка была изобретена Яблочковым. 19. Я предпочитаю молоко чаю. 20. Моя сестра преподает историю в средней школе. 21. Пальма растет в южных странах. 22. Последняя неделя декабря была очень холодной. 23. Это был первый день лета. 24. Я всегда встаю поздно в воскресное утро. 25. Некоторые любят гулять в дождливую погоду.

Ex. 7. Choose the verb and use it in the right form.

1. You have (rise, raise) an interesting question. 2. The temperature has (rise, raise) too high for this time of the year. 3. Prices (rise, raise) again lately. 4. When the third act started, the audience (rise, raise) to applaud to the orchestra. 5. He (raise, rise) the lid and looked into the box. 6. Piles of books were (lay, lie) on the desk. 7. The wreck (lay, lie) in twenty feet of water. 8. I (lay, lie) my coat on the table. 9. I am sorry I really don't remember where I have (lay, lie) my notes. 10. She (lay, lie) a cloth on the child's forehead. 11. She has to (lie, lay) in bed for some more days. 12. Eight chairs were (set, sit) around the table. 13. She (set, sit) by the phone all evening. 14. The professor (set, sit) a deadline for our term project. 15. He has always (set, sit) a high standard for himself.

Unit 35

The Use of Tenses. The Present Perfect Progressive Tense

Ex. 1. Open the brackets using the necessary tense.

1. Phone as late as you like. I (read) for my examination. I seldom (go) to bed before midnight anyway. 2. Come over to my place on Saturday evening. Some friends of my sister's (come). I want you to meet them. 3. I wonder when the rain (stop). 4. I promise to let you know as soon as I (hear) from them. 5. Well, so long then, I (phone) you one of these days. 6. Don't go there so late. They (have) dinner. 7. She (graduate) in a few days. 8. Why you always (wear) your hair like that? 9. How do you like the dress I (wear)? 10. You (hear) from him in a few days. 11. She feels that unless she (speak) to him everything (be lost). 12. St. Petersburg is such a rainy city. Whenever I (come) there it always (to rain). 13. I (study) for another year and a half. I (have to get) 5 credits in social studies before I (graduate). 14. Sorry I can't join you on Saturday. I (work) all day. 15. Mr. Harris (retire) next week and we (plan) a nice party for him.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Прошлым летом мы жили в городе. 2. Он болен уже месяц. 3. В этом году с погодой происходит что-то странное. У нас раньше никогда не было такой дождливой осени. 4. Всю ночь шел снег. 5. Я разговаривал с ним на днях. 6. Она ничего не поймет, пока мы ее не проучим (to teach somebody a lesson). 7. Я не могу дать тебе много денег. 50 рублей тебя устроят? 8. В комнате холодно.

Окно было открыто целый час. 9. Почему ты не сделал это упражнение? 10. Почему ты не ответил на мой вопрос, когда я тебя спрашивала? 11. Он писал эту книгу пять лет. 12. В последнее время вы меньше работаете. 13. Что вы сказали? 14. Как, ты говоришь, она назвала эту станцию? 15. Вы давно его знаете? 16. Я познакомился с ним давно. 17. Я давно его не видел. 18. Давно он приехал? 19. Что вы там так долго обсуждали? 20. Я рада, что вы пришли. 21. Пожалуйста, кто-нибудь, откройте дверь. 22. Что у вас было на обед сегодня?

Ex. 3. Comment on the use of articles.

1. It was a beautiful moonlight night, and the moonbeams streaming into the garden made it almost as light as day. The garden was long and backed on to a small wood. A low broken fence divided the wood from the garden, and it was there that the Pumpkin was heading. It rolled on in a quiet way, moving over the grass, then under the broken fence and into the wood beyond.

2. A sunbeam creeping through the window and along the floor to Molly's pillow awoke her in the morning; she sat up with a start, puzzled for a moment at the unfamiliar surroundings; then she remembered — and giving a long sigh, lay down again for a few more minutes while she thought the situation over. It all seemed like a wonderful dream. Here she was in the middle of a real, exciting adventure!

Ex. 4. Insert the right article.

A I am reading ... interesting book on ... word origins. It is ... fascinating book. I've learned, for example, that ... names of many months come from ... names of real or mythological figures of ... past. July is named after Julius Caesar and August for Augustus Caesar. January is named for the Roman God of Janus. Janus is ... God who had two faces looking in ... opposite directions. I like ... idea of naming this month after Janus, because January looks both for ... past year and ... new year. You can easily guess that March is named for Mars, ... Roman God of war. I like reading this book so much that I am thinking about writing ... course paper on ... origin of ... words. I think it will have ... good effect on my vocabulary.

B ... trio walked through ... doors entering ... long, wide, pale green, corridor with ... large square glass windows on either side. Beyond ... windows rooms were pleasantly appointed, each having ... bed, ... desk, ... couch, and such items as ... television set, ... radio, and ... door that led to ... bathroom with ... shower. Also, there were other

windows on ... outside walls that looked over ... meadows with ... high grass and ... springtime flowers. 'If these are ... patients' hospital rooms,' said Traupman, 'they are among ... most pleasant I've seen.'

Ex. 5. Transform the following sentences into questions beginning with *How long*?

1. Peter has been writing his translation for 2 hours. 2. Val has been studying English for six months. 3. She's been meaning to write to her for a fortnight. 4. We've been expecting him for a week. 5. We've been looking for her for an hour. 6. I've been waiting for you for two hours. 7. She's been writing her test since morning. 8. We've been discussing the plan since 2 o'clock. 9. She has been cleaning the house since morning. 10. It's been raining for 3 hours. 11. He's been watching TV all day today. 12. They've been talking for an hour. 13. I have been thinking about this for quite a while. 14. I have been trying to fix this tap for half an hour. 15. This helicopter has been flying over us for 15 minutes.

Ex. 6. Answer the following questions.

1. What are you reading in English now? How long have you been reading it? 2. Can you play chess? Who taught you to play chess? How long have you been playing it? 3. When did your mother graduate from the Institute? Where has she been working since? 4. When did you buy your suit? How long have you been wearing it? 5. Is Olga a friend of yours? How long have you known her? 6. Do you live in Moscow? How long have you been living here? 7. Are you a first-year student? How long have you been studying at the University? 8. Are you studying the Present Perfect Progressive Tense? How long have you been studying it? 9. It's cold today. How long has it been so cold? 10. Are you married? How long have you been married? 11. Is your proposal ready? How long have you been preparing it? 12. You mean you have another job? How long have you been doing this? 13. Is he your boyfriend? How long have you been dating him? 14. I had no idea that you have a car. When did you buy it? How long have you been driving it? 15. I think it's time to hand in your papers, folks. Has anybody timed it? How long have you been writing?

Ex. 7. Translate the following sentences and say whether the Present Perfect Progressive Inclusive or Exclusive should be used.

1. Я знаю, вы только что говорили обо мне. 2. Она преподает в этой школе уже пять лет. 3. У вас красные глаза. Вы плакали? 4. Я читаю роман «Сестра Кэрри» уже три дня. 5. О, Джим! Я так ждал и надеялся. 6. Я попытаюсь найти вас до десяти часов. 7. У

меня болит голова. Я долго читала. 8. Я живу здесь всю жизнь. 9. Я очень устала и хочу спать. Я готовилась к экзаменам весь день. 10. Он член родительского комитета уже 10 лет. 11. Доктор выглядит уставшим. Он оперировал весь день. 12. Думаю, что ты ошибаешься. Я тоже считала. У меня получилось сорок шесть. 13. Он занимается этим исследованием последние 10 лет. 14. Я тебе об этом все время говорю. 15. Привет, Джейн, наконец-то я дозвонилась до тебя. Я пыталась связаться с тобой последние три дня.

Ex. 8. Put the verbs in brackets into a suitable tense.

1. It (rain) since morning and it looks like it's not going to stop. 2. I (mend) your socks for the last two hours. 3. I (clean) the rooms upstairs since lunchtime. 4. Lunch is not ready yet, although I (cook) all morning. 5. They are tired because they (work) at the lab since 10 o'clock. 6. She (stand) in front of the mirror for a quarter of an hour but her hair is not done yet. 7. I (look) for the dictionary for a long time but I (not find) it anywhere. 8. — I (look) at this picture for 5 minutes, but I can't see you in it. — I am afraid you (to look) at the wrong one. 9. I am so bored. I (fold) these letters for the last two hours and I (not do) half of the work. 10. I hate doing budgets. I (work) on this one for the last two days and every time I come up with different numbers. 11. I can't understand why you like this group. I (listen) to their CD for the last 10 minutes and I (not hear) a single nice song. 12. I am sorry you have so many problems with him, but I (not tell) you that he is the wrong person for the job? 13. They (interview) the applicants for this position for the last week and they are still not satisfied with the results. 14. I (drive) this car for the last two years and it never (give) me much trouble. 15. Sorry to bother you at such a late hour but I (try) to reach you all day today.

Unit 36

The Use of the Present Perfect Progressive Tense

Ex. 1. Complete the following, using the Present Perfect Progressive (Exclusive).

1. My hands are covered with flour. I 2. He looks pale. He 3. He doesn't know the English alphabet though he 4. Oh, here you are at last, I 5. Let me drive now. You 6. I am sorry for keeping you waiting, I 7. You feel tired because you 8. I can't believe it's the end of the line. We 9. It's my last exam of this term. I 10. Can we change the music to the one I like? You

11. Everybody is enjoying the party and I am exhausted. I... 12. Your time is up, kids, you 13. You all stopped talking when I came in. I'm sure you 14. Brian, you smell of tobacco. You 15. The boy is dirty from head to foot. He

Ex. 2. Open the brackets, using the Present Progressive, the Present Perfect or the Present Perfect Progressive Tenses.

1. What you (do) in my room? You (look) for anything? 2. Look! He (open) the box. He (take) something out. 3. I'm so glad you (come). We (wait) for hours. 4. My dear girl, you (overeate) lately. You (lose) your looks, you (lose) your figure. 5. The children (talk) of nothing else for weeks. 6. I wonder what (happen) since we (leave). 7. That young singer has had good training. He (sing) for half an hour and never (stop) for a moment's rest. 8. — Why you (wear) that strange-looking suit? It doesn't fit you at all. — Why, f(wear) it for a month and nobody (say) a word all this time. 9. Ever since I was a young girl I (try) to take things seriously. 10. — I (try) to reach you all morning. Where (be) you? — I (cut) grass in the yard. 11. Because of the storm the light (be) in and, out all evening. 12. If you (not listen) to the news, can I switch it off? 13. — You look sunburnt. — Yes, we (be) on the beach all day today. 14. — How do you know this? — Alice (teach) me. 15. Looks like there (be) an accident. The traffic (be) blocked for an hour.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. — Давно вы ждете автобус? — Я стою здесь уже пятнадцать минут, и ни один автобус не пришел. 2. — Интересно, что сейчас делает Анна? — Она просматривает почту. — Сколько времени она этим занимается? — Она работает с 9 часов. Она просмотрела все факсы и сейчас читает письма. 3. Хотя сейчас светит солнце, все еще холодно, так как шел сильный дождь. 4. Я не против того, чтобы она была в нашей команде. Она мне всегда нравилась. 5. Я не вижу словаря, с тех пор как вы его взяли с полки. 6. Я очень устала. Я готовилась к экзамену по английскому языку. 7. Почему вы на меня так смотрите? 8. Я не ел с утра. 9. Я недовольна вашими знаниями. О чем вы думаете? 10. Я думаю об этом с тех пор, как получил письмо. 11. Я слышал, вы пишете книгу. 12. Я уже две недели гощу здесь, а до сих пор не получила письма из дома. 13. — Как он? — Все еще в операционной. Они оперируют уже три часа. 14. Я собираюсь поехать туда уже несколько лет, но все время что-то мешает. 15. Он посещает занятия по французскому уже два месяца.

Ex. 4. Ask your friends these questions in English and say that you expect an answer.

1. Давно вы встречаетесь друг с другом? 2. С какого дня Нина больна? 3. Сколько времени вы делаете эту работу? 4. Давно они гостят у вас? 5. Как давно вы не получаете от него известий? 6. Давно вы не видели его? 7. Давно вы изучаете английский? 8. Сколько времени вы учитесь в этом университете? 9. Сколько времени вы изучаете эту тему? 10. Вы давно здесь сидите? 11. Вы давно читаете эту книгу? 12. Давно идет этот сериал? 13. Сколько времени вы уже собираетесь рассказать ему об этом? 14. Долго вы это слушаете? 15. Давно вы работаете на компьютере?

Ex. 5. Ask and answer questions according to the model. Pay attention to the tense forms. Use the following verbs: *to study, to watch, to play, to trim, to count, to listen*, etc.

Model: — What are you doing now?
— I am translating an article.
— When did you begin translating it?
— How long have you been translating it?
— How much have you translated?

Ex. 6. Insert the right article.

1. ... women are often better teachers than ... men. 2. How many people will there be at ... official lunch? 3. ... cigarette is made of ... tobacco and ... paper. 4. There was ... three-quarter moon racing through ... clouds. 5. ... cat is ... sensitive animal. 6. Walking is ... good exercise. 7. ... boredom, ... old excuse, is no ... excuse. 8. ... ostrich is ... largest of all ... birds. 9. ... Professor Pauckney, ... head of ... linguistic department, is delivering ... lecture in ... morning. 10. ... cow gives us ... milk, ... meat and ... skin. 11. I have just read ... biography of Scott Fitzgerald, ... great American writer. 12. Chris was ... tall handsome fellow who looked like ... sailor. 13. ... wolf and ... coyote belong to ... family of dogs. 14. ... cuckoo is ... lazy bird. 15. Most of ... students have passed ... exams.

Ex. 7. Read and translate the sentences. Comment on the meanings of the modal verbs in bold type.

1. Every man **must** pay his debt to nature. 2. You **can't** please everyone. 3. We **ought to** weigh well what we can only once decide. 4. A gentleman **should** be honest in his actions and refined in his language. 5. You **can** only die once. 6. You **should** know a man seven years before you stir his fire. 7. A man **can** do no more than he can. 8. A liar **ought to** have a good memory. 9. We **must** not look for a

golden life in an iron age. 10. Children **should** be seen and not heard. 11. Law makers **should** not be law breakers. 12. Who says 'A' **must** say 'B.' 13. They **may** come any minute. 14. You'll **have to** accept our terms. 15. Did you **have to** do the washing, Tom? 16. This **may** be true, but who knows? 17. May I hand in my report, sir?

Ex. 8. Choose the right modal verb.

1. We ... cancel the meeting. The proposals are not ready yet.
a) may b) can c) have to
2. Sorry I won't be in Moscow at that time. I ... go to Minsk. My parents will celebrate their fortieth wedding anniversary.
a) must b) need to c) may
3. You ... thank them. They've done so much for you.
a) can b) may c) ought to
4. The shop was losing money, so they... close down,
a) must b) had to c) could
5. You ... exercise every day to keep fit.
a) can b) may c) must
6. He is overworking. He really ... go to bed earlier.
a) may b) can c) should
7. I have a splitting headache. I ... take an aspirin.
a) may b) can c) must
8. I know you ... do the job because you have knowledge and experience.
a) can b) may c) have to
9. We told him he ... go home.
a) could b) may c) can
10. You ... drive carefully, it's foggy today.
a) can b) could c) should
11. Times are hard but I ... survive.
a) may b) ought to c) must
12. ... you travel to the UK without a visa?
a) should b) must c) dan
13. She ... visit her parents more often.
a) may b) should c) needs to
14. The child ... not part with his old teddy bear.
a) shall b) can c) may
- 15.— Must I work this weekend? — No, you
a) mustn't b) can't c) needn't

Ex. 9. Translate into English.

1. Жаль, но мы не можем присоединиться к вам. 2. Можно мне банан? 3. Мы были рады, что смогли попасть на спектакль. 4. Она

никогда не может прийти вовремя. 5. Он сказал, что, возможно, найдет решение вопроса. 6. Я не уверен, у меня, возможно, в это время деловая встреча. 7. Мы знали, что это может оказаться очень трудной работой. 8. Они, возможно, правы, но я не могу с ними согласиться. 9. Я считаю, что мы должны надеяться (полагаться) только на себя. 10. Дети должны ложиться спать не позднее десяти часов. 11. — Можно мне посмотреть этот фильм? — Нет, нельзя. Это фильм ужасов. Тебе опять могут присниться кошмары. 12. Вам ведь пришлось сказать ей это, не так ли? 13. — Вам приходится иногда работать по выходным? — Приходится. 14. Девочке пришлось придумать историю, чтобы улизнуть из дома. 15. У нас была договоренность рассказывать в суде одно и то же. 16. Кто сегодня готовит обед? 17. Мы должны решить это прямо сейчас. 18. Тебе нужен новый словарь? Ты не должен волноваться об этом. Я могу купить его тебе. 19. — Должны ли мы уехать сегодня же? — Необязательно. Вы можете остаться здесь до понедельника. 20. Тебе следует контролировать свой вес.

Unit 37

The Use of Tenses

Ex. 1. Read, translate and comment on the use of tenses.

1. The A&V (Albert and Victoria) museum has been one of London's most controversial museums in recent years. It was one of the first to introduce the admission charges. 2. Some of the museum galleries have been remodelled recently, with the help of commercial sponsorship. 3. He has become so efficient at packaging toys that he moves like an automation. 4. I've been trying to figure it out for the last hour. 5. — My name is Jones. I will be getting a telephone call. — I'll bring the phone to the table, sir. 6. People have drastically changed the face of the Earth in the last century. Only recently have people realised that everything on the planet is far from worthless. 7. Where is my diary? Have you been hiding things from me again? 8. You'll see that at the disco she'll be dancing only with Alex.

Ex. 2. Answer the following questions.

1. When did you come to the University? 2. Have you been here since nine? 3. How long have you been here? 4. Have you been here for an hour? 5. How long have you been sitting here? 6. How long have you been living in Moscow? 7. How long have you been taking lessons

from me? 8. Have you been studying English since September? 9. How long have you been listening to me? 10. How long have you been studying at this University? 11. How long have you, known the person sitting next to you? 12. How long have you been answering these questions? 13. How long have you been wearing this sweater? 14. Have you been wearing your hair like this for a long time? 15. How long have you been wearing glasses? 16. How long have you had this bag?

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. — Какую статью вы сейчас переводите? — Я перевожу статью об английском климате. 2. Я не перевела ни строчки с тех пор, как вы пришли. 3. Сколько статей вы перевели в этом году? 4. — Что вы здесь делали в мое отсутствие? — Я переводила статью. Вот мой перевод. 5. Сколько можно свистеть! У меня уже голова болит. Ты свистишь уже полчаса. 6. Меня предупредили о твоём приезде. Жду тебя со вчерашнего дня. 7. Что я тебе сделал? Ты сердишься на меня уже месяц. В чем дело? 8. Мне сказали, что ты куришь. Это правда? Ты куришь? И давно? 9. Я собираюсь поговорить с тобой уже неделю. 10. Они переписываются уже два года. 11. Я не помню ее телефон. Я ей не звонил около года. 12. Они строят эту школу уже год. Интересно, закончат ли они строительство к началу учебного года? 13. Это кафе открыли пять лет назад. С тех пор мы каждую пятницу приходим сюда пить кофе. 14. Они снимают (film) эту сцену уже пять часов, а режиссер все еще не доволен результатом.

Ex. 4. Contrast the Present Perfect with the Present Perfect Progressive Tense.

1. She (travel) around Europe for two months and (visit) six countries so far. 2. We (be) students of this University for the last two years. 3. He (talk) for hours and soon he will have to stop. 4. The workmen (build) our new building since last May. 5. My brother recently (enter) the University. 6. My teacher (correct) notebooks for 3 hours and not (finish) yet. 7. I (understand) everything you (say) for the last twenty minutes. 8. His father (smoke) for 20 years and now (be advised) by his doctor to stop. 9. He not (visit) us since 1990. 10. I (wait) for him since half past eight and now I'll wait only for another five minutes. 11. He (walk) ten miles. 12. We (talk) for three hours. 13. You (walk) too fast. That's why you are tired. 14. I (darn) socks all the morning. 15. How many pairs you (darn)? 16. He (eat) since he arrived. 17. The boy (eat) seven ice-creams. 18. I (sleep) on every bed in this house. 19. He (sleep) since 8 o'clock. It's time for him to get up. 20. What a lovely smell! Mary (make) jam. 21. I

(look) for mushrooms but I (not find) any. 22. He (teach) at school for five years. 23. He (cough) a lot lately. He must give up smoking. 24. I (know) about it for ages. 25. It (rain) for hours. Is it ever going to stop?

Ex. 5. Use the conjunction *since* to connect the following sentences.

Model: We came here two hours ago. It has been raining since. — *It has been raining since we came here.*

1. I got a letter from Helen in September. I've been meaning to write to her since. 2. We moved to a new flat last January. We've been living in it since. 3. I saw you last Saturday. What have you been doing since? 4. She graduated from the University in 1990. She's been teaching at school since. 5. I began doing English at school. I've been learning it since. 6. I lost my pen yesterday. I've been writing with a pencil since. 7. He left for St. Petersburg a month ago. We've been expecting a letter from him since. 8. Nora cleaned the house in spring. She hasn't been cleaning it since. 9. Mrs. Brown fell ill a fortnight ago. The children have been living with us since. 10. The coal deposits were discovered here fifty years ago. They have been mining here since. 11. I bought a bike last year. I have been riding it whenever I can. 12. I started working three months ago. I have been earning enough money to save some. 13. You can't give up. You promised me your support a month ago. I have been counting on you. 14. The phone rang an hour ago. She has been constantly talking since. 15. She was in a car accident last year. She has been complaining about her knee ever since.

Ex. 6. Translate the following sentences. Use the Present or the Past Progressive, the Present Perfect or the Present Perfect Progressive Tense.

1. Он играет в теннис с 10 лет и выиграл уже три чемпионата страны. 2. Мы читаем эту книгу с сентября и прочли уже больше половины. 3. Она говорит уже пять минут, а сделала всего одну ошибку. 4. Вы давно его знаете? 5. Я его только что видела. Он с кем-то разговаривал в коридоре. 6. Она себя плохо чувствует последнее время и пропустила несколько занятий. 7. Что вы там так долго обсуждаете? 8. Я всегда знал, что здесь что-то не так. 9. Она мне все рассказала. 10. Я работаю над этой проблемой с прошлого года. 11. Она плохо спит в последнее время. 12. Почему вы так со мной разговариваете? 13. Они избегают друг друга в последнее время. 14. Хорошо, что вы приехали. Мы очень скучали о вас. 15. Более 50 лет Пушкинский музей изобразительных искусств предлагает школьникам уникальные образовательные программы.

16. Наше солнце горит уже 4,5 миллиарда лет и, как говорят ученые, будет гореть еще около 5 миллиардов. 17. Я никогда не понимала, как правильно употреблять слово *encourage*. 18. Я собиралась рассказать тебе об этом, как только мы встретимся. 19. Он странно ведет себя в последнее время. По-моему, он нас избегает. 20. Ты все еще встречаешься с Джеком?

Ex. 7. Insert the articles.

Edward III of England is remembered for two things: he started ... Hundred Years' War, and he founded ... Order of the Garter, which remains to this day one of Britain's highest decorations. Edward III had ... claim to ... throne of France through his mother, ... French princess. In spite of ... fact that French law restricted royal inheritance to ... male branch, Edward proclaimed himself King of France after ... death of ... French king. In 1346, he began one of ... most glorious military campaigns in ... English history. He landed in France with his Army. By his side he had his son, ... Prince of Wales, called the Black Prince from colour of his armour. King Edward won a lot of battles. His siege of Calais is well remembered all over ... world by ... symbolism of ... sculpture done by Rodin, ... great nineteenth-century sculptor. ... sculpture called *The Burghers of Calais* is one of Rodin's greatest masterpieces. ... city of Calais was only 21 miles across ... Strait of Dover from ... England and was ... important strategic spot which would enable England to invade ... Continent at any time. Calais was well defended but had to surrender after ... year of siege. Edward was very angry at ... people of Calais and promised to spare ... city and its people only if six leading burghers be executed. They appeared before ... English King with bare heads, bare feet, and ropes around their necks. This scene provided Rodin with ... theme for his masterpiece (*continued in unit 40*).

Unit 38

The Use of Tenses. Articles with *Of*-phrases

Ex. 1. Contrast the Present Perfect and the Present Perfect Progressive Tense.

1. I like his work. He (work) in oil of late and (do) one or two rather striking things this week. 2. I (be) up since about six. I (sketch) for hours. 3. I really don't know what he (do) all this time. 4. Ever since it happened I (pretend) to myself that it was an accident. 5. I (tell) you so for years, but you never (pay) any attention. 6. They (take)

her from one specialist to another since she was two and it not (be) of the slightest use. 7. He (revise) for his history exam for weeks and I believe he will do well. 8. Mr. Wood (try) to start his car for the last twenty minutes and is beginning to despair. 9. I know what you (work) at these last days. You (discover) any new facts? 10. They (discuss) the case for hours but (be unable) to come to any decision yet. 11. We (read) this book since September and (read) only 70 pages. 12. I (buy) things and I (find) gloves at last. 13. I (see) this girl somewhere. 14. He (train) this team for a year but they (make) great progress. 15. I am going to the dentist's. I don't think me ever (feel) such pain before. 16. I think we (make) the wrong turn. We (drive) on this road for twenty minutes and (not see) a single house.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. — Почему ты сидишь здесь? — Я могу сидеть там, где мне нравится, не так ли?
2. — Сколько времени вы здесь сидите? — Около часа. X Она больна уже неделю.
4. — Ты внимательно слушаешь, Том? — Да, я могу повторить все, что вы сказали. 5. Я знаю его. Я знаю его уже три года. Он славный парень. 6. У нас не было такой жаркой погоды уже тридцать лет. 7. Подожди минутку. Я должен вымыть руки. Я красил дверь на кухне. 8. — Вы не видели его на этой неделе, да? — Да нет, видел почти каждый день. 9. — Я могу повидать мистера Тренга? — Мистера Тренга? Он не был здесь с понедельника. 10. Элен ищет Джона. Ты не видела его случайно? 11. А теперь, дорогая, пей чай. Ты слишком много болтаешь. Твой чай стынет. 12. Мне просто интересно, где ты был. Ты что, не мог хотя бы позвонить? 13. Посмотри, что ты сделал! Я пыталась решить этот кроссворд (puzzle) целый час. Мне это почти удалось, а ты все испортил! 14. Я устала от этой рекламы. Я слушаю ее по несколько раз в день вот уже три месяца. 15. Ты все еще готовишь? Пора накрывать на стол. Гости сейчас придут.

Ex. 3. Complete the following sentences, using the Present Perfect Progressive.

Model: I'm cold because ... (swim). — *I'm cold because I've been swimming for an hour.*

1. The meat is still hard though it (cook). 2. He is tired because he (run around the town) looking for a birthday present. 3. He is soaked to the skin as he (stand in the rain). 4. I can't get through to him though I (call him) several times. 5. We are not at all tired though we (work in the garden). 6. Her face is flushed because she (hurry to the station). 7. She isn't ready for the examination though she

(read up). 8. She is angry with Harold though he (send her flowers) every day lately. 9. I have a headache because I (work on the computer) all day. 10. The children are very agitated, they (play) hide and seek all afternoon. 11. My feet hurt because I (shop) all day. 12. I am getting very frustrated because I (try) to fix this fax for an hour. 13. My garden looks beautiful because I (transplant) the flowers all last week. 14. I have a cut on my hand because I (cut) the vegetables for the party. 15. My hand is numb because I (write) Christmas cards all evening. 16. I need to stretch my legs because I (drive) for too long.

Ex. 4. Make up your own sentences combining the words in two columns

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. to build the theatre | a) for two years |
| 2. to discuss these problems | b) the whole month |
| 3. to help with the work | c) since she came |
| 4. to teach somebody | d) for years |
| 5. to happen | e) while I have been away |
| 6. to read | f) long |
| 7. to play tennis | g) since lunch time |
| 8. to snow hard | h) since early morning |
| 9. to look for something | i) since I returned |
| 10. to translate an article | j) this week |
| 11. to cry | k) for 2 hours |
| 12. to wait | l) for twenty minutes |
| 13. to work | |
| 14. to drive | |
| 15. to train | |

Ex. 5. Open the brackets using the necessary tenses.

That evening Matilda, her parents and her brother (sit) in the living-room, eating their suppers on their knees in front of the telly. They (watch) an American soap-opera, for some hours already. 'Mummy,' Matilda said. 'You (mind) if I (eat) my supper in the dining-room as then I (be able) to read my book?' Her father glanced up sharply and said that as far as he (remember) supper always (be) a family gathering and no one (allow) to leave the table till it (finish). 'But we never (be) at the table. We always eat off our knees.' 'What is wrong with watching the telly?' the father's voice suddenly (become) soft and dangerous. Matilda (keep) quiet but she felt anger (boil up) inside her. She (understand) it was wrong to hate her parents like this, but she (find) it very hard not to do so. All the reading she (do) (give) her a view of life that they never (see). She

(be) sure if they (read) a little Dickens or Kipling they (discover) that there (be) more to life than cheating people and watching television. The anger inside her (go on) boiling and as she (lie) in bed that night she made a decision to revenge on her parents in some way or another.

Ex. 6. Comment on the use of articles in the of-phrases.

1. She has the face of an angel and the character of a man. 2. We have two minutes to have a quick cup of coffee. 3. Her coat is made from the skin of a racoon. 4. A new bell was placed on the roof of the church. 5. The roof of a house needs regular care. 6. We've come to you for a piece of sensible advice. 7. The beginning of the film was rather mysterious. 8. I must buy a block of cigarettes for my husband. 9. The block of cigarettes cost me ten dollars. 10. This critic possesses a dry sense of humour. 11. Susan bought a new piece of furniture for her sitting-room. 12. Your results will be tested at the end of the school year. 13. A spot of colour appeared on her face. 14. The milk boiled over the edge of the pot. 15. Margaret is ambitious and she is always at the top of the class. 16. The cover of a children's book should be bright and attractive.

Ex. 7. Insert the right article.

1. The teacher wanted the pupils to give ... gist of ... story. 2. Usually you can give ... gist of ... story only after you have read it. 3. I must say that I love you from ... bottom of my heart. 4. A flock of birds settled on ... roof of ... cathedral. 5. At last ... dream of his life came true. 6. ... word of ... encouragement could have helped him then. 7. ... end of ... novel made me cry. 8. Dorian has ... strong sense of ... duty. 9. Most people in big cities live in ... blocks of ... flats. 10. Somebody has broken ... back of ... chair. 11. ... back of ... chair should be hard to help the child not to stoop. 12. ... cover of... book was unusual. 13. ... price of ... car very much depends on its quality. 14. And now comes ... end of ... class. 15. It all happened in ... middle of ... night at ... end of May.

Ex. 8. Translate into English.

1. Лицо человека — зеркало его души. 2. Сердце женщины непредсказуемо. 3. Фигура топ-модели должна быть идеальной. 4. Каждый человек — архитектор своего счастья. 5. Давай выйдем на балкон. Хочется глотнуть свежего воздуха. 6. Я не забуду вас до конца своих дней. 7. Я всегда кладу кусочек сахара в кофе, но не больше. 8. Ты идешь в магазин? Купи мне, пожалуйста, баночку

джема и пакетик сливок. 9. Мне нужна банка сгущенного молока, чтобы испечь этот торт. 10. Грабители услышали сирену, полицейской машины и бросились бежать. 11. Синди была олицетворением отчаяния. 12. Иногда в конце сентяблями в начале октября бывают проблески хорошей погоды. 13. Мудрость человека в очень большой степени зависит от его жизненного опыта. 14. Развитие науки — это вклад в будущее страны. 15. Идите по направлению, к башне и в конце улицы вы увидите желтое четырехэтажное здание.

Unit 39

The Use of the Past Perfect Tense. Articles

Ex. 1. State the type of the Past Perfect Tense.

1. By that time he had already changed his mind. 2. By the time we got there they had sold all the books. 3. When we came the typist had already typed the papers. 4. After we had washed our hands we went upstairs. 5. I had known him for three years by the time we moved to Liverpool. 6. By the time I left the office the storm had already stopped. 7. When I met him he had already lived in Paris for ten years. 8. I had been at home for about three hours when you rang me. 9. She said she had been very busy since we met last. 10. We learned that somebody had deleted the entire research from the computers. 11. I thought he had fallen from the tree. 12. We were worried because we had not heard from them for quite awhile. 13. In the morning we found out that the river had frozen solid during the night. 14. By the time we arrived everybody had left. 15. I was really upset to learn that he had been worried about us.

Ex. 2. Combine the following pairs of sentences. One sentence should be in the Past Perfect Tense. Add any words you need.

1. Pedro studied French. He went to Paris. 2. We went to the cinema. The picture began. 3. Hob ate all the cakes. Olaf came to the house. 4. Margaret finished her homework. Mother turned on the radio. 5. I got home. The rain began. 6. John bought a new exercise-book. He completed his old one. 7. The children came to the party at 4 o'clock. Ann and Helen decorated the room. 8. I bought some flowers. I gave them to Mrs. Priestly. 9. We finished dinner. Susan took the dishes to the kitchen. 10. I told her my name. She gave me the letter. 11. I recognized her. My mother described her to me very

well. 12. The militia-man stopped the man. He crossed the street in the wrong place. 13. Nobody knew when he came. He entered the house through the back door. 14. I thought he knew English well. He lived in England for some years. 15. I knew he could help me. He fixed my friends' cars.

Ex. 3. Complete the following sentences, using the Past Perfect Tense.

1. He told her that he (buy a TV set the year before). 2. The man at the station said that the train (leave already). 3. Mary told me that she (not get a letter from her son yet). 4. He understood that he (get off at the wrong station). 5. He said that her parents (always lived in the country). 6. I didn't know that she (change her address). 7. He didn't remember how it all (happen). 8. We were sure that she (tell the truth). 9. I saw that the child (catch a cold). 10. She hoped that I (pay for the ticket already). 11. When we woke up next morning and looked out of the window we understood that it (rain heavily during the night). 12. When we came back, the telegram (arrive already). 13. When I got to the station the train (already leave). 14. The rain (stop) when we started. 15. When I finished school my elder sister (be a teacher for 3 years). 16. We (make all the arrangements already) when we learned that he wouldn't come. 17. As soon as they (take a decision) they could discuss less important questions. 18. After we (make a fire) it became warm. 19. When I (throw out the old newspapers and magazines) I could arrange my books nicely on the shelf. 20. After he (pay the money for the plane) he had very little left in his pockets. 21. I met her soon after I (learn the news). 22. When he (finish his work) he went to bed.

Ex. 4. Practise the following according to the model.

Model: Mary told us a story which she had never told us before.

1. When I was at the Tretyakov Picture Gallery last, I saw some pictures there I 2. At their dinner party we met some people we 3. I went for a walk and decided to take the road I... . 4. He taught me Judo, in a way nobody 5. He showed us the picture he 6. She spoke of something she 7. The lecture was very interesting, we heard something we 8. The dinner was unusual. I ate something I 9. When I was snorkelling I saw some colours underwater I 10. When he travelled in Italy he saw architecture he 11. When my tooth hurt last week I felt pain I 12. When I was in India I tasted some vegetables I 13. They tried some drinks at the party they 14. A friend of mine went to Spain for his vacations. He tried windsurfing there which he ...

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Почему ты не вымыл руки, Томми? Иди быстро в ванную. Обед стынет. 2. Почему ты не принес книгу? Ты же знаешь, как она мне нужна. 3. Почему ты открывал окно? Я же тебя не просила. 4. Почему ты открыл окно? В комнате холодно. 5. Почему ты пришел один? Мы приглашали вас обоих. 6. Почему ты ходил в кино один? Почему не взял с собой Лену? 7. Зачем ты ему это сказал? Он теперь все расскажет маме. 8. Зачем ты ему об этом рассказал? Мы просили об этом никому не говорить. 9. Почему ты не положила книгу на место? Я ее никак не могу найти. 10. Почему ты не положила книгу на место, когда прочла ее? Мне пришлось ее искать. 11. Зачем ты включила свет? Еще не стемнело. 12. Она искала на экране ошибку, которую сделала накануне. 13. Мы купили билеты на фильм и сидели у фонтана, ожидая начала сеанса. 14. Она выгладила белье и теперь аккуратно укладывала его на полки. 15. Мария позвонила родителям и готовилась к отъезду в Карпаты.

Ex. 6. Match the words as in the model.

Model: a word of advice

- | | | |
|---------------|----|-----------------|
| 1. a cube | of | a) snow |
| 2. a tube | | b) furniture |
| 3. a breath | | c) sheep |
| 4. a sum | | d) gel |
| 5. a bar | | e) flats |
| 6. a flash | | f) ice |
| 7. a flake | | g) cabbage |
| 8. an article | | h) money |
| 9. a grain | | i) lightning |
| 10. a spell | | j) dust |
| 11. a drop | | k) chocolate |
| 12. a speck | | l) rain |
| 13. a herd | | m) good weather |
| 14. ahead | | n) air |
| 15. a block | | o) truth |

Ex. 7. Insert articles.

1. He lived in ... small neat cottage. ... roof of ... cottage was red. 2. Mr. Black is ... man of ... honour. 3. He leaned on ... back of ... chair. 4. ... heart of ... woman is strange. 5. She despised him from ... bottom of her heart. 6. ... depth of her feeling im-

pressed him. 7. Miss Carter was ... daughter of ... engineer. 8. Mrs. Black was ... wife of ... well-known artist. 9. Their house was reached by ... flight of stone steps. 10. When she heard the news ... expression of great relief came upon her. 11. When they stepped inside they found themselves in ... sort of ... office. 12. The girl he loved was Laura Merton, ... daughter of ... retired colonel. 13. He now arranged with Spencer, ... editor of *The Times Literary Supplements*, to write articles on current French Literature. 14. He was chatting with the host's wife, ... lady in purple trousers, when he was called to the telephone. 15. He's Doctor Evans, ... nephew of ... Captain Riley.

Ex. 8. Put questions to the words in bold type.

1. Max plays his guitar from morning till night. 2. **Amanda** went to a disco with her boyfriend. 3. I really need a **pair of new gloves**. 4. Mrs. White manages her house **perfectly**. 5. Most students have to get up **early in the morning**. 6. Mr. Marshall has been running this business **for ten years already**. 7. I've come to you **for support**. 8. You needn't worry as **she'll return soon**. 9. He was a wonderful **dancer** when he was young. 10. Sandy has always been an **efficient** manager. 11. Barbara had to join the weight-watchers' club **last year**. 12. Nature should be protected **by every person living on our planet**. 13. **Something** strange is going on here. 14. We shall never be able to become **children** again. 15. Mary never parts **with her twin** sister.

Unit 40

The Use of Tenses

Ex. 1. Make up dialogues on the following model, replacing the phrase underlined in the model by each of the phrases below.

Model: — Have you ever **won a bet**? — Yes, I have. — When did you win it? — I won it last year.

1. Break a cup. 2. Build a shed. 3. Buy a CD player. 4. Catch a fish.
5. Tear a ligament. 6. Dig a deep hole. 7. Draw a map. 8. Drive a car.
9. Eat a pudding. 10. Fly a plane. 11. Keep a dog. 12. Lose money.
13. Ride a bicycle. 14. See a shark. 15. Teach a lesson. 16. Write a poem.
17. Wind a clock. 18. Break your arm. 19. Go sailing. 20. Sing in a choir.

Ex. 2. Practise the Past Perfect Tense in Reported Speech, using the following verbs: *notice, declare, imply, whisper, state, assure, inform, reply.*

1. He has bought himself a new hat. 2. We have finished our work. 3. She has done her work well. 4. I haven't told you anything yet. 5. She has written me a long letter. 6. We haven't heard the news. 7. She hasn't given me the present. 8. I have been there many times. 9. She has explained everything to them several times. 10. He has burnt himself. 11. Somebody has spilt milk on the carpet. 12. He has fallen off a ladder. 13. They have bought a new car. 14. We have driven here within an hour. 15. I have known it all along. 16. No one has asked me what to do next. 17. He has drunk too much water. 18. The wind has blown steadily from the north. The referee has thrown the angry player out of the game. The judges have chosen the German shepherd as the winner of the dog show.

Ex. 3. Combine two simple sentences into one, using the Past Perfect Tense.

Model: He looked out of the window. The plane took off. — *When he looked out of the window the plane had taken off.*

1. I reached the station. The train left. 2. I entered the hall. The concert began. 3. I saw her. She dropped the letter into the box. 4. Mary entered the classroom. The teacher began the lesson. 5. The Browns came to the airport. Their friends arrived. 6. They came into the dining-room. Their daughter laid the table. 7. I came home. They had dinner. 8. We left home. The rain began. 9. We didn't expect him that day. He came earlier. 10. He knew the news. He read the newspaper. 11. He explained to us how to start the program. We began to practise. 12. The ticket office opened. A long line formed. 13. I got into the garage. Jack added air to the tires. 14. Susan collected all the data. She started her report. 15. I remembered the chicken in the oven. It was overcooked.

Ex. 4. Add explanations, using the Past Perfect Tense.

1. The workers were tired. 2. The room was dark. 3. The house was empty. 4. He sat very still. 5. The car was empty. 6. The children were frightened. 7. The house was in disorder. 8. She was alone in the house. 9. Tom ate nothing for lunch. 10. He was going home. 11. The computer was out of order. 12. The headache passed. 13. The fields were green. 14. The data were reliable. 15. There was nothing in the file.

Ex. 5. Use the Past Perfect Tense where necessary.

1. She told me her name after he (leave). 2. He (do) nothing before he saw me. 3. My friend enjoyed his food as soon as he (taste) it. 4. He thanked me for what I (do). 5. I was sorry that I (hurt) him. 6. After they (go) I sat down and rested. 7. Did you post the letter you (write)? 8. As soon as you (go) I wanted to see you again. 9. They dressed after they (wash). 10. After you (go) I went to sleep. 11. When we arrived the party (begin). 12. He died after he (be) ill for a long time. 13. Why didn't you go to the doctor after I (tell) you to? 14. But before he arrived to England he (forget) a lot of words.

Ex. 6. Construct sentences, using the Past Perfect Tense.

Model: Hardly — when, scarcely — when, no sooner — than.

Hardly had my head touched the pillow when I fell asleep.

1. Come home — switch on TV. 2. Walk a mile — rain. 3. Sit down — telephone. 4. Come to the office — the boss call. 5. Close the door — the bell ring. 6. Go out — begin to rain. 7. Start the trip — the temperature fall. 8. Raise the sails — the wind drop. 9. Open the bag — find the keys. 10. Read the tale — start laughing. 11. Plan the vacation — the weather change. 12. Start to work — unexpected guests arrive.

Ex. 7. Translate into English, using the Past Perfect Tense.

1. Не успели мы подойти к остановке, как подъехал автобус. 2. Не успел я положить трубку, как телефон зазвонил снова. 3. Едва он закрыл глаза, как тотчас же заснул. 4. Не успели мы добраться до станции, как подошел поезд. 5. Не успела я дописать последнее предложение, как зазвенел звонок. 6. Не успели они закончить обед, как вошел новый гость. 7. Не успел он ответить мне, как его прервали. 8. Не успели мы понять, что произошло, как к нам подошел полицейский. 9. Едва мы его увидели, как поняли, что что-то случилось. 10. Едва она вошла в комнату, как все замолчали. 11. Едва я вошла в комнату, как поняла, что в ней уже кто-то побывал. 12. Не успели они познакомиться, как он пригласил ее поехать к его родителям за город. 13. Не успели мы устроиться в номере, как раздался стук в дверь. 14. Не успела я сообразить, что произошло, как все бросились к выходу. 15. Едва он успел произнести несколько слов, как раздался странный шум в конце зала. 16. Не успела я поздороваться, как она расплакалась. 17. Едва я дотронулась до плиты, как почувствовала, что обожгла палец. 18. Не успела я включить телевизор,

как начали передавать новости. 19. Не успела она надуть шарик, как он лопнул. 20. Не успела она вернуться домой, как он начал ворчать.

Ex. 8. Translate into English, using the Past Perfect Tense.

1. Мы закончили работу к пяти часам. 2. К концу года он научился говорить по-французски. 3. Он сказал, что говорил об этом с директором. 4. Так как мы не получили ответа на наше письмо, мы послали им телеграмму. 5. Он сказал, что купил видеомагнитофон. 6. Когда я вернулся из отпуска, он уже поправился. 7. Он сказал, что хорошо подготовился к экзаменам. 8. Он вернул мне словарь, после того как перевел статьи. 9. Вчера он купил часы, так как потерял свои старые. 10. Мой друг был очень бледен, когда я его встретил. Я понял, что что-то произошло. 11. Я был дома уже два часа, когда он пришел. 12. К концу недели я сделал половину работы. 13. Все знали, что они друзья с войны. 14. Мы прочли несколько книг о Дали, прежде чем пошли в галерею. 15. Когда он ушел, я вспомнил, что не вернул ему дискету. 16. Я провел свои каникулы недалеко от Фокстауна. Мой друг посоветовал мне поехать туда. 17. Я увидел его прежде, чем остановился поезд. 18. Когда он вошел в комнату, он рассмеялся, увидев, что я сделала. 19. Джек решил, что кто-то украл его велосипед. 20. Когда мы подошли к даче, то увидели, что замок был взломан.

Ex. 9. Insert the right article (continued from Unit 37).

When ... English and ... French agreed to ... truce, King Edward returned to ... British Isles. He celebrated his victories in France with magnificent tournaments, and founded ... Order of the Garter. ... manner of its origin is one of ... amusing curiosities of history. ... King was dancing at ... ball with ... Countess of Shrewsbury, when she lost ... garter. ... King picked it up and fastened it around her knee. Some of... people at... court couldn't repress their smiles, and ... King rebuked them with ... phrase, 'Honi soit qui mal y pense' (Shame upon him who thinks evil of it). He took ... garter as... symbol of his new order of knighthood and made this phrase its motto. ... order has never been enlarged from its original origin of twenty five besides the monarch. The Black Prince continued to campaign in France. ... Prince of Wales even captured ... King of France and took him to London, where he was lavishly entertained by ... King Edward. In medieval fashion, ... French sovereign was ransomed for three thousand crowns of gold.

Unit 41

The Use of Tenses. Articles with the Nouns *Bed, School, Table, Town, Jail, Prison, Hospital, University, College*

Ex. 1. Make up sentences using the Past Perfect Tense.

We all knew	WHO	come give leave	show explain sell	tell bring grow
Did she tell you	WHY	lose shine	shake ring	meet hurt
They couldn't remember	WHAT	do hold	buy promise	ask read
He asked		how much what colour which	how long how often where	

Ex. 2. Construct sentences according to the model.

- Models:* 1. ... by the end of June. — *She had done it by the end of June.*
2. ... before you asked me about it. — *I had done it before you asked me about it.*
3. ... by the time I arrived in Glasgow. — *They had called him by the time I arrived in Glasgow.*

Ex. 3. Translate into Russian and then back into English.

1. Hardly had five o'clock struck on the morning of the first of January, when Bessie brought coffee into my little room and found me already nearly dressed. 2. Hardly had I read three chapters, when I heard a conversation going on in the next room. 3. Scarcely had the wolves heard the barking of my dog, when they stopped and after a few moments turned and disappeared. 4. Hardly had we made ourselves comfortable in the sitting-room, when the old friend came in, smoking a long pipe. 5. No sooner had he left the room than another lad came in. 6. Scarcely had Nell settled herself on the sofa, when she fell asleep. 7. No sooner had she sat down than she heard the sound of the front door bell. 8. Hardly had the conference call begun when something clicked and the communication was lost. 9. Hardly had the train stopped when the passengers rushed out with their bags, cases, and parcels. 10. Scarcely had the wise woman looked at the photo of the lost man when she said where he was. 11. No sooner

had spring come than everybody took off heavy winter clothes. 12. Hardly had the boss given instructions when the staff set to work.

Ex. 4. Ask and answer questions about the text.

Mr. Brown was in Edinburgh on business. He had caught a train from King's Cross station in London at ten o'clock that morning and now he had arrived in Edinburgh. It was five o'clock in the evening. He had enjoyed a comfortable journey and had had a good lunch on the train.

He had booked a room at the Queen's hotel a few days before, so when he got off the train in Naverley Station, he took a taxi straight to the hotel.

Mr. Brown had not been to Edinburgh for many years and he was looking forward to seeing the city again. So when he had finished breakfast, he decided to go for a walk before keeping his first appointment at seven o'clock.

He came out from the hotel into Princess Street, one of the widest and most beautiful streets in the world. As Mr. Brown walked along he remembered some of the exciting events that had happened there and some of the great men who had walked along the same street — the things they had done and the books they had written. He was surprised when he looked at his watch and saw it was almost eleven...

Ex. 5. Open the brackets to make the story complete.

Meeting Mr. Rochester

One day in January I had a free afternoon, as Adele (fall) ill and I (allow) to walk to the village (post) a letter. It was a bright, frosty day and I was enjoying the fresh air and the exercise. I (stop) on the road and watched the sun (set). And then I (hear) a horse (approach). Suddenly there (be) a crash as the horse (slip) and (fall) on the ice. I (run) (see) if I (can) (help). The traveller (swear) furiously while he (try) to rise from the ice. Obviously he (hurt) his leg because he (sit) down quickly. 'I (help) you, sir?' I asked. 'I not (break) any bones!' he said crossly. 'But I not (leave) you here alone till someone (come) to your help, sir,' I insisted. 'I not (want) you (fetch) any help, just help me walk to the horse.' In a moment he (ride off) in the distance. Half an hour later I came back to the house where I (have) to stay until I (teach) Adele to speak English. When I entered, the servants told me that Mr. Rochester (arrive) and that the doctor (examine) him at the moment as he (have) an accident on the road.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. К тому времени, как я проснулся, было совсем светло, так как солнце поднялось и было высоко в небе. 2. Когда она пришла, дети уже спали. Ей сказали, что они заснули в девять. 3. К 20 февраля все студенты сдали сочинения. 4. Мы не виделись с тех пор, как были на Новогоднем балу. 5. Я не видел ее на Новогоднем балу. 6. Не выходи на улицу, дождь еще не прекратился. 7. Дождь еще не прекратился, когда мы вышли на улицу. 8. Я не могу дать тебе книгу, я ее еще не прочитал. 9. В воскресенье я прочитала очень интересную книгу. Если хочешь, я могу дать тебе ее прочитать. 10. Много было написано об этом фильме, прежде чем мы увидели его. 11. К пяти часам она приготовила обед и ждала нас. 12. Мы были еще далеко от станции, когда увидели, что подходит поезд. 13. Они еще не дошли до леса, как началась гроза. 14. Он сказал нам, что ездил в отпуск к морю. 15. Мы спросили, какие страны он посетил. 16. Мы были очень удивлены, узнав, что она закончила школу в 14 лет.

Ex. 7. Insert the right article.

1. Go to ... bed with the lamb and rise with the lark. 2. All are not saints that go to ... church. 3. Early to ... bed and early to rise makes a man wealthy, healthy and wise. 4. Rita refuses to go to ... hospital unless I look after her fish. 5. She studies hotel management at ... college. 6. Doctors advise people to sleep on... hard bed. 7. ... college is proud of its famous graduates. 8. ... prison doesn't solve many social problems. 9. The priest goes to ... prison once ... week. 10. How many times have I told you not to put your shoes under ... bed! 11. Eva has been in ... town ... fortnight but she hasn't called me yet. 12. Life in ... provincial town left him a lot of time for self-education. 13. My parents have always wanted me to go to ... university. 14. Can I give you ... lift to ... school? 15. There is ... old hospital in our area.

Ex. 8. Translate into English paying attention to the use of articles.

1. Я постелила постель, можешь идти спать. 2. Он встал, поднял газету и положил ее на кровать. 3. Я иду спать. 4. Каждое воскресенье бабушка ходила в церковь. 5. Часы на церкви пробили пять. 6. Она преподавала рисование в начальной школе. 7. Это была хорошая школа и ей было жаль расставаться с ней. 8. Мы вместе ходили в школу. 9. Сколько времени он лежал в больнице? 10. Она сидела за столом и штопала носки. 11. Мой сын всегда гуляет после школы. 12. Он был директором школы, где я учился. 13. После окончания школы я хотел пойти в университет. 14. Его брат

сидит в тюрьме за угон машины. 15. Тюрьма была старым зданием, стоявшим в конце переулка. 16. В Америке дорожная полиция может отправить водителя в тюрьму за нарушение правил дорожного движения.

Ex. 9. Make the correct choice of one of the words in brackets.

1. There were definitely (fewer, less) cars on the circle road that Sunday. 2. You left the rod (laying, lying) on the floor and it may get damaged. 3. You really need (well, good) health to participate in such a hiking trip. 4. I do not wish to discuss this matter (further, farther). 5. The data (show, shows) that the average income of citizens has increased during the last three years. 6. I (read, have read) all day on Sunday. 7. The clarinets sounded (bad, badly). 8. We need (many, much) more computers in this office. 9. He walks more (quicker, quickly) than she does. 10. Jane and (myself, I) have become close friends. 11. Todd finished the work faster than (I, me). 12. The dinner was (the, a) wonderful meal put together with style and elegance. 13. How many chapters (have, did) you read till now? 14. Can you tell me how much money is left? — Yes, I can. I (have kept, kept) a daily account of our expenses. 15. Between you and (I, me), I do not like our new boss very much.

Unit 42

The Past Perfect Progressive Tense. Revision of Articles

Ex. 1. Contrast the Past Indefinite with the Past Perfect Tense.

1. The train (arrive) two minutes ago. 2. By 6 o'clock we (arrive) at the station. 3. When Jane Eyre (finish) school she (remain) there to work as a teacher. 4. Before the teacher (enter) the classroom, the pupils (prepare) everything for the lesson. 5. When the bell (ring), the teacher (enter) the classroom and the lesson (begin). 6. I (have dinner) at home before I (go) to the theatre. 7. When I (learn) that my friend (arrive) I (decide) to visit her. 8. Yesterday we (visit) the Russian Museum. When we (come) home we (tell) our sister about everything we (see) there. 9. On Saturday my friend and I (decide) to go to the theatre. We (buy) tickets for the play and at six o'clock we (meet) at the entrance. When we (take) our seats I (remember) that I (leave) my opera glasses at home. 10. He (enter) the office, (come) to my desk and (stop) in front of me. I (know) at once what he was going to say. I (suspect) for a long time that he was going to leave. 11. The company

hired Mr. Spencer because he (live) in India, for five years. 12. He (lose) confidence in himself before he (be fired). 13. I was very upset. They (cancel) the party after I (make) all arrangements for it. 14. The children (be disappointed) because they-(hope) to go with us. 15. Although the morning forecast (predict) rain, the afternoon (be clear).

Ex. 2. Change the Simple Past into the Past Perfect. Add an adverbial modifier of time or an adverbial clause.

Model: We did our work in the evening. — *We had done our work by 7 in the evening.*

She was ill for 2 days. — *She had been ill for 2 days, when I heard about it.*

1. Peter and Ann finished school in 1980. 2. My sister learned English at school. 3. They took their exams in January. 4. He didn't go far in the forest last night as it began to rain. 5. She didn't hear from him last month. 6. On Friday Peter came up with several ideas about his research project. 7. I forgot that Sunday was her birthday. 8. Somebody entered the house before us. 9. At the end of the month we found that we made some profit. 10. We finished the celebration at 11.00 p. m. 11. The new books arrived on Tuesday morning. 12. We didn't hear from them for three days. 13. I bought the groceries on Wednesday. 14. I studied the manual carefully. 15. The morning mail came at 7:00 a. m.

Ex. 3. Complete the sentences, using the Past Perfect Tense.

1. When Jane came to Brighton she remembered 2. Ted was late for the lecture because 3. When Nancy came to the police station she learned that 4. Lanny returned to the native village after 5. Tom and Becky left the cave after 6. Aunt Polly didn't believe that Tom 7. The house turned out to be much bigger than 8. We were not surprised at the turn of the situation as 9. Miranda speaks four foreign languages fluently. It's not Surprising because 10. I fell in love before 11. His clothes were dirty, evidently 12. Pamela finally decided to go to the party as 13. Ted wasn't hungry because. 14. I was late, the concert 15. The streets were wet, surely

Ex. 4. Complete the following sentences.

1. Hardly had I entered the University 2. Scarcely had she opened the umbrella 3. No sooner had he raised his hand 4. Hardly had they entered the hall 5. Hardly had she opened her eyes 6. Hardly had the bus pulled into the station 7. No sooner had I

realized what was happening ... 8. ... when she noticed her friend. 9. ... when she knocked at the door. 10. ... than the lights went out. 11. ... when the door closed. 12. ... than it was blown away. 13. ... when the light went down.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Едва она начала рассказывать свою историю, как он побледнел. 2. Не успела она и слова молвить, как незнакомец вошел в дом. 3. Едва мы вышли из машины, как начался дождь. 4. Не успели мы закончить перевод, как преподаватель собрал тетради. 5. Не успела я закончить упражнение, как ко мне пришли друзья. 6. Едва она исправила одну ошибку, как сделала вторую. 7. Едва закончилось собрание, как всех пригласили на концерт. 8. Не успела она закрыть окно, как началась гроза. 9. Едва они вышли на улицу, как ребенок заплакал. 10. Не успел выпасть снег, как дети начали играть в снежки. 11. Она была счастлива — она получила стипендию университета. 12. Не успела я намекнуть ей, как Лилиана угадала мой секрет. 13. Катя накупила массу вещей: было ясно, что она получила зарплату. 14. К тому времени, как я заглянула на кухню, мой муж уже вымыл посуду. 15. Вам понравился вчера спектакль? — Очень. Я так давно не был в театре.

Ex. 6. Translate the following sentences into Russian and then back into English.

1. We were very surprised. Nobody had known that he wrote verses. 2. By the time we returned they had already come to an agreement. 3. By the time we reached the narrow entrance to the bay the sun had gone down and the breeze had dropped. We had been walking for several hours and I could hardly drag my feet. 4. Since the beginning of the play he had been watching a dark-haired girl sitting in front of him. He had noticed her at once. 5. At last I wrote the letter I had been trying to write for weeks. 6. We had been walking too fast and I was out of breath. 7. I gave them lunch at 2 o'clock. They had been playing on the beach for hours and were ready for food. 8. He had known the girl since she was a small child and he had been managing her affairs since she came of age. 9. When the storm finally broke out we had already been trampling through the forest for hours. 10. We had been driving for several hours already when something on the front panel drew my attention. The temperature gauge (*зд.* стрелка термометра) was moving towards the hot line. The engine had begun to overheat. 11. It was a peaceful evening. We sat on the porch enjoying the sunset. Even the kids were quiet after they had spent hours on the beach hunting for shells. 12. I had commuted two

hours each way before I moved to the city. 13. I had suffered the pain of a sore throat for two days before I went to see a doctor. By the time I arrived at his office I had been exhausted. 14. The odor Roosevelt had shown interest in conservation long before he became President of the United States. 15. The amplifier had sounded strange for several hours before it stopped working.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Он сказал, что изучает английский три года. 2. Они плыли 10 дней, когда, наконец, увидели землю. 3. Он сказал, что работает в этой лаборатории с тех пор, как закончил институт. 4. Когда часы пробили 10, она ждала меня уже полчаса. 5. Кристина сказала, что любит Эндрю с тех пор, как в первый раз увидела его. 6. Им было жарко, и они устали. Они все утро играли в футбол. 7. Он сказал, что давно наблюдает за этой командой, и она ему всегда нравилась. 8. Мы не могли выйти, так как всю ночь шел дождь. 9. Она танцевала гораздо лучше. Вероятно, брат учил ее. 10. Я почти два часа искал свой учебник, когда он позвонил и сказал, что нашел мой учебник у себя в портфеле. 11. К тому времени, как мы добрались до леса, дождь уже прекратился и ярко светило солнце. 12. Дети старались не смотреть друг на друга. Они опять поссорились. 13. Я посмотрел в окно. Ночью опять шел дождь. 14. Я очень обрадовалась, увидев эту книгу, я давно пыталась найти ее. 15. В комнате пахло табаком. Кто-то там курил.

Ex. 8. Insert articles where necessary.

Sunday always began with ... Bible story, followed by ... breakfast of ... baked beans. After ... breakfast... children studied their Sunday school-lessons, and then they drove to... church, which was ... good mile off. It was ... large, old-fashioned church, with ... galleries and ... long pews with ... high red-cushioned seats. After ... church came ... Sunday-school, and then they went home to ... dinner, which was always the same on Sunday — ... cold beef, ... baked potatoes, and ... rice pudding. They did not go to ... church in ... afternoon, but listened to ... reading of ... *Sunday Visitors*, ... religious paper, of which Katy was ... editor. On ... whole, Sunday was ... sweet and pleasant day, and ... kids thought so too and put themselves to ... bed peaceful and happy.

Ex. 9. Translate into English.

1. Если ты будешь так медленно одеваться, то опоздаешь в школу.
2. — А в госпитале есть лаборатория? — Конечно. 3. Его отправили в тюрьму за воровство. 4. Дорога в школу шла через поле. 5. На

кровати сидел малыш и хныкал. 6. Боюсь, что на следующей неделе меня не будет в городе. 7. Она преподает физику в средней школе. 8. Если не заплатите долги, то придется отправить вас в тюрьму. 9. Давай повесим картину над кроватью. 10. Если плохо себя чувствуешь, то оставайся в постели. 11. Не могу понять людей, которые завтракают в постели. 12. Это очень маленький городок с церковью, больницей, тюрьмой и двумя школами. 13. Стены тюрьмы были так высоки, что ничего нельзя было увидеть. 14. Город становился все больше, и людям нужна была новая церковь. 15. Многие люди по воскресеньям ходят в церковь.

Unit 43

The Past Perfect Progressive Tense. Adjectives as Adverbs

Ex. 1. Practise the Past Perfect Progressive Tense according to the model.

Model 1: He was short of breath, he (run all the way). — He was short of breath, as he had been running all the way.

1. His hands were dirty (work in the garden). 2. She did very well in the examinations (study hard through the term). 3. He was behind the class (not study properly). 4. Her eyes were red (cry). 5. She got used to his strange ways (live together for a long time). 6. She looked half asleep (rest). 7. She kept silent for some minutes (think over his words). 8. Everybody was laughing (Peter tell his funny stories). 9. They were very excited (argue for a long time). 10. The meteorite came closest to the Earth yesterday (approach our planet for the last two months). 11. I had blisters on my heels (wear my new shoes all day). 12. He suffered from allergy. The trees (bloom for the last month).

Model 2: They drove for 3 hours. Then they stopped. — After they had been driving for 3 hours, they stopped for lunch.

1. We walked for an hour. Then we understood that we had taken the wrong road. 2. He waited for her for an hour. Then he went away. 3. He worked at the laboratory for 4 years. Then he changed his job. 4. I thought the matter over for some time. Then I took a decision. 5. He looked through the latest papers and magazines for some time. Then he sat down to his report. 6. She watched television late into the night. Then she could not sleep. 7. He studied English for 3 years. *Then he went to England.* 8. *He lived in St. Petersburg up to 1995.* Then he moved to Moscow. 9. I played basketball for five hours.

Then my muscles were sore. 10. They tried to solve this problem for the last three weeks. Then they found the solution. 11. I did not sleep well for several days. Then during the game my coordination was not very good.

Ex. 2. Complete the following sentences using the Past Perfect or the Past Perfect Progressive Tenses.

1. He was late. And I was afraid that 2. When she came back, her eyes were red and swollen: it was clear that she 3. When we got off the train, I suddenly remembered that 4. She missed her lessons because 5. He seemed surprised when he saw me, evidently he had no idea that 6. Brian remembered the telephone conversation with Jack. Jack 7. She couldn't understand why Grace 8. I talked to him the other day and found out that 9. We found the place for the picnic and I took the basket out of the car. It was full. Mother 10. The man came closer and I realized that 11. I couldn't rewind the film in my camera and after some unsuccessful attempts I realized that 12. The children had stomach ache because

Ex. 3. Make up situations with the following phrases, using the Past Perfect or the Past Perfect Progressive Tenses.

... but when I came there ...
... but when we reached the station ...
... but when he arrived home ...
... but before I could say a word ...
... but when the police arrived ...
... but when the car disappeared ...
... but when we came, the game ...
... but when she opened her eyes ...
... but when he turned his head ...
... but when they woke up ...
... but when he realized his mistake...
... but when she at last made up her mind

Ex. 4. Develop the given clause into a complex or a compound sentence.

Model: It was snowing hard. The temperature had been gradually falling and soon it was snowing hard.

Or: It was snowing hard so the children had taken out their sleds.

Or: The weather had suddenly changed and it was snowing hard.

1. ... he had gone skating 2. ... she had been sleeping for 2 hours 3. ... they were walking home 4. ... we got off the bus

5. ... people were hurrying to and fro 6. ... night had fallen 7. ... it made a great impression on me 8. ... snowflakes had been falling all night long 9. ... we had done it 10. He had made his decision 11. ... she had forgotten him 12. Somebody had been following him 13. He accepted the invitation 14. He had been lying 15. He had paid for a week in advance

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Не успел он отойти и двух шагов от дома, как очутился лицом к лицу с Диком, который ждал его у крыльца уже десять минут. 2. Прежде чем он приехал к нам, он путешествовал по всей стране (throughout the country). 3. Он сказал, что они поднимут этот вопрос только после того, как обговорят все сами. 4. Прежде чем он приехал в Манчестер, он воспитывался в семье священника. Он ходил в школу с кузеном, который был на два месяца его старше. 5. Он еще раз перечитал то, что написал. 6. После обеда он отправился навестить друзей. Они условились о встрече еще накануне. 7. К тому времени как мы вернулись, они уже пришли к соглашению. 8. К полуночи она уже потеряла всякую надежду увидеть его и начала обзванивать больницы. 9. Я узнал, что ничего не было сделано, хотя я и оставил подробные инструкции. 10. Он абсолютно уверен, что видел этого человека раньше. 11. Я знала, что он был прав; он был прав с самого начала. 12. Не успел чайник закипеть, как она его тут же выключила. 13. Он свернул налево на перекрестке. Он был в этом доме прежде и хорошо знал дорогу. 14. Пейзаж, который он увидел напомнил ему о небольшом прибрежном городке на Средиземном море, где он отдыхал несколько лет назад. 15. В тот год он совершил поступок, который, как я думал, я никогда не смогу совершить. 16. Мы понимали, что они победили в этой игре случайно.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

Я только что закончил читать забавный рассказ о человеке по имени Дженнингс. В течение многих лет он просыпался в шесть часов, садился на свой старый велосипед, чтобы сэкономить на билете на автобус, и приезжал на работу на час раньше. Весь день он выписывал счета своим аккуратным почерком. После десяти лет безупречной службы он поднялся от должности младшего помощника клерка до старшего помощника клерка. Однажды Дженнингс не вышел на работу. Его начальник, который в течение многих лет немилосердно гонял его, нашел на столе Дженнингса записку, которую тот написал.

«Многие годы я добросовестно работал в вашем отделе. Многие годы вы грубо разговаривали со мной, вы даже кричали на меня, вы пытались подавить меня (break my spirit). Я получил наследство и купил эту компанию. Вы уволены!»

Ex. 7. Choose between the adjective and the adverb in each of the following sentences.

1. That looks (bad, badly). 2. The room looks (different, differently) since you painted the walls. 3. He remained (happy, happily) at home. 4. Your offer sounds (delightful, delightfully). 5. We are (near, nearly) ready to go. 6. Don't say anything. She feels (awkward, awkwardly) enough. 7. Can we put the flowers over there? These flowers smell too (sweet, sweetly) to my taste. 8. He looked at the children (tender, tenderly). 9. You made it really (easy, easily) for us. 10. The situation seemed (improper, improperly) to express my feelings. 11. Chuck felt (terrible, terribly) about missing his son's game. 12. She is thinking quite (serious, seriously) about changing her career. 13. The pie tastes (delicious, deliciously) with a bit of ice-cream. 14. My brother adds very (quick, quickly). 15. The old dog walked (lazy, lazily) towards me.

Ex. 8. Translate into English.

1. Дорога в школу была плохая. 2. На кровати сидел ребенок и читал книжку. 3. Я думаю, что его не будет в городе на следующей неделе. 4. Она работает в средней школе. 5. Мистера Доррита в тюрьму за долги. 6. А теперь тебе лучше лечь в постель? Над кроватью висела картина. 8. Тюрьма была разрушена в 1822 году. 9. Ты давно в городе? 10. Он подошел к кровати и взглянул на ребенка. 11. Церковь была полна людей. 12. Люди ходят в церковь молиться. 13. За что его посадили в тюрьму? 14. Почему ты прячешь свои игрушки под кроватью, Катя? 15. Он родился в маленьком южном городке.

Unit 44

The Future in the Past. The Sequence of Tenses

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences using the Perfect Progressive Tense forms.

1. Мы пользуемся этой машиной в течение трех лет. Она действовала безотказно (прекрасно). 2. Я весь день сегодня думаю о том, что скажу, когда мы приедем к ним. 3. — Почему вы так взволнованы? — У нас был спор. 4. Этот человек идет за нами всю дорогу

от станции. 5. Все были очень взволнованы. Что-то здесь происходило. 6. Этот шум беспокоит меня с самого утра. Я не могу понять, откуда он идет. 7. Ты слишком много пьешь кофе в последнее время. 8. Он был уверен, что она живет в Москве с 1990 года. 9. Ты опять курил в комнате? 10. У него было такое чувство, что он живет здесь уже давно. 11. Когда она в последний раз выходила из школы, где училась 10 лет, она не думала, что снова вернется в нее, но уже учительницей. 12. Она носит очки с детства.

Ex. 2. Translate into English paying attention to the use of the past tenses.

1. Она заснула сразу же, как легла спать. У нее был трудный день. 2. Когда родители вернулись, ребенок крепко спал. 3. Не проспали мы и двух часов, как рев медведя заставил нас выглянуть из палатки. 4. Не успела она проглотить таблетки от бессонницы, как поняла, что они были не того цвета. 5. Мы мирно спали уже несколько часов, как вдруг пронзительный звон будильника разбудил всех. 6. Он признался, что играет на компьютере даже по ночам. 7. Когда Тони вошел в офис, секретарша уже принимала факс. 8. Фрэд работал над проектом уже целый год, как вдруг понял, что все, что он сделал, его больше не интересует. 9. Едва он открыл сейф, как понял, что кто-то там уже рылся (rummage). 10. Когда мы вошли в зал, он уже был полон. Спектакль начался. 11. Не успели Локвуды войти в дом, как кто-то выключил свет. 12. Я работала, когда свет неожиданно погас. 13. Когда он чувствовал опасность, он менял номер своего телефона. 14. Он хорошо себя чувствовал, потому что совершил нечто действительно стоящее. 15. Инспектор так давно подозревал этого парня, что, когда его задержала полиция, он ничуть не удивился.

Ex. 3. Open the brackets to make the story complete.

A Clever Policeman

A man who was a docker during the war (fall) under suspicion of the police. Every evening the fellow (go) home after work (push) a wheelbarrow carefully covered with a large oil cloth. Those (be) hard times and it (suspect) that the man (steal) some of the goods which (bring) daily to the port. The police (be) sure the man (sell) them on the black market. Every night they (stop) the fellow (check) for contraband. While the barrow (search) the man smiled quietly to himself. The puzzled police (go on) (inspect) the docker for weeks and weeks with no result. Every evening the man (can) (see) (walk) home as usual. Tired of all this fruitless search which (go on) for so long, one young policeman (think) that if he (follow) the docker home he (be

able) to find something. So one day the policeman (watch) the fellow (put) the barrow in the yard, then he (wait) until the docker (disappear) indoors. He jumped over the fence and (see) as many barrows as he never (see) in all his life. 57 stolen wheelbarrows (lie) in the garden. Some 50 more (hide) in the barn. That was how the man (catch) by the clever policeman.

Ex. 4. Analyse the relations of actions.

1. The doctor said that perhaps she wished to see you because you had gone to school together. 2. He felt certain that the old woman wanted to tell him something. 3. I knew that Mary was leaving early the next day, that she was packing her things upstairs now, and that I should probably never see her again. 4. We were told that until a new governess came, Mother would give us lessons herself. 5. I didn't ask anyone what had been decided. 6. It was announced in the papers that the man had disappeared and that the police were looking for him. 7. We were sure that the boy would come again. 8. Father asked me if I had been winning more games lately. 9. I knew you had done nothing to be ashamed of. 10. I wondered if you realized how difficult it was. 11. I tried to forget who I was. 12. Who's in the house beside you? I thought it was empty.

Ex. 5. Open the brackets. Show different relations between actions.

Model: I knew he (tell) the truth. —

I knew he was telling the truth. I knew he had told the truth. I knew he would tell the truth.

1. He felt that somebody (watch) him. 2. We wondered how much he (know). 3. I asked her who else (come) to the party. 4. I thought you (like) him. 5. Mother said that Aunt Bessie (come) for a visit and (bring) her little daughter. 6. She said that nothing (make) her change her mind. 7. She knew she (be) right, and (be) right from the very beginning. 8. That was what I (tell) your friend. 9. We wondered if the shop (close). 10. I signed the letter confirming that I (agree) to the proposed conditions. 11. Knowing him well I was sure that he (master) the problem. 12. I knew that he (travel) extensively in the Far East. 13. We felt that she (show) him the pictures. 14. We wondered if he (speak) to him about this.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Я уверен, что они уже уехали. 2. Извините, я не знал, что вы заняты. 3. Джейн позвонила мне и сказала, что заболела и не при-

дет на занятия. 4. Он похвастался, что знает три иностранных языка. 5. Я расстроилась, потому что черная кошка перешла мне дорогу. 6. Я прочел в газете, что в твоём районе произошла тяжёлая авария. 7. Он предупредил, что не сможет закончить перевод вовремя, так как у него много работы. 8. Когда мы приехали по указанному адресу, они уже продали машину. 9. У него было странное чувство, как будто он уже здесь бывал. 10. Только на дороге я понял, что мои задние фары (rear lights) разбиты. 11. Я тебе уже говорил, что видел это объявление в газете несколько раз. 12. Все были уверены, что она скоро выздоровеет. 13. Только после того как я сдал работу, я осознал, что неправильно перевёл пятое предложение. 14. Он спросил, кто из нас будет выступать первым. 15. Я слушал его и понимал, что он не прав. Майкл всегда высоко отзывался о его работе.

Ex. 7. Insert articles if necessary.

There is ... fish in Canada which has so much oil in it that people use it as ... candle. It lives in ... sea, near British Columbia, and is called ... candle-fish.

Some of ... people who live in British Columbia eat it and like it' very much. Many of... Indians who live near ... sea catch ... fish and make ... candles from them. This is how they do it. They make ... wick (фитиль) from ... stick and pass it through ... fish. They light ... wick, and ... candle-fish lights up. It burns as long as there is oil in it. ... smell from ... burning fish is not as pleasant as ... smell of our white candles. But ... method of lighting houses with candle-fish is quite cheap and there are always plenty of ... fish for use as ... lights or ... food.

Unit 45

Reported Speech. The Sequence of Tenses

Ex. 1. Change the verb in the principal clause into the Simple Past Tense. Make all the necessary changes in the subordinate clauses.

Model: She says she hasn't seen the play yet. — *She said she hadn't seen the play yet.*

1. Rebecca says she wants to get acquainted with Amelia's brother, who has just arrived from the West Indies. 2. I know that you are preparing for your exams which take place in June. 3. The child doesn't know that there are 100 pence in a pound. 4. The young lady

says that she dislikes light dresses for evening wear. 5. She says she will be ready to discuss the matter with anybody as soon as she is through with her work. 6. They admit that in 1994 they played tennis much better than they do now. 7. She wants to know if her former teacher still lives here. 8. She doesn't know how long the man has been-working at the plant. 9. She says that the book you brought her from the library is dull and not interesting. 10. Everybody knows that children in Great Britain normally enter state primary schools at the age of five. 11. Last summer's vacation was the best I have ever had. 12. What kind of music do you enjoy especially? 13. He says that he has found out that it pays to do the work carefully. 14. It was interesting to learn that the oldest town founded in America by Europeans was St. Augustine in Florida. 15. It is a well-known fact that London became the official administrative capital of Britannia sometime around A. D. 100.

Ex. 2. Change the following sentences into indirect speech.

1. My friend said, 'Moscow University was founded in 1755.' 2. He asked his friend, 'Have you ever written a poem yourself?' 3. Margaret asked me, 'Have you brought any English books with you?' 4. The librarian said to the students, 'We've just received some new books.' 5. He said, 'I am working hard as I want to pass my exams by the first of Januarys.' 6. The students said to their new teacher, 'We read 'David Copperfield' last year.' 7. I asked John, 'Was Mary at home when you called on her yesterday?' 8. Michael said, 'Switzerland is a wonderful country.' 9. Our Geography teacher used to say, 'Paris is the capital of the worlds.' 10. My father always said, 'Hard work is the key to success.' 11. Igor said, 'I came to England in 1996.' 12. My little sister said, 'I like Kinder Surprises. I have always loved them.' 13. Robert boasted, 'I own the best casino in Las Vegas.' 14. Linda assured her friend, 'Like a true friend I am always on your side.' 15. Bobby asked the teacher, 'What is the average temperature on the North Pole?'

Ex. 3. Translate the parts in the brackets into English,

1. I noticed (что она смотрит на меня). 2. We knew (что она не вернется). 3. And then you will agree (что поступил правильно). 4. Mother said (что она просто не знает, что делать). 5. It is clear (что она старается нам помочь). 6. He spoke much better. It was clear (что он много занимается). 7. He asked me (что я буду делать в субботу). 8. It became evident (что что-то случилось). 9. The trouble was (что я обещала маме пойти с ней в кино). 10. I see (что вы

кого-то ждете). 11. He promised (что все будет сделано). 12. My only hope was (что кто-то нашел ключи и оставил их на столе). 13. I realized that (тон разговора принимает угрожающий характер). 14. I feel that (атмосфера стала более доброжелательной после (перерыва на обед)). 15. I saw that (по мере того как он говорил, он осознавал свою ошибку).

Ex. 4. Use the following phrases as a principal clause of a complex sentence: *they know, I found out, she was sure, we decided, I promised, it was clear, I realized, I came to understand, it occurred to me.*

Model: These figures will speak for themselves. — *I was sure that these figures would speak for themselves.*

1. I'll celebrate my birthday on Sunday. 2. It was no fault of hers. 3. I'll not be late for the movie. 4. My daughter has fallen ill. 5. He is a very good actor. 6. My brother and his friends have been sitting in the reading-hall for 3 hours already. 7. In her group the students help one another. 8. We shall be watching the football match from 7 till 8 p.m. 9. She met him only yesterday. 10. They went home straight away. 11. She met him there again at the same time. 12. They were terribly sorry. 13. He has to give up smoking. 14. He has left the book behind.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

- A** 1. Он сказал, что они обсудят этот вопрос, когда вернется исполнительный директор. 2. Они сказали, что уедут из Москвы, как только сделают всю работу. 3. Я знал, что они уедут, как только получат телеграмму от отца. 4. Он сказал, что не может обсуждать этот вопрос, пока не получит необходимые сведения. 5. Я боялся, что она будет сердиться, если мы не закончим работу вовремя. 6. Он обещал, что поговорит с ним, если увидит его в институте. 7. Я думал, вы будете рады, если он зайдет к вам. 8. Мы надеемся, что они зайдут к вам, прежде чем уедут. 9. Он сказал, что купит словарь, когда получит деньги.
- B** 1. Пока не купишь словарь, можешь пользоваться моим. Ольга сказала, что пока я не куплю словарь, я могу пользоваться ее. 2. Ты не добьешься успеха, если не будешь заниматься регулярно. Мы были уверены, что она не добьется успеха, если не будет заниматься регулярно. 3. Роза примет участие в обсуждении этой книги, если прочтет ее к этому времени. Мы надеялись, что Роза примет участие в обсуждении новой книги, если прочтет ее к этому времени. 4. Гордон достанет билеты, если не будет занят. Гордон обещал, что достанет билеты, если не будет занят. 5. Когда он

вернется из армии, он продолжит учебу. Он написал нам, что когда вернется из армии, то продолжит учебу.

Ex. 6. Choose the most suitable of all the past Senses and give reasons for your choice.

1. My friend assured me that she (not know) that my brother (live) in Folkstone and therefore she (not visit) him when she (be) there. 2. When Lanny (enter) the room he (see) that the man (arrive) and that he (think) about something hard as his face (be) serious. 3. When my brother (arrive) I (be) surprised to see how worn and old he (grow). 4. When she (discover) that her favourite vase (be broken) she (make) a fuss. 5. She (tell) me that the child never (read) that the high peaks (be covered) with snow the whole year round. 6. She told me not to worry because her son (climb) trees since he (be) five years old. 7. When I (lift) the newspaper I (find) Dad's missing glasses. 8. Grandma complained that Tom (be irritable) all morning. 9. Before he (start) the family, he (travel) as much as he could. 10. The man told me that the package (belong) to the woman sitting at the other end of the table. 11. He told me that he (know) everybody in this town. 12. I reminded him that Richard Nixon (resign) in 1974. 13. When I (get) up in the morning I (had) a severe headache. 14. I (look) out of the window and (see) that it (rain) hard.

Ex. 7. Insert articles if necessary.

Unless you've been asleep for, oh, say the past several years, you know that ... Earth is in trouble. Turn on ... TV. You see ... pictures of ... garbage or ... dead dolphins washed onto ... beach. You read that ... scientists predict ... Earth is getting hotter. ... towns all over ... country are having ... hard time figuring out where to stash their trash tropical rain forests are being burned at ... incredible rate. They might even disappear in our life time.

... environmental problems have plagued humans for ... long time, but in ... 1980s we recognized something new. As ... paleontologist Stephen Jay Gould said, 'People have ruined parts of ... planet before. But in ... 1980s we realized we could harm ... entire planet.' That Planet, ... Earth, is our home. And it's ... only one we've got. ... Astronauts may someday reach ... Mars or go back to ... Moon. They might even establish ... colony in one of those places. But humans will just be ... visitors — neither ... Moon nor ... Mars has ... atmosphere that people can breathe, ... climate we would find comfortable, ... food to eat, or anything to remind us of home. So, we have to keep ... only home we have in ... best possible shape. We are going to live here ... long time — we hope!

Unit 46

Reported Speech. The Sequence of Tenses. Articles

Ex. 1. Replace the infinitives in brackets with the most suitable tenses.

1. The secretary (announce) to the visitors that the director already (sign) the documents which (arrive) by air-mail an hour before. 2. I (be) under the impression that Mary (leave) for Soho as soon as she (receive) a telegram from her husband who (live) there for six months already. 3. She (say) that she (open) the window to let in a little sunshine as the day (be) bright and cheerful. 4. Mother (tell) me that she (be sure) that by the time I (come back) Ann (complete) her long translation if nobody (disturb) her; but she (be afraid) that a telephone call (may) interrupt her work. 5. I (know) she (have) dinner when I (ring) her up as it (be) 3 o'clock and they always (have) dinner at that time. 6. Something (scare) me, but when I (look) carefully, I realized that it (be) simply the shadow of a tree. 7. They knew that soon their faces (be) in every newspaper. At a diner on the outskirts of Baltimore, they (see) a dispenser for the newspapers. There (be) two newspapers left. They (take) both to see if any photographs (be) released. They (sit) across each other in a booth turning the pages rapidly. When they (go) through them all, they (breath) easier. There (be) no photographs.

Ex. 2. Change the following sentences (statements, general and special questions, requests and commands) into indirect speech.

1. The teacher said, 'I am pleased with the work of my students. They are all hard working and have made great progress in the languages.'
2. Dick's mother said to the teacher, 'Dick will not be able to take his examination as he has fallen ill.'
3. The student said, "I do not know the contents of the book. I haven't read it yet I'll read the book in the original as soon as I am through with my examination in phonetics.'
4. The Principal said, 'I know these teachers very well, they have been working at this school since 1980.'
5. The teacher said to her pupils, 'You must water the flowers every day. Flowers die without water.'
6. The boy said to his mother, 'I didn't go to the cinema. I stayed at home and had finished doing all the exercises by the time father came.'
7. The children asked the teacher, 'Shall we go to the Zoo, if it is a nice day?'
8. My friend asked, 'Did you go to the new exhibition yesterday?'
9. The professor said to the young man, 'Where have you studied English all these years?'
10. Father said, 'Don't forget to close the window before you leave. It's windy outsider.'
11. Mom said, 'However

much you may pretend, I know your true feelings.' 12. The student was upset by the teacher's reaction and asked, 'Do you consider my question to be foolish?' 13. He smiled and said, 'I hope that the knowledge of what he has done will help you.' 14. Jane asked, 'Have you made all the necessary arrangements for the trip?' 15. Grandma said, 'Don't forget to peel the potatoes at six.'

Ex. 3. Insert the right article.

Charlie Bucket — A Chocoholic

... small boy whose name was Charlie Bucket lived with his family of six grown-ups in ... small wooden house on ... edge of ... great town. Mr. Bucket was.. only person in ... family with ... job. He worked in ... toothpaste factory and was paid ... little money Buckets, of course, didn't starve, but all they could have were ... bread and ... margarine, ... boiled potatoes and ... cabbage soup. So, from ... morning till ... night they went about with ... horrible empty feeling in their tummies. Charlie felt it worst of all. One thing he longed for more than anything else in ... world was ... CHOCOLATE. Only once ... year, on his birthday, did Charlie ever get ... taste of ... chocolate. ... whole family saved up their money for ... occasion, and when ... great day arrived, Charlie was always presented with ... small chocolate bar to eat all by himself. For ... few days he would only look at it, and then, he could stand it no longer bit by ... bit, ... boy would make ... bar of ... birthday chocolate last him for more than ... month. But ... most awful thing was that within sight of Charlie's house there was ... enormous CHOCOLATE FACTORY! Just imagine that! It was Mr. Wonka's Factory. ... man was ... greatest inventor and maker, of ... chocolate. Twice ... day on his way to and from ... school little Charlie went by, and oh, how he wished he could go inside ... factory and see what it was like!

Ex. 4. Make up a compound or a complex sentence, using the given clause. Use the past tenses.

Model: ... she had been waiting for me. — When I was speaking with you I had no idea that a friend of mine had called on me and had been waiting for me for more than an hour.

1. ... the clouds were hanging low in the sky. 2. ... the rain began. 3. ... it had been raining heavily. 4. ... the fog had been thickening. 5. ... a long black cloud had appeared in the sky. 6. ... the sun was rising. 7. ... the trees had been in blossom. 8. ... the sun had warmed the earth. 9. ... the tourists had been walking for six hours. 10. ... it

was getting dark. 11. ... he had come to this decision. 12. ... she had been thinking about it. 13. ... the telephone had been disconnected. 14. ... had been negotiating. 15. ... had reached the city by four.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Сестра сказала, что хочет приехать к нам сама. 2. Я знала, что она очень занята и поэтому не пригласила ее на вечер. 3. Никто не знал, что вы здесь ждете. Пойдемте в дом, там теплее. 4. Все мы знали, что ее семья Живет в Манчестере, но никто не знал адреса, и мы не смогли встретиться. 5. Лена сказала, что дарит нам эту книгу. 6. Я знал, что она работает в издательстве уже много лет, что у нее двое детей и семья у нее дружная. 7. Она заметила, что ее коллеги всегда дают ей хорошие советы. 8. Мартин сказал, что его родители живут в Ливерпуле уже 10 лет. 9. Розмари сказала, что позвонит домой, как только закончится собрание. 10. Поль сказал, что до того как он стал студентом, он работал механиком (operator) и жил на Дальнем Востоке. 11. Он попросил родителей не беспокоиться, если он придет поздно, так как у него будет собрание. 12. Мэри сказала, что она разговаривала с ним и предупредила о нашем решении. 13. Мы получили телеграмму от Ника. Он сообщил, что самолет прибывает в семь утра и просил встретить его в аэропорту. 14. Студентка обратилась к преподавателю за советом. Она сказала, что прочла книгу очень внимательно, но не может составить хорошего плана. 15. Нора знала, что они собираются провести несколько дней у родных, если у них будет время. 16. Мы не знали, что они там не были, с тех пор как переехали в Абердин. 17. Мы знали, что ее старшая дочь будет жить у тети, если Анна уедет на Север. 18. Вчера я купил книгу, которая так тебе нравится. 19. Сестра Джеймса сказала, что не получает от брата никаких известий, с тех пор как переехала на новое место. 20. Преподаватель сказал нам, что не будет экзаменовывать нас, пока мы не сдадим курсовые работы. 21. Он сказал, что ему пора уходить и попрощался со всеми. 22. Он спросил, что я буду делать в это время завтра.

Ex. 6. Fill in the correct form of *there is* or *it is*.

1. ... a fact that education is the best investment. ... no doubt about it. 2. ... a vacant seat in carriage seven. ... good luck for you! 3. — ... a problem to find a first-rate hotel in this town? — Oh, no! 4. — Do you think ... a crossing here? — Yes, ... just a few minutes' walk from here. 5. I think ... no time to lose, ... a storm coming. 6. It's impossible. ... out of the question, ... no one to help you. 7. ... a shorter way to the post-office if you hurry. ... to the left. 8. ... a shame he wasn't

invited! — ... no cards left. 9. ... a nice museum in this street some ten years ago, ... is not here any longer. 10. ... 20 miles from here to Redding. ... a train to take you there. 11. ... a car race near our town every autumn. ... a great event in the life of the people. 12. ... hundreds of people at the stadium. ... quite a crowd! 13. ... always inline-jaf cars standing under my windows. ... so annoying! 14. ... no sense in what you are doing. ... a sheer waste of effort. 15. ... no denying that ... great fun travelling all the world over.

Ex. 7. Use the verbs in brackets in the Simple Past or the Present Perfect Tenses.

1. The birds (fly) to the South in the Fall. 2. The bus has (break) down. 3. As I drove up, two dogs (burst) from the gate. 4. The boat has been (blow) out to sea. 5. The group (flee) to the mountains. 6. I (dive) into the work without thinking. 7. I (lay) the record on your desk yesterday. 8. The sun has (shine) too hot for me today. 9. His arm has been (break) in two places. 10. She has (set) the table already. 11. You have (tear) my shirt! 12. The hall (seat) five hundred people. 13. He has (rise) to the occasion. 14. Has everyone (chose) a partner? 15. We have (beat) them three times.

Unit 47

Reported Speech. The Sequence of Tenses

Ex. 1. Use the verbs in brackets in the required tenses observing the rules of the Sequence of Tenses.

1. They promised that they (bring) us all the necessary books. 2. He did it better than I (expect) he would. 3. He said he (can) not do it without my help. 4. We asked the delegates whether they ever (see) such a manifestation. 5. It was decided that we (start) our work at 4 o'clock. 6. I told you that I (leave) town on the following day. 7. I didn't know that you already (receive) the letter. 8. She didn't know that water (freeze) at 32° Fahrenheit. 9. I was told that the secretary just (go out) and (come back) in half an hour. 10. When I called at his house, they told me that he (leave) an hour before. 11. He was not happy about our choice, and asked who (interview) the applicants for the new position. 12. Several years later I (be glad) that I (kept) that journal. 13. I knew that she (be unhappy) about the situation, but I also (realise) that if she (meet) Keith face to face her attitude (change). 14. He asked me where the price tag (be). 15. The manager asked how many people (apply) for the job.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Мама вошла в комнату и сказала, что ребенок заснул и спит очень крепко. 2. Я тоже не знал, что вы заняты. 3. Он сказал, что купил свой костюм на Тверской улице, но не помнит, где именно. 4. Я думал, что он согласен со мной и ни о чем его не спрашивал. 5. Она спросила, кому мы сообщили о собрании и сколько человек будет присутствовать. 6. Я не знал, что он ждал вас там так долго. 7. Он пообещал детям, что расскажет им еще одну историю, когда вернется. 8. Он открыл дверь и спросил одного из нас, когда закончится собрание и где он нас найдет, когда оно закончится. 9. Он спросил нас, сколько нам надо времени, чтобы добраться туда и когда мы вернемся. 10. Преподаватель спросил, сколько ошибок я сделал в последнем диктанте. Я ответил, что немного. 11. Лектор сказал, что первая Отечественная война началась 12 июня 1812 года. 12. На последнем уроке ученики узнали, что золото тяжелее серебра. 13. Он ответил, что в 10 часов уже спал и не слышал шума. 14. Он предупредил меня, что должен остаться на работе допоздна. 15. Он сказал, что скопил 1200 долларов, что бы купить компьютер с цветным принтером.

Ex. 3. Retell the following in indirect speech. While retelling make use of the following verbs: *say, tell, remark, answer, reply, add, inform, think, ask, inquire, wonder, to be interested, to know, order, advise, allow, protest, object, complain, answer in the affirmative (negative), express one's admiration (thanks, gratitude), join in the conversation, greet, admit,*

1. Mr. A. buys a parrot and sends it to his wife. When he comes home at noon, he asks his wife, 'Where is the bird I sent you?' — 'I have roasted it for lunch.' — 'Roasted? Are you cracked?! It was a bird that could speak!' — 'Why didn't it say anything then?'

2. A priest had ordered from a painter a large painting for his church. After some weeks the painting was ready. It was magnificent. At first the priest was much pleased and praised it very much. 'But,' he said suddenly. 'What have you done there? The angel has shoes!' — 'Certainly,' replied the painter. 'Why not?' — 'Have you ever seen an angel with shoes?' — 'And have you ever seen one without them?'

3. *Wife:* It's two o'clock. I am running to my dressmaker's and will be back in half an hour.

Husband: Don't be too long, dear. At least don't be late for dinner. Remember that we always have dinner at eight o'clock.

4. Little Jack spent his first day at school and returned disappointed. 'What did you learn?' was his aunt's question. 'We didn't learn anything,' replied the boy. — 'Well, what did you do in that case?' —

'We didn't do anything. There was a woman there who didn't know how to spell very simple words and we told her.' 5. As an old woman was driving in downtown, she noticed a large number of people with dazed expressions. She stopped and asked the passer-by, 'What's wrong? Has there been an accident?' 'Lady, where have you been,' the man answered, 'We've had an earthquake.' 'Well, I could hardly be expected to know that,' she said, 'This is a 1960 car and it shakes like an earthquake.'

Ex. 4. Use the most suitable tenses.

A An artist (travel) through the mountains and (see) a picturesque old man who (sit) outside a country store. The artist (stop) his car, (grab) his paint, and (run) over to the old man. 'I (give) you ten dollars if you (let) me paint you,' he said. The man's face (become) twisted in thought. He (bend) his head to listen to a bird. He (look) at the peak of the mountain. Then he (turn) his face back to the artists but still (not say) a word. 'Ten dollars is not bad for an hour's work,' (urge) the artist. 'What (be) the matter?' — 'Oh, the money (be) just fine,' (reply) the old man, 'but I just don't know how I (get) the paint off afterwards.'

B Martin, a young teacher, (teach) electronics at a local school, and sometimes earned some extra money by repairing TV sets. One day Mr. Brown's TV (go out) of order and he (have to) bring Martin to his house. After Martin (work) for two hours and (get) everything done, Mr. Brown (say) they (can have) some coffee and cakes. While they (eat), Mr. Brown (wonder) how much money he (owe) Martin. 'You see,' said the teacher thoughtfully, 'you (bring) me here, you (take) me back home, you (treat) me to coffee and a piece of cake. I not (take) any money from you. But you'll have to pay me two dollars as I (miss) a football match tonight.'

Ex. 5. Use the following sentences in situations.

Model: I had not yet been there. — My friend was on her way to the Roman Art Exhibition which had opened a few days before. She asked me to join her. I agreed most willingly as I hadn't yet been there.

1. We were both enjoying ourselves.
2. I came across an interesting expression.
3. Somebody had been smoking in the room.
4. She had made a wonderful report.
5. The weather had been perfect.
6. They had been sitting over dinner.
7. He was constantly grumbling.
8. The plane took off.
9. I had enjoyed my stay there.
10. The ice-cream had melted.
11. Peggy was learning her lines.
12. We had already placed

an order. 13. The cars were moving very slowly. 14. We had received the bill. 15. He walked out of the room.

Ex. 6. Insert the right article.

1. We had some problems at ... beginning of the campaign but in ... end all was fine. 2. Manila is ... capital of ... Philippine Islands. 3. In writing letters we put ... date at ... top of ... paper. 4. Michael is fed up with ... life of ... unemployed man. 5. I have ... feeling of ... complete happiness. 6. ... spot of ... colour appeared on her cheeks. 7. Marina is clever enough to be at ... top of ... class. 8. Brian has always had ... strong sense of ... responsibility. 9. ... bar of ... fruit, nuts and chocolate is ... good snack. 10. I think Nicky needs ... piece of sensible advice. 11. At ... age of fifty he still had ... figure of ... young man. 12. ... flock of ... birds settled on ... roof of ... church. 13. ... profile of ... girl reminded him of ... Greek goddess. 14. ... word of ... truth could have saved ... situation. 15. I want you to give me ... gist of ... story.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Я чувствовал, что ее слова шли из глубины души. 2. Туристы любовались панорамой Москвы со смотровой площадки Воробьевых гор. 3. Мораль сей басни весьма поучительна. 4. Конец романа был неожиданным. 5. Обложка детской книги должна быть красочной. 6. На обложке журнала была фотография известной манекенщицы. 7. Адвокат Макса пытается докопаться до сути дела. 8. Повесть пиджак на спинку стула. 9. Коровы лежали в тени большого дуба. 10. Ты идешь в магазин? Купи баночку меда и батон хлеба, пожалуйста. 11. Нам нужен ящик плитки и банка клея, чтобы отремонтировать ванную. 12. Лицо человека показывает, какую жизнь он прожил. 13. Лицо молодого человека выражало восторг. 14. Вы ведь не посещаете занятия с начала семестра, не так ли? 15. На прошлой неделе был проблеск хорошей погоды.

Unit 48

The Future Perfect. The Future Perfect Progressive

Ex. 1. Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Progressive or the Future Perfect.

1. My brother is a graduate student. He (finish) his studies by spring this year. 2. Don't you know what Peter (do) at 7 o'clock? 3. I really can't spare any time this weekend. I (work) all day Saturday and

Sunday. 4. When I call on her, Mary (lay) the table. 5. When the hands of the clock are close to eleven, our train (approach) Portsmouth. 6. While you are writing this exercise, we (prepare) our home-reading. 7. I think we (cook) dinner by the time Mother comes home. 8. It's beginning to get dark; the street lights (go) on in a few minutes. 9. When I get home, my dog (sit) at the door waiting for me. 10. Let's wait here; Tower Bridge (open) in a minute to let the ships through. 11. Before long, millions of tourists (visit) the new Tretyakov Gallery. 12. I hope that by the end of the year I (earn) enough money to go on a trip. 13. They promise that by next week, they (master) the problem. 14. I (work) here six months before I receive the first raise. 15. The chief executive officer (present) all the information to all new employees before they assume their positions. 16. The manager says that he (evaluate) her portfolio next week.

Ex. 2. Complete the following sentences using the Future Progressive or the Future Perfect.

1. At 8 o'clock tomorrow my friend and I 2. Don't come between six and eight; I 3. At this time tomorrow my mother 4. By that time tomorrow we 5. While you are reading-up for your exams I 6. Before you ring me up I 7. By the time he arrives 8. Before I get home 9. By the time we return 10. By the end of the month our group 11. When Christmas comes we 12. Before we pass the grammar test we 13. By the time the children are grown she 14. On Saturday evening my friends and I 15. Before you realized it you

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Когда ты вернешься, компьютер уже проверит все файлы. 2. Собрание закончится к тому времени. 3. К концу года она уже окончит университет. 4. К тому времени как мы приедем, он будет там уже три недели. 5. Они пообедают к трем часам. 6. Они уже обсудят свой план, когда мы придем. 7. Они закончат строительство дома к Новому году. 8. Они уже уложат вещи, когда придет такси. 9. Позвоните в семь. Я думаю, к этому времени секретарь закончит печатать документы. 10. К тому времени как она окончит университет, я буду преподавать уже 3 года в школе. 11. Когда моя дочь пойдет в школу, мы будем жить здесь уже 2 года. 12. Самое раннее мы доберемся туда к восьми. Они будут ждать уже больше часа. Мама будет волноваться. 13. Я не смогу пойти с вами в кино. К трем часам я буду работать на компьютере уже часов

пять и мои глаза устанут. Я лучше погуляю. Я не хочу давать глазам дополнительную нагрузку. 14. К тому времени, как она придет домой на каникулы, мы с братом уже уедем в лагерь. 15. Зайдите еще раз. Я уверена, что он подпишет документы к концу дня.

Ex. 4. Open the brackets to make the story complete.

The Family Secret

I (travel) for three hours when I finally arrived at the house where I (work) as a governess. I (welcome) by Mrs. Fairfax, the housekeeper. My new master was a Mr. Rochester, who (be) often away from home. My pupil Adele (can) hardly (speak) English as she (spend) her childhood in France. Luckily I (learn) French very well at school, and (have) no difficulty in communicating with Adele. I (teach) her for several hours every day, though it was not easy to make her (concentrate) on anything for long as she never (teach) the discipline of lessons. One day I (take) the opportunity to ask Mrs. Fairfax about Mr. Rochester. 'They (own) the land round here for years and everybody always (respect) them,' she began. 'He (travel) a lot and (not spend) much time at home.' While dinner (cook), the good old lady (tell) me the following story of Mr. Rochester's love-affair in Paris: 'He (fall) in love with a French dancer, Celine, and like any fool in love (throw) a fortune on her, (buy) a house, a carriage and jewels for her. One evening as he (wait) for her on the balcony he saw her (kiss) another man. A lover! The next day Mr. Rochester (shoot) the man in the arm during their fight and (leave) for England. But a few months before that Celine (have) a baby girl, Adele, and she said it was Mr. Rochester's child. A few years later he (bring) Adele from Paris as he wanted her (educate) in England.' I felt happy that Mrs. Fairfax (trust) me with the family secret.

Ex. 5. Finish the following stories, using the past tenses.

1. Dick was standing at the door of his house. He took a key out of his pocket and put it into the lock. After turning it, he was about to open the door when suddenly....
2. It was Bob's birthday. He knew he would get a lot of birthday presents from his friends and relatives. The best present would come from his parents, he was sure. They promised to give him something very nice. But imagine his disappointment when
3. One autumn' day Mr. Swing returned home from his office and complained of a splitting headache. He was sure he had a touch of flu and decided to take a couple of aspirins. He told his daughter to

fetch the medicine chest from his bedroom, which she did at once. But what a surprise he got when opening the chest 4. In my grandmother's room there is a small table, in the centre of which, lies the Family Album. To our grandmother 'the family' is by far the most important unit in existence. She is its creator. So it is not surprising that the Family Album is among her most treasured things. One day after washing my hands, I entered Granny's room. I approached the small table and was going to take the sacred album when

Ex. 6. Justify the use of tenses in the following groups of sentences.

<i>Model:</i> 1) did	<i>I did it yesterday.</i>
2) have done	<i>I am glad I have done it.</i>
3) had done	<i>I was glad I had done it.</i>
4) will do	<i>I am sure I will do it.</i>
5) will have done	<i>By 5 o'clock I shall have done it.</i>

1) will close	1) wrote it	1) enjoy
2) will have closed	2) have written it	2) will enjoy
3) have closed	3) had written it	3) have enjoyed
4) would close	4) will have written it	4) would enjoy
5) will have closed	5) would write it	5) had enjoyed

1) made an appointment	1) was unusually busy
2) will have made an appointment	2) have been unusually busy
3) had made an appointment	3) had been unusually busy
4) have made an appointment	4) will have been unusually busy
5) will make an appointment	5) am unusually busy

Ex. 7. Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of articles with the nouns *school, town, table, bed, hospital, etc.*

1. — Он уже встал? — Нет, он еще в постели. 2. Иди спать! 3. Врач подошел к кровати у двери. 4. Он болен уже месяц. Он в больнице, разве ты не знал? 5. Автобус 57 довезет вас до больницы. 6. Ваши дети ходят в школу? 7. Этой осенью у них в деревне откроется новая школа. 8. В школе прекрасная библиотека. 9. Есть ли какой-нибудь поезд в город около семи? 10. В этом году городу исполняется 800 лет. 11. Мы все прошлое лето провели в городе. 12. Подвинь стол к окну, там значительно светлее. 13. Мой руки и садись к столу, Дженни. Обед стынет. 14. — Вы ходите в церковь? — Да, и очень часто. 15. Вердикт был пять лет тюрьмы.

Unit 49

The Passive Voice. Degrees of Comparison

Ex. 1. Ask questions about the following statements. Use the prompts in brackets. Make the following sentences negative and interrogative.

1. Such books are sold in special shops (in what shops?). 2. These magazines must be returned in an hour (when?). 3. The picture was ruined by fire (how?). 4. This work can be done in two days (in how many days?). 5. The money will be spent on food (on what?). 6. Such questions are often asked by students (by whom?). 7. Hot meals are served in this restaurant till 10 p.m. (till what time?). 8. Umbrellas and coats must be left in the cloakroom (what?). 9. The part of the country was once covered by the sea (what part?). 10. New cherry trees will be planted in the garden (what?). 11. The house was struck by lightning (what?). 12. The house must be built by the end of the spring (when?). 13. The new sofa will be placed at the end of the veranda (where?). 14. Computers are required here (what?).

Ex. 2. Answer the following questions according to the model.

Model: Aren't you going to send him a telegram? (tomorrow) — *It will be sent tomorrow.*

1. Aren't you going to paint your country house this year? (only last year) 2. Aren't you going to raise this question? (at the next meeting) 3. Aren't you going to call a doctor? (early in the morning) 4. Aren't you going to throw away old papers? (at the end of this year) 5. Aren't you going to prepare the room for his arrival? (yesterday) 6. When are you going to solve this problem? (after the examinations) 7. When will you return the books to the library? (the day after tomorrow) 8. When are you going to explain everything to him? (tomorrow) 9. When are you going to settle this matter? (next week) 10. Are you going to sign the invitations? (in the evening) 11. Where are you going to hold the party? (at our friend's house) 12. Are you going to sell your car? (after the trip) 13. When are you going to fix your CD player? (after my spring term is over) 14. Are you going to clean the country house? (at the beginning of May) 15. When are you going to change these curtains? (after the renovation)

Ex. 3. Open the brackets, using the correct form of the Passive Voice.

1. This book (write) many years ago but it still (read) with great interest. 2. By whom this film (make)? 3. This house (paint) two years

ago, I don't know when it (paint) again. 4. What factory (show) to the visitors tomorrow? 5. Library books must not (keep) longer than a fortnight. 6. These facts (not mention) in his report. 7. When the ad (place) in the newspaper? 8. This museum (visit) by thousands of people every year. 9. I am afraid our holidays (spoil) by bad weather. 10. When windows (wash) last? 11. Who the story (translate) by? 12. After the car (wash) by the children, it (wax and polish) by the parents. 13. All the specifications (revise) by next Tuesday. 14. I am so upset. My flight (delay). 15. Since the dinner (prepare) by the girls, the dishes (wash) by the boys.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Время отправления было объявлено по громкоговорителю минуту назад. 2. Только что был избран новый президент ассоциации. 3. Не беспокойтесь, письмо будет отправлено вовремя. 4. Наши работы были проверены очень быстро. 5. Я очень удивлена этой новостью. 6. Много молодых людей нанимается этой компанией. 7. Новое оборудование устанавливается в данный момент. 8. Мы вошли на кухню и обнаружили, что пирожное было съедено кошкой. 9. На испанском говорят во многих странах мира. 10. «Беовульф» был написан неизвестным автором. 11. Нас уверили, что никого не забудут и все будут щедро вознаграждены. 12. Осторожнее, окно красят! А двери уже выкрасили. 13. А вот и дом, который был построен Джеком для своей матери. 14. Никто не может сказать точно, когда было изобретено колесо. 15. В этом ресторане пиво не подают.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

- A** 1. Когда мы доберемся туда, дождь уже прекратится. 2. Когда мы увидим ее в следующий раз, она уже сдаст свой последний экзамен. 3. К этому времени она тебя совсем забудет. 4. Поторапливайся. Дети уже придут из школы, когда мы вернемся. 5. Какие меры будут приняты до его приезда? 6. К этому времени они и сами все поймут. 7. Мы придем к часу. Секретарь уже уйдет обедать. 8. Когда мы придем, все уже будет решено. 9. Он уже уедет к концу дня.
- B** 1. Он просит, чтобы я позвонил ему, как только приеду в аэропорт. 2. — Ты все еще делаешь домашнее задание? Ведь осталось всего полчаса до начала игры. — Ничего, я думаю, что закончу его до того, как начнется передача. 3. Он говорит, что едва узнает родной город. — Неудивительно. В последний раз он был здесь после войны. С тех пор многое изменилось. 4. — Когда твой брат закончил университет? — Он его еще не закончил. Он пишет сейчас дипломную работу. — Давно он ее пишет? — Нет, только на-

чал. Говорит, что закончит ее к июню. 5. — Ты уже просмотрел газету? — Подожди, я читаю передовицу. — О чем там пишут? — Вот уже три дня идет конгресс. Передовица комментирует его. 6. Никто ее не навещал, с тех пор как она больна. 7. Мы навести ли ее дважды с тех пор, как она заболела. 8. Она очень изменилась, с тех пор как знает это. 9. Он директор нашего завода. 10. Он директор с 1970 года. 11. Я же говорил вам об этом два раза. Разве вы не помните? 12. Дождь шел вчера с 5 до 7. 13. Если он при дет после того, как я уйду, дайте ему письмо, которое лежит на письменном столе. 14. Вечно она болтает по телефону! 15. Закрой те окно. Идет Дождь, и стало очень холодно. Погода сильно изменилась со вчерашнего дня. 16. Я уезжаю в Москву на будущей неделе. 17. Они уехали, когда было еще светло.

Ex. 6. Use the right article.

Pittsburgh, which contains more than 720 bridges, is known as the City of Bridges. It is known as one of ... nation's best examples of urban renewal. ... 'Steel City' that has been transformed into ... picturesque centre of professional growth, is ... second largest city in Pennsylvania and ... major financial and transportation centre. Although it is ... nation's busiest inland river port, Pittsburgh is also served by several railroads, inland-water carriers, major highways, and ... nearby Greater Pittsburgh International Airport ... headquarters of several major corporations are located here. Pittsburgh is ... world leader in organ transplants. As a result, many research and testing laboratories are located in ... city. The heart of the city is ... golden triangle where ... Allegheny, ... Monongahela, and ... Ohio rivers meet. Pittsburgh is ... home to ... world-class zoo, ... aviary, ... Carnegie Museum of Natural History, and ... Carnegie Science Centre.

Ex. 7. Supply the proper word with the comparative or the superlative degree.

1. She is the prettiest of ... girls at school. 2. He is a better tennis player than ... fellow in this group. 3. The greater Mexico City urban area is ... largest in the western hemisphere. 4. London is still larger than ... other city in Europe. 5. This novel is more exciting than ... I have ever read. 6. Chris is clever than ... member of his family. 7. Who is ... anxious, your father or your mother? 8. Lincoln was greater than ... man America has produced. 9. You are taller than ... person in this room. 10. This occasion is ... unique. 11. The store closest to my house is more convenient than any ... store in my district. 12. His voice always sounds louder than everyone ... in the

class. 13. Trevor is more dependable than ... member of your staff. 14. Christine is more imaginative than ... student in this class. 15. Chuck is the most thoughtful of ... delegates.

Ex. 8. Insert the right article where it is necessary.

Story happened more than hundred years ago. Owner of little country inn had beautiful daughter whom he loved greatly. He also loved his big fighting cock. One day cock suddenly ran away and they couldn't find him. Tired of looking for him, man told people in village that he was ready to allow man who would bring back cock to marry his daughter.

In several days young officer came to village and gave cock back to his owner. Inn keeper was so happy that he gave all people in inn drinks to toast tail of cock who had not lost single feather. When girl, saw her future husband she by mistake or (perhaps) from excitement mixed whisky, vermouth and ice. They all thought drink was wonderful and they decided to call it 'cocktail.' Officer taught other officers to make it and soon people in many countries began to drink it.

Unit 50

The Passive Voice. Articles with Uncountable Nouns

Ex. 1. Put questions to the words in bold type.

Models: 1. Surely **something** can be done about it. — *What can be done about it?*

2. A new movie theatre is being built **in this square**. — *Where is a new movie theatre being built?*

1. The telegram will be delivered sometime **in the afternoon**. 2. Some students are being examined **over there**. 3. The parcel has been sent there **by mistake**. 4. **The process** was described in detail. 5. It was explained to them where to cross **the river**. 6. You will be given enough **time** to prepare your answer. 7. The fish should be eaten **cold**. 8. All these books must be taken **upstairs**. 9. These experiments were conducted by **a young scientist**. 10. **Nothing** was said on this subject. 11. **The future** can't be predicted. 12. All had been arranged **by the time we came back**. 13. Much was promised **by the authorities**. 14. The information was sent **through Internet**. 15. Don't deny it! It has been seen **by many people**.

Ex. 2. Answer the following questions.

1. Are all your lectures delivered in English? 2. Have you ever been told how to organize your work? 3. Education is paid great attention to in our country, isn't it? 4. When was America discovered? 5. By whom was it discovered? 6. When was the main building of our University built? 7. By whom was radio invented? 8. What holiday will be celebrated soon? 9. Why will it be celebrated? 10. How will this day be celebrated at your place? 11. Who was 'The American Tragedy' written by? 12. When are your newspapers usually delivered? 13. Has any of you been asked to write a course paper? 14. Have you been invited to the ceremony? 15. Have you been told to read a lot in English?

Ex. 3. Change the following sentences into Passive where possible.

1. Has anybody sent for Dr. Smith? 2. She likes her hair long. 3. Walter didn't give us any explanation of his strange conduct. 4. They gave us no choice. 5. Nobody promised me anything. 6. Ray always expresses himself very clearly. 7. Dr. Ross is performing an operation. 8. Many people attended the concert. 9. Miss Robinson dictated the words to us. 10. The nurse told her nothing. 11. Nobody commented on the statement. 12. He became a pilot. 13. Nobody tells us anything. 14. They served coffee in the dining-room. 15. Everyone had a lovely time at the party. 16. The Egyptians played a game like checkers in 1600 B.C. 17. Dad caught the largest fish. 18. Susan tamed the bird. 19. The boat stopped for repairs. 20. Our department manager hired two part-timers.

Ex. 4. Use the right tenses in the following fables by Aesop.

The Dog and His Reflection

A dog, to whom the butcher (throw) a bone, (hurry) home with his prize as fast as he could. As he (cross) a narrow footbridge, he (happen) to look down and (see) himself reflected in the quiet water. But the greedy dog (think) he (see) a real dog carrying a bone much bigger than his own. If he had stopped to think he would have known better. But instead of thinking, he (drop) his bone and (spring) at the dog in the river, only to find himself swimming for life to reach the shore. At last he (manage) to scramble out, and as he (stand) sadly thinking about the good bone he (lose), he (realize) what a stupid dog he (be). *It is very foolish to be greedy.*

The Donkey and Its Shadow

A traveller (hire) a donkey to carry him to a distant part of the country. The owner of the donkey (go) with the traveller, walking beside him to drive the donkey and point out the way.

The road (lie) across the treeless plain where the Sun (beat) down fiercely. So intense did the heat become, that the traveller at last (decide) to stop for a rest, and as there was no other shade to be found, the traveller (sit) down in the shadow of the donkey. Now the heat (affect) the driver as much as it did the traveller, and even more, for he (walk). Wishing also to rest in the shade cast by the donkey, he (begin) to quarrel with the traveller, saying he (hire) the donkey and not the shadow it cast. The two soon (come) to blows, and while they (fight), the donkey (run) away.

In quarrelling about the shadow we often lose the substance.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Я спросила ее, почему она так расстроена. 2. Он обещал, что принесет нам несколько книг для домашнего чтения. 3. Я сказала ему, когда пришла и сколько сделала. 4. Он сказал, что скоро вернется и поможет мне перевести статью. 5. Вы знали, что я больна. Почему вы меня не навестили? 6. Он сказал, что не брал этой книги из библиотеки, так как у него есть собственная книга на эту тему. 7. Я не знала, что вы были больны. Мне только вчера сказали, что вы пропустили 10 занятий. 8. Она сказала, что у нее не было времени прочесть эту книгу и что она собирается сделать это на днях. 9. Я не была уверена, получил ли он нашу телеграмму и сможет ли он приехать десятичасовым поездом. 10. Я недавно узнала, что они вернулись в Москву. 11. Она сказала, что опустит письмо, как только закончит работу. 12. Она расстроилась, когда мы сказали ей, что он приехал три дня назад. Она надеялась, что он ей сразу позвонит. 13. Мы удивились, узнав, что они прошли за день 50 километров. 14. Он поинтересовался, куда все ушли. 15. Мы были рады, что они договорились об автобусе для экскурсии.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Какой дождливый день и какая ужасная погода! 2. Пресса не всегда дает надежную информацию. 3. Мы надеемся, что информация останется секретной. 4. Сегодня замечательный день и я надеюсь на хорошую новость. 5. Хорошая новость заключается в том, что меня приняли в университет. 6. Легкие деньги быстро уходят. 7. Она тратит деньги, которые зарабатывает, на свое образование. 8. Он уверен, что в этом новом бизнесе будут большие деньги. 9. Что за жизнь! Да, жизнь всегда полна взлетов и падений. 10. Его лицо было красным от стыда. 11. Какая досада! Ничего нового в последних новостях. 12. Какие жесто-

кие люди и в какую ужасную ситуацию мы попали из-за них. 13. В газете интересная новость. Рассказать ее тебе? 14. Это трудная работа, но она хорошо оплачивается. 15. Какой своевременный совет!

Ex. 7. Correct the wrong sentences.

1. The dictionaries were laid on the top shelf. 2. No matter how badly the actor may feel backstage, once the curtain rises, all the problems must disappear. 3. I saw this book laying on the piano. 4. I was really upset, the hole was big and I wore this jacket only once before. 5. This hall seats six hundred. 6. That is our. 7. Wait for John and me. 8. Mumps are a mean disease. 9. I put eggs, sugar, flower, and butter in the bowl and beat the dough for the cake. 10. It's later than you dare imagine. 11. I know a boy who is more than six feet tall. 12. Do you think it was they? 13. She is more studious than any student in the class. 14. Don't raise your hand unless you don't have a question. 15. You have proved your point. Let's stop at that.

Unit 51

The Passive Voice. Indefinite Pronouns

Ex. 1. Use the Passive Voice in the following exercise. Remember that only one passive construction is possible with these verbs.

A 1. They will dictate the telegram to her over the telephone. 2. They repeated the same thing to him several times. 3. Among other things he mentioned to me this was the most interesting fact. 4. Did they explain the difficulty to you? 5. They described to us the life in that out-of-way place.

B 1. Нам объяснили, в чем была проблема. 2. Ей повторили адрес несколько раз. 3. Мне так хорошо описали дорогу к его дому, что я сразу нашел его. 4. Им объяснили все значения этого слова. 5. Секретарю продиктовали письмо по телефону. 6. Мне лишь упомянули об этом инциденте. 7. Сообщение повторялось по радио с интервалами в 15 минут. 8. На эту статью часто ссылаются. 9. Он продекламировал нам эти стихи.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Его можно видеть в саду в любую погоду. 2. Яблоко разрезано на 4 части. 3. Потолки обычно красят в белый цвет. 4. За игрой следили с большим вниманием. 5. Дом был продан за большую

сумму. 6. Правила уличного движения должны всегда соблюдаться. 7. Эти предметы изучаются на первом курсе. 8. Детей поведут в театр в воскресенье. 9. Их встретят на станции. 10. Вечер будет организован после окончания семестра. 11. Чем она так расстроена? 12. Он не сразу заметил, что окно было разбито. 13. На последнем уроке нам объяснили употребление пассивного залога. 14. Мне его так подробно описали, что я его сразу узнал. 15. Учитель продиктовал ребятам новое правило. 16. Какие вопросы ему задавали? 17. Их попросили прийти вовремя. 18. Его прервал шум в коридоре. 19. Это письмо адресовано не вам. 20. Проект уже утердили? 21. Анкеты были разосланы (mail) неделю назад.

Ex. 3. Open the brackets, using the tense and voice required by the situation. (This text represents an extract from the novel *Seven Years in Tibet* by Heinrich Harrer. The described events take place during World War II in India when the main character of the novel makes his second attempt to escape from British camp for prisoners of war.)

I chose the same route as last time and (travel) as fast as I (can) in order to put as long distance between me and the camp by the next morning. This time I (determine) to travel only by night and (lie) up by day. When morning came, I (be) in exactly the same place that (take) me four days to reach during my first attempt to escape. Happy to be free, I (feel) satisfied with the performance, though I (be covered) with bruises, and owing to my heavy load, (walk) through the soles of a pair of new tennis shoes in a single night. I chose my first day camp between two boulders in the riverbed, but I hardly (unpack) my things when a company of apes (appear). They (catch) sight of me and (begin) to throw rocks at me. Distracted by their noise I (fail) to observe a group of thirty Indians who (come) running up the riverbed. I (notice) them only when they (approach) dangerously my hiding place. I (can) hardly (believe) that they (not spot) me, for they (be) within a few yards of me as they (run) by. I (breathe) again, but (take) this for a warning and (not move) till darkness (fall). I (follow) the Aglar river the whole night and (make) good progress. My next camp (provide) no excitement, and I (be) able to refresh myself with a good sleep. Towards evening I (grow) impatient and (break) camp rather early. I (walk) for only a few hundred yards when I (run) into an Indian woman at a water hole. We (scare) each other badly and (run) in different directions, and though I (know) I was going in the right direction, my diversion (represent) a painful detour that (put) me back by several hours.

Up to now I (follow) the ridge along the river, and now at last I (step) into the road again. I (not go) far when I (meet) another surprise. In

the middle of the track (lie) some men snoring. They (be) Peter and his three companions. I (wake) them up and we (sit) talking about what (befall) on us on the track. We (be) in excellent shape and we (be) convinced that we (get) through to Tibet. - That night we (be) five days on the run.

Ex. 4. Insert the article where necessary.

Matilda was ... extraordinary girl. By ... age of four she spoke and read like ... grown-up person, but her parents called her ... noisy chatterbox. ... only book in ... whole house was *Easy Cooking* and after she had learnt it by heart, she told her father, 'Daddy, do you think you could buy me ... book?' — 'But we've got ... lovely telly, so, what's wrong with it? You're getting spoiled, my girl!' Nearly every afternoon Matilda was left alone in ... house. Her brother went to ... school, her father went to ... work, her mother went out to play ... bingo in ... country. On ... afternoon when she was refused ... book, Matilda walked to ... public library in ... village. Over ... next month she read ... long list of ... most famous authors. Every new book transported her into ... new world. She travelled all across ... America and ... Japan, ... Pamirs and ... Alps, ... Amazon and ... Nile. She travelled all over ... world while sitting in ... little room in ... English village.

Ex. 5. Make the right choice.

1. This term is ... used in Britain. The meaning of this word is very (wide, widely) 2. Young people would like to be ... independent. What's the ... situation in the county? (economic, economically) 3. Brian wrote a clear ... essay. You should reason (universal, universally) 4. Your kid is ... charming! It was an ... pleasure to meet your people, (absolute, absolutely) 5. Fred shows ... interest in cars. He is ... good at collecting engines, (particular, particularly) 6. — To sell food ... , you must make it look good. — I'm afraid I'll never be (successful, successfully) 7. — Everything seems to start — Yes, it was a ... start, (good, well) 8. They've brought up their children very — Yes, I think ... parents achieve more, (strict, strictly) 9. Dress ... when you're in a hurry. You are too ..., hurry up! (slow, slowly) 10. A full stomach studies Why are you so ... to join us? (unwilling, unwillingly)

Ex. 6. Choose the correct verb of the two in brackets and use it in the right tense form.

1. The delegates (lie, lay) the groundwork for future conferences.
2. On weekends I like to (lie, lay) down for a short nap after lunch.
3. The shades were slightly (rise, raise).
4. He had (lay, lie) still for

several minutes. 5. He has (sit, set) two rose bushes in front of the windows. 6. Where did you (lay, lie) the car keys? 7. Please (sit, set) the display units in that corner. 8. I (lay, lie) back in the chair and relaxed. 9. These platforms must be (rise, raise) about 10 centimetres. 10. After you gain one goal, another (rise, raise) before you. 11. Let it (lie, lay) there. 12. Early to bed, early to (rise, raise). 13. A package was left (lying, laying) on the floor in the kitchen. 14. I would appreciate if you don't (rise, raise) this issue again. 15. He (lay, lie) the blanket on the sofa.

Ex. 7. Fill in the blanks with the indefinite pronouns *something* — *anything*, *somebody* — *anybody* *nothing* — *nobody*, *everybody* — *everything*.

1. I'm not doing ... special tonight. 2. I'm doing ... special tonight. 3. The hall was empty. There was ... in it. 4. The box was empty. There was ... in it. 5. Richard can't be an expert! He knows ... about it. 6. ... knew what might happen next. 7. We didn't meet ... on the way home. 8. You can ask for ... you want for your birthday. 9. ... has called you several times and left a message. 10. Life in the village was so dull, ... ever happened. 11. — I see that ... is worrying you. Is ... wrong? — Oh no, ... is fine. 12. — I'm sorry, but I don't know ... about the case, inspector. — Didn't you notice ... that night? — ... at all, sir. 13. He drank ... and fell asleep. 14. Mary didn't dance with ... at the party. 15. They don't offer me ... out of the ordinary.

Unit 52

The Passive Voice. Revision of Tenses

Ex. 1. Translate into English.

1. Нам ничего не говорили. 2. Поведение Тома не одобрили все. 3. Посмотри! Как быстро строят этот дом! 4. Во время войны все документы были утеряны. 5. Его оштрафовали за то, что он перешел улицу в неподобающем месте. 6. Работа была закончена к вечеру. 7. Не беспокойтесь. Над вами не будут смеяться. 8. За директором уже послали. 9. Письмо еще не отправили. 10. Не волнуйтесь, о нем позаботятся. 11. Питеру еще ничего не объяснили. 12. Эту книгу обещала мне Маргарет. 13. Его в детстве не обучали музыке. 14. Почему от меня скрывали правду? 15. Деньги ему дала миссис Хиггинс. 16. Этим учебником пользуются все студенты. 17. Выставку уже открыли? 18. Мебель купили до того, как они переехали на новую квартиру. 19. На следующем уроке нам про-

диктуют несколько новых правил. 20. Боюсь, что вас будут ругать за это. 21. Мистера Пальмера ожидают с минуты на минуту. 22. Его никогда никто не слушает.

Ex. 2. Develop the given clause into a complex or a compound sentence.

1. ... the classroom was being prepared for the lesson. 2. ... the whole text was translated into Russian. 3. ... the assignment had been written down on the blackboard. 4. ... the floor was being swept. 5. ... the carpets were shaken out. 6. ... the room had been tidied up. 7. ... the grammar material had been revised. 8. ... the preparations are being made. 9. ... the meal had been prepared. 10. ... the changes were made. 11. ... the reason for the delay was explained. 12. ... the map was lain out on the table. 13. ... his salary had been raised. 14. ... new proposals were presented at the meeting. 15. ... the door had been closed.

Ex. 3. Complete the following sentences so as to build up a situation. Use the Passive Voice: 1) the same past tense; 2) different past tenses.

Models: 1: Yesterday at the English speaking club ... — *Yesterday at the English speaking club a story was listened to and different games were suggested.*

2: *Yesterday at the English speaking club the students were told a very interesting story. Then they were asked to compose dialogues. After the dialogues had been given, the students were recorded. While the recordings were being listened to, the rate of speech was being checked.*

1. The other day at the lesson 2. Before moving into the house much work had been done. 3. ... yesterday when I returned home 4. ... he was taken into the study. 5. I was taken around the offices 6. ... a song that had been taught to us. 7. ... the bike that had been borrowed a week before. 8. ... we were soaked by the rain. 9. We were invited to see the famous collection 10. The barn was struck by lightning 11. ... the printer had been checked. 12. The mail was sent

Ex. 4. Translate into English (revision of tenses).

1. Я слышал, что вы отказались от мысли поехать туда. 2. Когда вы прочтете эту книгу, дайте ее мне. 3. Я боялась, что они не придут. 4. Гроза прошла, но все небо было покрыто тучами и шел сильный дождь. 5. Я пишу этот перевод с двух часов, но боюсь, что не закончу его к вечеру. 6. Я уже уйду в театр, если вы придете поздно. 7. Она закончила заниматься и убирала со стола. 8. Вечер уже наступил, и дул сильный ветер, когда они вышли из дома. 9. Я бы хотела знать, куда ты положила мои книги. 10. Прошлым летом я посетила места,

где родилась и провела детство. 11. К концу недели я закончу перевод. Я работаю над ним уже неделю и сделала больше половины. С тех пор как мы их знаем, мы всегда ездим отдыхать вместе. Вы все еще читаете эту книгу? 14. Когда я пришла, он все еще занимался. 15. Он сказал, что был в театре, где встретил своего старого друга. 16. Когда я пришла, отец был уже дома. 17. Мы познакомились давно. Да, мы знакомы с тех пор, как он поступил в университет. 18. Мальчик сказал, что провел ночь в лесу.

Ex. 5. Insert the article where necessary.

1. It is miserable weather today, isn't it? 2. Waiter knocked and wheeled in breakfast. 3. Moral of fable is rather instructive. 4. Guests began to arrive by late afternoon. 5. Steam-engine was powerful instrument of human progress. 6. Mr. Braithwait, head of big publishing agency, spoke to press. 7. This is way of world. 8. What good work you have done! 9. Sun set behind hills and night fell. 10. Here comes teacher. 11. Line has been busy since morning. 12. Postman brought us letter, very strange letter. 13. First night was complete success. 14. Book is always welcome gift. 15. Moon hung low in sky.

Ex. 6. Complete the following sentences.

1. He'll believe it only when 2. Nobody can say exactly when 3. We'd better take an umbrella in case 4. I'm happy whenever my friend 5. If you eat so much ice-cream 6. Who can tell me if 7. I'll have to cook something in case 8. The lawyer doubts whether 9. We are not leaving unless 10. I'd like to find out the truth when 11. You can never be sure whether 12. Stay in your place till 13. Ben will make friends at school if 14. Nobody is to leave until 15. Call in and say hello in case

Unit 53

The Complex Object. The Passive Voice

Ex. 1. Paraphrase the following sentences, using the Complex Object according to the model.

Model: He wants the book back. Bring it tomorrow. — *He wants you to bring the book back tomorrow.*

1. Somebody must help him with English. He expects it. 2. He is an honest man. Everybody knows it. 3. It's a safe way out, I believe.

4. Don't read any of my mail. I hate this. 5. He will arrive tomorrow. They are expecting him. 6. You must not talk about such things in the presence of the children. I don't like it. 7. Do you think he is about fifty? 8. We believe it is a mistake. 9. I want you for a few minutes. Help me rearrange the furniture in my room. 10. I have always thought my work is very interesting. 11. We are going to her party. She would like it. 12. The students will share the project. The teacher wants it. 13. We must come an hour earlier. She expects it. 14. Don't talk when he is explaining the procedures. He hates it. Charles is an expert on marketing. I have always known this.

Ex. 2. Use either the Infinitive or Participle I of the verb in brackets as the second element of the Complex Object.

1. She watched him ... till she could see him no more (walk). 2. I noticed him ... her a quick look (give). 3. When I turned my head I saw him ... still in the doorway (stand). 4. As he sat on the bank of the river he felt the wind ... colder and colder (get). 5. I heard the children ... behind the wall (cry). 6. He thought he heard somebody ... him (call). 7. She noticed him ... something to the man sitting in front of him (pass). 8. Did you hear her ... that unpleasant remark (make)? 9. We saw people ... of the building and then we heard the fire alarm ... (get out, ring). 10. The parents enjoyed watching the children ... with the dog (play). 11. She saw him ... something out of the refrigerator (take out). 12. The Shows noticed the inspector ... them all the time (watch). 13. The children, looking through the window, watched the first snow ... (fall). 14. I'd like you ... the paper today (deliver). 15. The President wanted the contract ... after the talks (sign).

Ex. 3. Translate the following sentences, using the Complex Object.

A Он хочет, чтобы: 1. она дала обещание приехать. 2. мы решили этот вопрос вместе с ним. 3. кто-нибудь проучил ее. 4. она сказала ему, в чем дело. 5. вы объяснили, как пользоваться этой машиной.

В Я не хотела, чтобы: 1. вы говорили неправду. 2. они решали этот вопрос без меня. 3. вы летели туда. 4. вы забывали свои обещания. 5. она волновалась.

С Мы ждем, что: 1. вы скажете что-нибудь по этому вопросу. 2. она объяснит нам, почему она не пришла. 3. вы сделаете все от вас зависящее, чтобы достать билеты. 4. он зайдет к нам на этой неделе. 5. наш концерт понравится им.

Д Они не ожидали, что: 1. она поверит им. 2. он скажет правду. 3. мы закончим работу без их помощи. 4. это случится так скоро. 5. понадобится их помощь.

- Е 1. Я полагаю, что он студент первого курса. 2. Мне не нравится, что вы опаздываете. 3. Она знала, что он хороший спортсмен. 4. Он советует нам устроить вечер в клубе. 5. Они считают, что это единственный выход.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Никто никогда не предполагал, что он сделает такую головокружительную карьеру. 2. Полицейский наблюдал, как дети перешли улицу и остановились у витрины магазина игрушек. 3. Многие слышали, как он хвастался, что женится на Синди, самой красивой и богатой девушке в городе. 4. Мы слышали, что он все-таки женился, но не на Синди. 5. Забастовщики хотели, чтобы правительство выплатило им все долги. 6. Молодые люди никак не предполагали, что их родители — враги. 7. — Мы заставили его принять наше предложение. — Его нельзя заставить делать то, чего он не хочет. 8. Мать с любовью наблюдала, как ребенок разбирает новую игрушку. 9. Он всегда хотел, чтобы его сын получил первоклассное образование, и поэтому позволил ему покинуть дом и поехать учиться в Оксфорд. 10. Садовник грустно наблюдал, как птицы улетали на юг и думал о том, что опять пришла осень. 11. Я чувствую, как что-то ползет у меня по спине и мне хочется плакать. 12. Ответ Чарльза заставил всех вздрогнуть. 13. — Ты чувствуешь, что что-то горит на кухне? Что это? — Это пирог. 14. Долгое сидение за компьютером значительно ухудшило мое зрение. 15. Секретарша заметила, как директор взял факс со стола, прочитал его, нахмурился и поднял трубку телефона.

Ex. 5. Insert articles where necessary.

The Time of Rebirth

In 1454 big event happened in Europe. Johannes Gutenberg, German goldsmith, printed beautiful book, Bible. That may not seem like big deal now, but it was. Gutenberg printed first book with movable types — letters that could be used over and over again. Actually, Koreans and Chinese had been using movable types for centuries, but Gutenberg did not know about that. In Europe, before 1454, if you wanted to print book you had to carve each page on separate woodblock. That wasn't easy, so most books were copied by hand. Thomas Carlyle, famous English historian, believed, that Gutenberg's press created new democratic world. It was true. In world without newspapers, magazines or TV people had to rely only on words of lord, king or priest. In 15th century Europe was place of superstition and poverty. For most people it was time of war and disease.

Then things began to change. In Italy, poets and sculptors began creating new works of art. It was called Renaissance, time of rebirth. Ideas seemed to be in air, and inventions, too — like compass. Actually, compass had been around for thousand of years. Ancient Chinese discovered that magnet, swinging freely, will always point north. In 15th century compass was improved; it could now be used at sea.

And as in fairy tale, prince appeared: Prince Henry of Portugal, also known as Henry the Navigator. Prince Henry was born explorer. He had inquisitive mind. He never went far himself, but he was fascinated with sailing and mapmaking. And he inspired others. At that time most Europeans were crazy about going to Indies. *Indies* was word for all lands of East Asia. Everybody was crazy to get there because of book. Book was by Marco Polo, famous explorer, and it told about his trip to China in 13th century. Book also told people about China's riches, golden palaces, and jewels. Thanks to Gutenberg lots of copies of book were published. Prince Henry was determined to have his sailors get to China by sailing around Africa, and finally the Portuguese did it. But there was man in Europe at that time who dreamed of reaching China and Indies by faster route. Name of man was Christopher Columbus.

Ex. 6. Use the right form of the verb.

1. As I walked towards the exit, my suitcase (burst) open. 2. His right shoulder is sore because he (lie) on it all night. 3. The police officer (blow) his whistle at the speeding car. 4. The huge icicle has (fall) from the roof at last. 5. — What's the matter with you? — A bee (sting) me when I was working in the garden. 6. This dress looks awful after I washed it. And I haven't (wear) it even for a month. 7. I was surprised, he (throw) a ball like a professional. 8. She (set) the table for six. 9. Though he (lead) the army, the officers were not enthusiastic about it. 10. The child (eat) too much candy at the party and (throw) up. 11. When I was a boy, Father absolutely (forbid) me to touch anything on his desk. 12. When I came back after lunch he had already (hang) the picture above his desk. 13. He was pretty (shake) by the news. 14. The door (swing) open and we entered. 15. I thought that the suit (cost) too much.

Ex. 7. Compose a situation, using the following sentences.

1. My brother had been called in from the street. 2. He was not allowed to go outside. 3. The table was laid for dinner. 4. All the forks, spoons, plates and knives had been put in their proper places. 5. The

stove had just been lighted. 6. The clothes had been soaked. 7. They were shown about the School. 8. A lot of beautiful flowers had been planted there. 9. The rules of the school must be understood and followed by every student. 10. The announcement was written by Deputy Dean. 11. A Literature class was offered for the second year students. 12. The car had been driven without oil. 13. He was approached by a reporter. 14. He was given a proper warning. 15. We were given a test.

Unit 54

The Complex Object. The Use of Past Tenses

Ex. 1. Paraphrase the following sentences, using the Complex Object either with Participle I or an Infinitive.

1. Hundreds of cars were moving along the road. They watched them. 2. The airplane landed safely. I watched it. 3. He was reading my private letters. I noticed it. 4. He made a mistake yesterday. She noticed it. 5. The rain is coming down my back. I can feel it. 6. A man called out her name. She heard him. 7. They were making a terrible noise. I could hear them. 8. He plays tennis. I have never seen it. 9. I saw them through the window. They were waiting by the door. 10. The house shook. I felt it. 11. She found her dog. She was lying asleep on the doorstep. 12. He speaks with a slight accent. I have never noticed it before. 13. Mosquitoes bit me. I felt it. 14. He was standing in the line five people in front of me. I noticed him. 15. People watched the demonstration. The demonstrators were building a barricade.

Ex. 2. Answer the following questions, using the Complex Object. Make use of the suggestions in brackets.

1. What makes you think he is out? (see, leave the house) 2. Does she sing well? (hear, many times) 3. How did he fall down? (let go somebody's hand) 4. What makes you think he is a good football player? (watch) 5. Why won the goon the trip with us? (his mother, not, want) 6. Why do you want to discuss her discipline? (behave like this, can't let) 7. Did they enjoy the concert of this famous comedian? (make laugh) 8. How do you know that he can speak English? (hear) 9. Why are you so sure that he will do this work? (pride, make) 10. Why does he spend so much time on gardening? (make feel)

- happy) 11. Why is he fixing the bike without his Dad's help? (his Mom let him, he is quite capable) 12. Why are you so sure that he will come? (hear, talk to Mary about it) 13. Why are you late? (stop to watch) 14. Why are you surprised? (expect, they marry) 15. Where are the kids? (let, go to the park)

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Мама не позволяет мне играть в футбол. 2. Не заставляй меня лгать. 3. Не позволяй им так кричать. 4. Заставь его выпить лекарство. 5. Дайте мне подумать. 6. Я не заставлю тебя ждать. 7. Он предоставил мне решить этот вопрос. 8. Отпустите его. 9. Мы заставили его пообещать нам приехать еще раз. 10. Не давайте ей носить тяжелые вещи. 11. Что заставило его сделать такой шаг? 12. Мы заставили его приходить вовремя. 13. Дайте мне знать о вашем решении. 14. Он всех рассмешил своим рассказом. 15. Ты разрешил ему воспользоваться своим компьютером? 16. Ты видела, как он водит машину? 17. Я не понимаю, как они могли заставить их отказаться от участия в программе. 18. Ты заметила, что она прихрамывает?

Ex. 4. Speak on the following situations. Use the Passive Voice.

1. You are going to the party.
To be invited to the party, to be accompanied by, to be picked up at 7 o'clock, to be introduced to, to be offered a cup of coffee, to be asked to sing, to be invited to dance.
2. Bob is late for classes.
To be left alone in the house, not to be awakened, to be given a lift by the neighbour, to be reprimanded by a teacher, not to be given a chance* to explain, to be interrupted, to be laughed at.
3. John fails the examination.
To be examined by Professor Smith, not to be prepared well enough, to be asked difficult questions, not to be given enough time to think them over, to be asked to come again in a week.
4. You are expecting guests and you are late getting ready.
Six people to be invited, table to be set, pie to be burnt, salad to be made, floor in the kitchen to be swept, glasses to be washed.
5. You have a new job and the manager gives you the first assignment.
Job description to be read, proposals to be made, ideas to be evaluated, priorities to be chosen, work to be complete, manager to be approached.
6. You are helping to do the mailing of promotion materials.

Procedures to be explained, materials to be sorted, copies to be Xeroxed, envelopes to be filled in, the packages to be weighed, materials to be mailed.

Ex. 5. Open the brackets, using the correct past tense.

In the morning, Damon didn't wait for Sheila to make his breakfast, but (have) it in a cafeteria on the way to work. Miraculously, he (have) no hangover. Clearheaded, he (decide) that his behaviour of the last few months (be) Sheila's fault as well as his. The deterioration of their marriage (start) with a quarrel about money. He (bring) very little in and Sheila never (make) much, and the bills (pile) up. Then a publisher with a bad reputation who (become) rich by publishing semi-pornographic books (make) him an offer of a job in his office to start a more respectable line. The money he promised (be) very good, but the man (be) vulgarian and Damon (feel) that it (take) ten years to make him respectable. He (turn) the offer down and (make) a mistake of telling Sheila about it. She (be furious) and let him know it.

Ex. 6. Translate into English, using one of the past tenses.

1. У него не осталось денег, так как он их все истратил. 2. Продавец спросил у мальчика, что ему велела купить мама. 3. Она сказала, что это был самый прекрасный сад, который она когда-либо видела. 4. Никто мне не сказал, что рядом с нашим домом открылся прекрасный магазин. 5. Он собирался купить книгу, которую рекомендовал ему профессор. 6. Я заказал билет до того, как получил письмо. 7. Он ушел прежде, чем мы получили телеграмму. 8. Она сказала, что летом жила в деревне. 9. Он был в Индии уже несколько лет, когда разразилась вторая мировая война. Он тотчас же вернулся домой и затем 4 года провел в армии. 10. К концу недели его имя было известно каждому. 11. Прошло некоторое время, прежде чем они поняли, что ему нечего сказать. 12. Он был не таким уж и умным человеком, каким она его себе представляла. 13. Она сидела в темноте на диване и думала, почему она раньше не замечала, какие у него глупые шутки. 14. Не успела она отойти и двух шагов от дома, как увидела Ника, который все же решил захватить за ней. 15. Как только я поднял газету, я обнаружил под ней пропавшие очки.

Ex. 7. Insert the right articles where necessary.

Lucky drove her red Ferrari through metal gates of Panther Studios, waved friendly greeting to guard, then parked magnificent car out-

side her offices. Lucky was wildly beautiful woman in her late thirties, with mass of tangled jet curls, deep-olive skin, full sensual mouth, black-opal eyes, and slender, well-toned body. She'd been running studio since she bought it in. 1985. Business was so exciting, as there was nothing she enjoyed more than challenge, and running Hollywood studio was biggest challenge of all. It was more exciting than building casino/hotel in Vegas. Lucky loved making movies which would influence people all over world in thousand different ways. She was workaholic who never ran out of energy. She was woman who had it all together — business, three children and movie-star husband, Lennie Golden, love of her life. Occasionally she called her father for advice. At age of ninety he was true Hollywood legend, canny, quick-witted, always full of encouragement and wisdom. They would sit on terrace watching sunset, while old man told her stories about Hollywood in far-off, golden days. He had known all stars — from Chaplin to Monroe.

Ex. 8. Match A and B and make your own sentences.

Model: a burst of laughter. — *The room erupted into a burst of laughter.*

A 1. A grain of. 2. A patch of. 3. A crumb of. 4. A granule of. 5. A grasp of. 6. A surge of. 7. A slice of. 8. A glass of. 9. A gust of. 10. A particle of. 11. A piece of. 12. A speck of. 13. A sip of. 14. A drop of. 15. A burst of. **B** 1. Information. 2. Wheat. 3. Sunlight. 4. Milk. 5. Truth. 6. Juice. 7. Air. 8. Bread. 9. Dust. 10. Wood. 11. Sugar. 12. Wind. 13. Power. 14. Sand. 15. Lightening.

Unit 55

The Complex Object. The Gerund

Ex. 1. Translate into English.

1. Я видел, как он поставил машину в гараж. 2. Звук его голоса заставил меня вздрогнуть. 3. Гордость не позволила ей задать этот вопрос. 4. Он попросил ее привести детей. 5. Пусть это вас не беспокоит. 6. Мы не ожидали, что она выйдет замуж так рано. 7. Он выглянул из окна и увидел, что собираются тучи. 8. Я почувствовал, что мои слова задели его за живое (to cut somebody to the quick). 9. Ты не можешь заставить меня делать то, что я не хочу.

10. Я не слышал, чтобы кто-нибудь звал меня. 11. Я считаю, что у него совсем нет совести. 12. Шаги на лестнице заставили его повернуть голову. 13. Я ожидал, что она выучит этот отрывок наизусть. 14. Шум на лестнице заставил его проснуться. 15. Мы хотим, чтобы вы приняли участие в конференции. 16. Осенью я люблю наблюдать, как желтые листья падают на землю. 17. Я видел, как они вместе выходили из дома. 18. Стюардесса извинилась и сказала, что она не может разрешить мне пересечь. 19. Мы ожидали, что они купят этот участок.

Ex. 2. Translate the following sentences, using the Complex Object or a subordinate clause according to the meaning of the verb.

1. Я видел, что ему не хочется говорить на эту тему. 2. Я видел, как он пытался завести машину. 3. Я слышал, что профессор болен уже неделю. 4. Она слышала, как кто-то упомянул мое имя. 5. Мы чувствовали, что он еще ничего не решил. 6. После захода солнца мы почувствовали, что температура начала падать. 7. Вы слышали, что они уже вернулись? 8. Я вижу, что вы довольны подарком. 9. Я увидел, что все смотрят вверх и почувствовал, что что-то случилось. 10. Мы чувствовали, что ему не нравится его работа. 11. Когда я сел в поезд, я почувствовал, как кто-то потянул меня за пальто (pull at). 12. Я заметил, что после дождя воздух стал свежее. 13. Я вижу, что вы не понимаете меня. 14. Я увидела, что выражение его лица неожиданно изменилось. 15. Вы когда-нибудь видели, чтобы он гулял со своими детьми?

Ex. 3. Read the text, translate it and put questions to the words in bold type.

The first Europeans to discover America came **from the lands of the north**. People called them **Vikings or Horsemen**. They were the terror of Europe. Their ships were fast, their seamen brave and bloodthirsty. **Thor, Odin, and Loki** were some of the gods they worshipped. They sacrificed animals to these gods, and sometimes they even sacrificed **humans**. Vikings told stories of **elves and giants and trolls** and believed that they really existed.

Viking means 'sea **raider**' or '**pirate**,' but not all Vikings were pirates. Most were farmers who kept **cattle and sheep**. Historians believe that during **the 9th and 10th centuries** their homeland Scandinavia **became crowded**, so Vikings set out for other places. The first Viking ship arrived in America by **mistake**. Bjarni Herjolfsson was a Norse sailor on his way **to Greenland** when the wind blew him off course. It was in 986. He went home and told his people what he had seen. One of his friends, Leif Eriksson, decided **to explore** the new

land. People called Leif '**Leif the Lucky.**' He was the son of **Erik the Red**, a famous explorer who had discovered **Greenland**. The father was a **fierce** man. He had gone exploring because he **was wanted by the law**. The son was a '**fair-dealing**' man. He was a great **sailor**. He followed Bjami's route and landed in a place he named **Vinland because it had wild vines**. Vinland was probably Nova Scotia, which is now a part of **Canada**.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Мои вещи уложены. 2. В коридоре было две двери. Одна, очевидно, была закрыта уже несколько дней. 3. Он был в доме, когда был потерян бриллиант. 4. Ничего не изменилось в доме со дня его отъезда. 5. После того, как было задано несколько обыденных вопросов, Доктор Лорд откинулся на спинку стула и улыбнулся своему пациенту. 6. Не успели унести завтрак, как пришел мистер Даулер. 7. За что меня благодарить? 8. Самый старый из сегодняшних театров Лондона — Королевский театр, был открыт в 1663 году и несколько раз перестраивался с тех пор. 9. Если сейчас кто-нибудь войдет, то застанет вас за просмотром документов. 10. У меня было неприятное чувство, что за мной наблюдают. 11. Много несчастных случаев на дороге вызвано небрежным вождением. 12. После того как преподаватель пересчитал студентов, их разделили на две команды. 13. Я огляделся и увидел, что мебель была переставлена в мое отсутствие, и мой стол был поставлен ближе к окну. 14. Я понимал, что события описываются не совсем точно. 15. Среди ночи неожиданно зазвонил будильник. Я зажег свет и посмотрел на часы. Будильник был заведен на 3 часа.

Ex. 5. Insert the article where necessary.

1. Bad news travels fast. Good news has wings. 2. Cheetah is fastest of all animals. 3. Stephen, young promising designer, was organizing show. 4. Man is president of small African state. 5. Such horrible weather make me feel like old wreck, 6, Sky, horizon, sea promised good weather. 7. Bank is in Willow Street opposite Cathedral. 8. Madame Tussauds has one of biggest collections of wax models of famous people in world. 9. Doctor advised young poetess not to drink coffee from morning till night. 10. Chocolate is irresistible to Madlen, she is true chocoholic. 11. In spite of being excellent driver, he would get into accident from time to time. 12. You are so absent-minded! This is salt, and I've asked you to pass me mustard! 13. Look! There is nest over window with funny little birds in it. 14. Family left country to build new life some where else. 15. Deep and unpredictable is soul of man!

Ex. 6. Use the right article.

Can You Make a Difference?

As ... old man walked down ... Spanish beach at ... dawn, he saw ahead of him what he thought to be ... dancer ... young man was running across ... sand rhythmically, bending down to pick up ... stranded starfish and throw it far into ... sea. ... old man gazed in ... wonder as... young man again and again threw ... small starfish from ... sand to ... water ... old man approached him and asked why such ... young man spent so much energy doing what seemed ... waste of ... time young man explained that ... stranded starfish would die if left until ... morning sun.

'But there must be ... thousands of miles of beach and ... millions of starfish. How can your effort make any difference?' ... young man looked down at... small starfish in his hand and as he threw it safely in... sea, said. 'It makes... great difference to this one.'

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. К вечеру поднялся туман. 2. Я пытался выяснить, кто бросил камень и разбил окно. 3. Мой новый свитер сел после того, как я его выстирала. 4. Яйца взбиты. Что мне делать дальше? 5. Он ездил в Австралию в прошлом году и нырял на Большом барьерном рифе. 6. Посмотри, мы выбрали другой маршрут. 7. Весной мы приехали на дачу и обнаружили, что трубы прорвало, и воды в доме нет. 8. Девочка заплакала, потому что ветер унес ее шарик. 9. У меня все тело чешется (itch). Меня здорово укусили комары. 10. У тебя рубашка порвалась по шву (on the seam). 11. Я поклялся говорить только правду. 12. После того как я поставила вазу с цветами на стол, комната была готова к приему гостей. 13. Наконец мы увидели огни, которые сверкали вдалеке, и пошли в их направлении. 14. Она была потрясена этой новостью.

Unit 56

General Revision

Ex. 1. Open the brackets, using a complex object construction or an object clause.

1. — We hear (your daughter, study) at the Department of Foreign Languages. — Yes, she is a second-year student already. 2. We heard (she recite this extract, at the evening party). 3. I see (you, be tired). 4. From my seat I saw (you, enter the hall). 5. Now I see (he, be

mistaken). 6. I saw (he, not realize the danger). 7. I hear (he, live in the South). 8. I hear (he, conduct) a big symphonic orchestra in Berlin. 9. I hear (she, practice) opera on the balcony every morning. 10. Everybody knows (Andrew, be) a good lawyer. 11. People know (Antonia, go) to Florida. 12. I feel (she, not like) me, which upsets me. 13. The child (feel) the kitten (shiver) with cold. 14. I hear (you, get married) to Paul, is it true?

Ex. 2. Open the brackets to make the text complete.

The Return of the Master

The house became quite busy the next day, now that the master (return). People (begin) (visit) him on business. I enjoyed the new, cheerful atmosphere. But I (can) not (make) Adele, my pupil (concentrate) on her lessons because she constantly (talk) about the presents Mr. Rochester (bring) her. That evening we (invite) to have tea with him. When we entered the sitting-room I immediately recognized the traveller whom I (meet) on the road. As tea still (lay) we had some time to talk. 'You (bring) a present for Miss Eyre with you as well?' Adele asked him. 'A present? Who (want) a present? You (like) presents, Miss Eyre?' he asked me. 'I not (do) anything to deserve one so far, sir.' Mr. Rochester (drink) his tea in silence, then he asked, 'How long you (work) as governess?' While I (think) how to answer he turned and (catch) my look. 'I (be) a handsome man, Miss Eyre?' 'I not (think) so, sir,' was my quick answer. 'Since I left home, life always (be) a struggle for me. I (go) the wrong way when I (be) twenty-one.' And then he added, 'I am not sure if I ever (find) the right path again. Why I (tell) you all this, I wonder? You know, Jane, you are like a restless bird in a cage, but when the bird (get) out of it, it (fly) very high.' I noticed him suddenly (turn) pale and then he wished us good night and said he (go) to bed.

Ex. 3. Make the right choice.

1. He took a book from the shelf and ... it on the table.
 a) has lain b) had put c) lay d) put
2. I suppose you have to get up early everyday, ... you?
 a) haven't b) have c) do d) don't
3. It's proper for a gentleman ... his hat when he meets a lady in the street.
 a) to rise b) to raise c) rise d) to put on
4. He's been a doctor ... ten years.
 a) since b) from c) till d) for

'We, (see),' (reply) the tortoise, (smile) to himself. 'I (bet) you that I (can) travel 100 metres in the same time as you.' The cat (agree), sure that he (can) travel much faster than any tortoise. They (shake) hands, and the tortoise (lead) the cat to the top of a tall tower. You see, the tortoise (learn) of the law of gravity at school. One day, his teacher (speak) about gravity. 'What that (mean)?' the tortoise (ask). He was not usually curious about things, but gravity (sound) to him like something a tortoise (can) make use of.' 'It (mean),' (say) the teacher, 'that two bodies of different mass (fall) at the same speed, and (reach) the ground at the same time.' The cat (look) down anxiously at the ground far below them. 'What we (do)?' he (ask) in a small voice. 'We (jump) when I (count) three. 1 — 2 — 3, go!' They (jump) and, thanks to the law of gravity, they (fall) together and (hit) the ground at exactly the same moment. The cat (land) on his feet, but the tortoise (land) on his back, (break) his shell and most of his bones. He (be) in hospital for a long time afterwards. *Moral: Gravity is strictly for cats.*

Ex. 6. Insert the article where necessary.

1. Selina, ... daughter of ... Paddocks, had been surprised by receiving a letter from her once intended husband. 2. Speak to Mr. Black, ... head of the expedition. 3. Fomin, ... scientist, is well-known for his Arctic expeditions. 4. I can recommend ... very good doctor, ... Doctor Vertova. ... doctor called on me every day when I was down with pneumonia. 5. Meet ... Captain Trent, he is our new colleague. 6. George Washington was ... president of ... USA, he was ... president from 1789 to 1797. 7. She is ... head librarian at our local public library. 8. Who will be ... chairman of Monday's conference? — ... Student N. agreed to be ... chairman. 9. ... writer Smirnov lives next door to us. 10. This is Mary Summers, ... old school friend of mine. 11. Grammar books by R. Murphy, ... English teacher, are very popular in this country. 12. ... piano, ... nineteenth century musical instrument, had once belonged to my grandmother. 13. ... picture, ... painting by Levitan, is ... wonderful piece of ... art. 14. Mr. Peacock is ... physicist, ... expert in his field. 15. Dick Laylor, ... commentator, works on ... BBC.

Ex. 7. Translate into English

1. После школы (занятий) у них был легкий завтрак, а после завтрака они пошли на прогулку. 2. Если ты поставишь кровать у

окна, то точно простудишься. 3. Я вывожу свою собаку на прогулку рано по утрам. 4. Новый программист — просто гений в компьютерах. 5. Без любви мир был бы безжизненным, постылым местом. 6. Игрок, который выиграл приз, пробежал круг по стадиону. 7. Гостья, богатая и эксцентричная дама, была вегетарианкой. 8. Это платье — просто мечта! Оно сидит как влитое. 9. Не могли бы вы уделить мне минуту? Опять проблема с принтером. 10. Спинка стула должна быть жесткой, чтобы помочь ребенку не сутулиться. 11. Детектив пытается добраться до сути дела. 12. Население Российской Федерации около 150 миллионов человек. 13. Ниагарский водопад — одно из чудес света. 14. Путешественники увидели оазис в пустыне Гоби, но это был лишь мираж. 15. Бермудский треугольник в Атлантическом океане — одно из самых загадочных мест на земле.

Unit 57

General Revision

Ex. 1. Translate into English the following short dialogues.

1. — Вы давно работаете над диссертацией? — Я пишу ее с тех пор, как работаю в этом институте. Написал пока примерно половину. 2. Джон поднялся из-за стола и отложил книгу, которую читал. Его квартирная хозяйка вошла в комнату и стояла, наблюдая за ним. Наконец она сказала: "С тех пор как вы живете здесь, вы все время делаете какие-то опыты. Вы все перевернули вверх дном. Я должна предупредить вас, что я не разрешу больше делать ваши странные опыты". 3. — Он сказал, что он в городе и хочет меня видеть. Это было два часа тому назад и я жду его с тех пор. Я думаю, что он как всегда опаздывает. Ты бы на него повлияла. — Но он твой старший брат. — Это верно, но ведь заботишься о нем ты. Ты всю жизнь о нем заботишься. 4. — Ты была в театре прошлую неделю, не так ли? — Да, было много народу, хотя пьеса шла уже целую неделю. Мне очень понравилось, а Мэри нет. И я, кажется, знаю почему. Она не взглянула на сцену ни разу, с тех пор как мы заняли наши места. 5. — Миссис Браун ждет вас. — Давно она ждет? — Полчаса. Она сказала, что не уйдет, не поговорив с вами. Вот уже целый месяц приходит она сюда в надежде получить ваше согласие. — Скажите ей, что я сейчас уезжаю и не могу ее принять.

Ex. 2. Use the correct tense form of the verbs in brackets.

In the Dining-Car

John and his wife, Angela, are fond of travelling and usually they (go) abroad for their holiday. Some time ago they (go) to a small town in Croatia. They also (spend) a very exciting holiday in Italy last year. They (catch) a plane from London to Paris, then they (travel) by train to Istanbul. The train (move) very slowly through the mountains in Northern Italy. John and Angela (have) dinner in the dining-car when the train (stop) suddenly. They (look) out of the window. It (get) dark but they (notice) quite a lot of men in green (get on) the train. One of them (speak) angrily. John (think) he (see) firearms, but it (become) too dark to be sure.

A few minutes later the dining-car (be) full of men in green. They (ask) everybody for their passports and (look) at them hurriedly. Angela decided that the men (be) police or immigration officials. A man, who (sit) quietly at their desk, (look) very excited. One of the men in green (come up) to the man. But before he (ask) for his passport, the man (jump) from his seat, (push) the nearest man hard, and (try) to get out of the window — but it was too small. Other officials (seize) the man and (take) him away. One of them (explain) that the Italian police (expect) them (arrest) the robber because he (steal) three paintings from the Gallery of Florence several weeks before.

Ex. 3. Retell in indirect speech.

A Tale of Two Cities

A traveller going to a large city asked a woman sitting on the side of the road, 'What are the people like in the city?'

'How were the people in the city you came from?'

'Terrible,' the traveller answered. 'Mean, untrustworthy, detestable in all respects.'

'I see,' said the woman. 'You will find that people are the same in the city ahead.'

Scarcely had the first man gone when another appeared and also inquired about the people in the city in front of him. Again the old woman asked him about the people in the city the man had left.

'They were wonderful people: honest, industrious, and generous. I was sorry to leave.'

The wise woman answered, 'You will find such people in the city ahead.'

The Travellers and the Purse

Two men were travelling in company along the road when one of them picked up a well-filled purse. 'How lucky I am!' He said. 'I have found a purse. Judging by its weight it must be full of gold.' 'Don't say "I have found a purse," ' said his companion. 'Say rather "we have found a purse" and "how lucky we are." Travellers ought to share alike the fortunes or misfortunes of the road.' 'No, no,' replied the other angrily. 'I have found it and I am going to keep it.' Just then they heard a shout of 'Stop, thief!' Looking around the travellers saw a crowd of people armed with clubs coming down the road. The man who had found the purse fell into panic. 'We are lost if they find the purse on us.' 'No, no,' replied the other, 'You did not say "we" before, so now stick to your "I". Say "I am lost." ' We cannot expect any one to share our misfortunes unless we are willing to share our good fortune also.

Ex. 4. Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of articles.

1. Редакции всех лондонских газет расположены на Флит-стрит. 2. — Что это за башня? — Это Спасская башня. 3. Мистер Дриффилд был литературным редактором еженедельника. 4. Меня представили мистеру Джексону, президенту клуба. 5. Береза стала символом русской деревни. 6. Меня угостили очень вкусным обедом. 7. Утро прошло быстро. 8. Она опаздывает в школу каждое утро. 9. Он был сыном известного музыканта. 10. Она совершенный ребенок. 11. За окном была ночь. 12. Я узнал об этом вчера поздно вечером и не сумел тебя предупредить. 13. Памятник Пушкину — любимое место встречи москвичей. 14. Монако — крошечное независимое государство на побережье Средиземного моря. 15. Англичане обычно жалуются на погоду, но в целом климат очень даже неплохой.

Ex. 5. Make up dialogues around the following sentences.

1. The postman said the letter was not properly stamped. 2. He has been running a temperature since Friday. 3. Well, you have just saved me a lot of trouble. 4. Somehow I've grown used to my old slippers and I don't want any new ones. 5. I'm sorry I can't accept your invitation; we've already made our plans for the holiday. 6. Hello, Ann, haven't seen you since the end of the term. 7. — You haven't yet said a word about your holiday, Mike. — I've been waiting for my chance to put a word in. 8. It's been a wonderful evening for me. 9. I'm afraid I must be off now. My parents have come to see me unexpectedly. 10. My friend saw a flying object when he went to the

country. 11. He has really lived up to her expectations. 12. They have been using this herbs in cooking for centuries.

Ex. 6. Insert the right article where necessary.

A Laconic Answer

There was time when people of Greece were not united: instead there were several states, each of which had its own rules. Some of people in southern parts of country were called Spartans and they were famous for their simple habits and bravery. Name of their land was Laconia, so they were sometimes called La-cons. One of strange rules which Spartans had was that they should speak briefly and never use more words than were needed. Short answer is often called laconic that is such answer as Lacon would give. There was in Northern part of Greece land called Macedonia. This land was at one time ruled by king named Philip. Philip of Macedonia wanted to become Master of all Greece.

So he raised great army and made war upon other states, until nearly all of them were forced to call him their king. Then he sent letter to Spartans in Laconia and said: 'If I go down into your country, I will level your great city to the ground.'

Few days later answer was brought back to him. When he opened letter he found only one word written there. The word was 'IF.'

Ex. 7. Translate the nouns in brackets.

1. If you have a cable TV, you don't need an (антенна). 2. You can solve this task with several (формулами). 3. The medical (диагноз) of her condition is incorrect. 4. Please type all the page numbers in (скобках). 5. There are millions of (видов) of plants and animals on our planet. 6. A (формула) to calculate Fahrenheit into Centigrade is not very complicated. 7. The TV (серии) are becoming more and more popular. 8. Michelangelo is a good example of a true (гения). 9. All the (выпускники) support the construction project. 10. Both consultants provided exhaustive (анализ) of the problem.

Ex. 8. Translate into English.

1. Линда уже пришла к Томпсону и сидела, разговаривая с ним, когда Мартин вошел в комнату. Мартин не ожидал увидеть ее здесь, так как она и Томпсон не разговаривали уже месяц. Поэтому, когда он увидел, что они оживленно разговаривают, он остановился в удивлении. В этот момент Томпсон повернулся к нему и сказал: "Привет, старина, а мы только что говорили о тебе".

2. — Есть ли у тебя какие-либо новости от Майкла? — Нет, последнее время я не получала от него никаких известий. Он уже давно в отъезде, а я получила от него всего одно письмо. Это было в январе. — Это так похоже на Майкла. Я знаю его с тех пор, как мы вместе работали у Брауна. Он всегда был такой легкомысленный.

3. — Вы когда-нибудь делали такую работу раньше? — Года два назад делал. Я потратил на нее много времени, но не добился того, что ожидал. До этого я никогда не делал такую работу и мне было трудно. Думаю, что если меня попросят сделать это теперь, я исправлюсь.

4. С тех пор как он уехал, он нам не пишет. Я пытался узнать его адрес, но мне все говорят, что не знают. Надеюсь, что с ним ничего не случилось, что ему просто было некогда все это время. Я и сам занят последнее время. Я пишу диплом и скоро буду его защищать.

Unit 58

General Revision

Ex. 1. Open the brackets, using the required tense.

The first thing Mr. Bunting (see) when he (enter) the hall (be) an airman's hat and overcoat. Chris, his son, (come) home on leave. In the evening he (go) into Chris's room to say good-night, and (find) him sitting on the bed and smoking.

Mr. Bunting (sit) down. His son (not smoke) three months ago. The war (bring) great changes. 'If I (happen) to have a crash, you (hear) in your office.' — 'Let's hope it (not happen).'

Mr. Bunting (look) at his son, he (be) his son's greatest friend. The war (be) over some day, and he (have) a companion for his old age.

Two days later after Chris (leave) Mr. Bunting's thoughts (be) full of his son. There (be) nothing Chris, (say) or (do) that Mr. Bunting (not remember).

The summer of 1940 (be) lovely. He (continue) to work. One day when he (arrive) at his office, he (see) that it (be) exactly the same as he (leave) it the day before. Some letters (lie) on the desk, among them a yellow envelope. While he (talk) he (take) out the paper from the yellow envelope and (read) it.

'Regret to inform you that Sergeant-Pilot Christopher Bunting...' For a second Mr. Bunting (not be able) to move. Then everything in the room (begin) to turn around him, then all (become) black. After

some time he (hear) voices. There (be) faces near him. 'I'll be all right,' he (say). He (try) to think what (happen). And suddenly he (remember). It (be) Chris. Chris (be) dead.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. — Как ты его узнаешь? Тебе описали его внешность? — Петр на днях мне его долго и подробно описывал, но я, к сожалению, думал о чем-то другом и не очень внимательно слушал. А когда он спросил меня, все ли я понял, я ответил, что да. Я не хотел ему объяснять, в чем дело.
2. Дождь начался вечером, шел всю ночь и только утром перестал. А до этого погода была прекрасная. Мы не ожидали дождя и утром удивились, когда узнали, что дождь шел всю ночь.
3. На выставке нам показали новую машину и сказали, что этот образец пошлют за границу. Сейчас об этой машине много пишут в разных журналах. Ее изобрели на том заводе, где я несколько лет работал. Я знаю людей, которые ее изобрели. Буду очень рад, если машина получит первый приз.
4. Он долго говорил, но его не слушали. Я не могу даже вспомнить, о чем он говорил. Потом ему задавали вопросы. Его спросили, давно ли он занимается этой работой и что он уже сделал. Когда он ответил на все вопросы, все вздохнули с облегчением. Я знал, что буду следующим, но подождал, пока меня не вызвали. Мне почти не задавали вопросов.
5. — Почему ты выглядишь таким усталым? Что ты делал? — Я готовился к экзаменам. Сначала просмотрел все старые тетради и увидел, что многое забыл. Потом часа два читал учебник. Я только что закончил. Не знаю, смогу ли ответить на экзамене. Боюсь, что забуду все к этому времени.

Ex. 3. Insert articles where necessary.

1. 'Tomorrow is going to be ... good day,' the old man said.
2. All but General and Lionel returned to London ... same very evening.
3. It was ... night outside.
4. At about ... noon he suddenly made ... final decision.
5. It was ... sunny day in January.
6. 'Would you like to stay ... night, Denny, or are you going home?'
7. It was two o'clock before he finished his work for ... night. It was ... late... at night, and I worked there sometimes till ... dawn.
8. He went into the little parlour about half-past five in ... morning and there he remained until nearly ... midday.
9. ... night was chilly for a man without clothes.
10. We were having tea in my room on ... cold September afternoon.
11. It was nearly ... midnight and neither of us had eaten

for a long time. 12. ... day was breaking when we set out. 13. I shall see him ... tomorrow morning. 14. It was ... late spring and the trees were in blossom. 15. I spent ... sleepless night. 16. It was ... spring. I like ... spring. 17. It was easier to work by ... day than at ... night. 18. He will never forget ... day when he met her.

Ex. 4. Make up dialogues around the following sentences.

1. I've been wanting a word with you, Lewis. 2. She hasn't bought any new clothes since the beginning of the year. 3. I'm going to suggest something to you. I've been talking it over with your mother. 4. That's what I've been trying to remember since I met him. 5. You know I've missed you very much these last few weeks. 6. I'm afraid I don't understand you, Gerald, I haven't changed my mind. Have you changed yours? 7. I hope I haven't disturbed you. You weren't asleep, were you? 8. Another ten years and you will have forgotten all about it.

Ex. 5. Use the required tenses.

It (rain) all day today. I (suspect) it always (rain) on Sunday in England. Anyhow, it (rain) every Sunday since I (arrive) here three months ago. I just (begin) to get used to it but I (find) it rather monotonous! I (live) in a boarding-house in Bayswater, I (enjoy) my stay here as I already (have) many opportunities to meet interesting people who (come) from all over the world. Like me, they (study) English. Some of them (live) here for quite a long time but even they all (not speak) English very well. My friend Peter, for instance, who comes from Basel, and (come) here a year ago, still (speak) with a strong Swiss accent. He (come) here on business. Although I (be) here only three months, I (pick up) enough English to be able to correct Peter frequently, but as I (learn) English at school here, I have an unfair advantage over Peter, who is a good fellow, and (be) most helpful in showing me about London during the first weeks of my stay.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Ваш друг уже рассказал мне все, и я думаю, что смогу вам помочь. 2. Я видела его на днях, и мы договорились встретиться на днях. 3. Я звонила ему на этой неделе, но его не было дома. 4. Я знаю его много лет, и он всегда был мне хорошим другом. 5. Экзаменатор пришел, и студенты готовятся отвечать. 6. Они приехали недавно. 7. Когда мы вошли в зал, он все еще делал доклад. 8. Я читала эту поэму, она меня поразила. 9. Несколько минут он задумчиво смотрел на нее. 10. Я вскоре уезжаю за гра-

ницу, так что писать бесполезно. 11. Она вечно давала бессмысленные советы. 12. Что он сказал? Я не слышал. 13. Я встречу с ней на днях и скажу о твоей просьбе. 14. Он говорит, что ничего не будет готово вовремя, если мы не начнем немедленно. 15. Я всегда верила, что это возможно.

Ex. 7. Use the right article where necessary.

In hole in ground there lived hobbit. Not nasty, dirty, wet hole, nor yet dry, bare, sandy hole with nothing in it to sit down on or to eat: it was hobbit-hole, and that means comfort.

It had perfectly round door like porthole, painted green, with shiny yellow brass knob in exact middle. Door opened on to tube-shaped hall like tunnel: very comfortable tunnel without smoke, with polished chairs, and lots and lots of pegs for hats and coats — hobbit was fond of visitors.

Hobbit in question was very well-to-do hobbit, and his name was Bilbo Baggins. Bagginses had lived in neighbourhood of Hill for time out of mind, and people considered them very respectable, not only because most of them were rich, but also because they never had any adventures or did anything unexpected: you could tell what Baggins would say on any question, This is story of how Baggins had adventure and found himself doing and saying unexpected things. What is hobbit? They are little people, about half our height and smaller than Dwarves. By curious chance on sunny morning long ago, in quiet of world when Bilbo Baggins was standing at his door after breakfast smoking enormous long wooden pipe old man passed by. He had tall pointed blue hat, long grey cloak, silver scarf over which white beard hung down below his waist, and immense black boots. 'Good morning!' said Bilbo, and he meant it as sun was shining, and grass was very green.

Ex. 8. Translate into English.

1. Если у Макса дома кабельное телевидение, то антенна не нужна. 2. В течение многих веков Микеланджело считается гением. 3. На нашей планете существуют миллионы видов растений и животных. 4. Консилиум установил, что медицинский диагноз ее состояния был неправильным. 5. Центром атома, мельчайшего химического элемента, является ядро. 6. Она включила компьютер и внимательно просматривала файлы. 7. Домом не пользовались много лет, но отец хотел, чтобы мы отремонтировали его и проводили там выходные. 8. Я знаю этого человека. Мы знакомы лет десять, так как работаем в одном издательстве. 9. Он считал,

что энциклопедия — это нужная вещь в любом доме. Она может понадобиться в любой момент. 10. — Что такое новости и как их собирают? — Тебе следует спросить у журналистов. 11. Президент сказал, что его задача — сделать бедных людей богатыми, а богатых еще богаче. 12. Они не приняли участия в игре, так как не выучили ее правил. 13. Жители Нидерландов — голландцы и говорят на голландском. 14. У него украли машину на прошлой неделе. Полиция еще не нашла ее, но она делает все возможное. 15. — Это очень важные сведения. Кто их принес? — Вся важная информация поступила через Интернет. 16. Жаль, что вы не сказали нам правду. Мы друзья, не так ли? 17. Я взял портфель моего друга вместо своего. Какая досада! 18. Я не была у врача уже целый год. Никак не могу заставить себя пойти туда. 19. Слышали, как он сказал, что он ужасно занят. Какой он великий лгун! 20. Он сказал, что родился в Лондоне. Его семья прожила там два года, а затем переехала в Ливерпуль.

Unit 59

General Revision

Ex. 1. Use the correct tense form of the verbs in brackets,

1. I wondered why he (laugh). 2. I could see nothing funny in what (go on). 3. I (want) to go to Egypt all my life. 4. She (wear) dark spectacles. They are not just sunglasses; she (not see) well enough. 5. Why you (wear) sunglasses on a grey day like this? 6. 'Where you (get) this book?' said his mother. 'From the dining-room,' answered James. 7. Much time (pass) since then. She (grow) stronger. She (be) quite a grown up girl now. 8. She (leave) him. She (live) with her parents now. 9. For some time he (write) something without raising his eyes from what he (write). 10. Why you always (find fault) with people? 11. We (be) friends at school. I still (see) him from time to time. 12. You (hear) from me one of these days. 13. Phone me as late as you like. I (be) up. I (watch) a football game on TV. 14. The rain (start) when I (Wait) for my bus. 15. I hate that town in autumn. It always (rain) there. It (rain) when we came and it (rain) when we left.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Она сказала, что купила розы в метро, когда ехала в университет. 2. Она сказала, что это ее муж и что она вышла за него за-

муж, когда жила в Лондоне. 3. В Андронниковом монастыре нам сказали, что он был основан Сергием в XIV веке. С тех пор он несколько раз перестраивался. Теперь там находится музей древнерусского искусства. 4. Из рассказа археолога мы узнали, что дворец был возведен пять веков тому назад. 5. В путеводителе было сказано, что монастырь был основан в XV веке. 6. Вы добились больших успехов в языке. Как вам это удалось? Вы, наверное, много работали? 7. Ваша статья написана очень хорошо. Видно, что вы просмотрели много специальной литературы. 8. Он был скромным человеком и ему было стыдно за ту популярность, которую ему создавали с тех пор, как он начал там работать. 9. Она обещала, что расскажет ему обо всем, как только придет, или напишет об этом в письме, если не сможет приехать. 10. Они будут страшно на вас обижены, если вы не пригласите их на вечер. 11. Вам пришлось долго ждать, прежде чем вам подали обед? 12. Надеюсь, что к субботе вы обдумаете план своего доклада. 13. — Где ты купила эту книгу? Я ее ищу по всем магазинам и не могу найти. — Мне ее подарили. 14. Ты уверена, что они встречались? Где же они встретились? 15. Я слышал, что он не был в отпуске уже два года. 16. — Почему у тебя губы черные? — Я ела чернику. Пока ты работал в саду, я съела целую тарелку. Но ты не сказал, прежде чем ушел, куда ты положил полотенце. Я искала его минут двадцать. 17. Когда мы пришли, он сидел и читал письмо, которое только что получил по авиапочте. 18. Когда мы пришли, он показал нам письмо, которое только что читал. 19. Прошло уже две недели, с тех пор как мы виделись в последний раз. 20. Интересно, когда он мне позвонит.

Ex. 3. Insert articles where necessary.

1. Professor Petrov, ... head of our department, is going to make ... report. 2. Charles was dancing with his cousin, ... young good looking girl of about twenty. 3. We spoke to Philip's secretary, ... young man called Williams. 4. He had opened another door, ... small door in ... side wall. 5. This is my friend, Anthony Brewster, ... Englishman. 6. I was informed that you had been seen in ... Church street in conversation with ... young gentleman, ... very pretty young gentleman. 7. Ted Rox, ... father of ... girls, had four daughters and no son. 8. Newton, ... famous philosopher, was born in England. 9. His idol was Professor Edward Edwards, ... chairman of the department of ... chemistry. 10. Most of ... students have passed ... exams. 11. He was ... tall handsome youth who looked like ... sailor. 12. I've just read ... biography of Gorky, ... great Russian writer. 13. When I

studied at school, ... history was my favourite subject. 14. Why have you bought such ... expensive present? 15. There are two books there. Take one and I shall take ... other.

Ex. 4. Rewrite each of the following sentences to correct the comparisons.

1. Will is a better player of the three. 2. This is a longer report. 3. She seems to have more confidence. 4. A dog's tail wags more than a cat. 5. Of the two books, I like this one the most. 6. Insects vary more in form, colour, and size than any class of animals. 7. Of all the performers, she is better. 8. Mary is the youngest of the two sisters. 9. After examining the two fax machines attentively, he bought the cheapest one. 10. She is faster than any girl on her team. 11. New York is larger than any city in the United States. 12. His voice is louder than everyone's. 13. Of the two cakes, this is the best one. 14. This is a simpler recipe for a lemon cake that I have ever seen. 15. This year's sales are lower than last year.

Ex. 5. Put the verbs in brackets into the required tense.

1. As he (cross) the road, he (slip) and (fall). 2. She (turn) the light back on, (lie) on the sofa and (take) the book she (read). 3. What you (do) yesterday at this time? 4. And there (begin) for Soames the most confused evening he ever (spend). 5. We (look) for such a book for several days. 6. He (get) a telephone message a month ago saying that she (move) to London because her parents (get) old and she had to look after them. 7. The envelope (find) at last behind the dining-room clock, though how it (get) there Mrs. Sheridan could not imagine. 8. Tom never (change). From the time I (be) five years old and I (see) him walking up the front porch, he (not change). 9. His secretary (take) the paper from the table where he (put) it, and (go) out. 10. There (be) silence. Andrew (sit) still for a moment. The situation (be) worse, even than he (imagine). 11. She (look) at me with those pleasant eyes of hers, which (remain) as sympathetic as they (be) more than twenty years before. 12. In his turn old Jolyon (look) at his son. He (want) to talk about many things that he (be) unable to talk about all those years.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Почему ты не работаешь? 2. Он всегда много говорит, когда нервничает. 3. Они жили в Лондоне три месяца. 4. Мы жили в Киеве два дня, а затем поехали в Харьков. 5. Она работала у нас два года. 6. Вечно она приходит не вовремя! 7. Она смотрела на меня некоторое время, а потом заговорила. 8. Вы будете ему писать?

9. Я увижу его завтра, мы учимся в одной группе. 10. Я останусь с тобой, пока ты не поправишься. 11. Вчера я долго читала эту книгу. Теперь я могу рассказать тебе ее содержание. 12. Там не будет нам помогать, он уехал. 13. Я долго ждала трамвай, а потом пошла пешком. 14. Он оставался в кабинете директора довольно долго. 15. Мне было интересно, сделает ли она эту работу сама, если мы ей не поможем. 16. Мы гуляли в лесу три часа, а потом вернулись домой. 17. Вечно ты рассказываешь сказки, в которые никто не верит. 18. Мы были в ссоре три дня. 19. Она пела, пока готовила обед.

Ex. 7. Translate into English

1. В пять часов он все еще работал. 2. Джек утверждал, что уже спал, когда Аттикус вошел в комнату. 3. Она сказала, что видела, как он подошел к столу, взял ручку и что-то написал. 4. Когда я пришел, он уже давно спал. 5. Джемма не догадывалась, о чем говорили Мартини и Овод, когда она вошла. 6. Когда мы приедем, они уже ужинали. 7. Я всегда говорил, что он не обладает остаточными знаниями по этому вопросу. 8. Мы знали, что он закончил работу и ушел домой. 9. В последнее время он часто ходит в кино. 10. Он заговорил со мной только после того, как я поздоровался и отдал ему письмо. 11. Последний раз мы виделись весной. 12. Я всегда думала, что он честный человек и на него можно положиться. 13. Мы часто видимся последнее время. 14. Он увидел, что он сделал несколько примеров неверно и переписал их. 15. Он говорил, что Питер умеет себя вести.

Ex. 8. Translate into English

- A** 1. Вы меня прервали и теперь я не помню, на чем я остановился. 2. Никто не говорил ей, как тяжело она была больна, пока она не выздоровела. 3. На эти цифры можно положиться. 4. Я слышал, что эта пьеса идет во МХАТе уже месяц и пользуется большим успехом. 5. Вчера я долго читала эту книгу, теперь я могу рассказать тебе о ее содержании. 6. Видно, что вы готовы к уроку. Думаю, что вы много занимались. 7. Интересно, когда он вернется из Южной Америки? 8. В это время мы еще писали изложение. 9. С тех пор как я его знаю, он всегда был веселым человеком. 10. Простите, я не хотела вас обидеть. 11. Я узнал ваш телефон в справочном бюро, звонил вам несколько раз, но никто не отвечал. 12. Я всегда верила, что он поступит в институт.
- B** 1. Огромный диск луны поднимался на востоке. 2. Он привез плохие вести. 3. Дай деньги мне. Ты такой рассеянный. Ты вечно их

теряешь. 4. Она — дочь рабочего. 5. Пока мы разговаривали, мороженое растаяло. 6. Катя — староста нашей группы с сентября. 7. Было раннее утро, солнце только что поднялось. 8. Обед подан. 9. Он решил провести ночь в городе. 10. Доктор осмотрел его и отправил в больницу.

Unit 60

Test Your Knowledge

Ex. 1. Open the brackets to make the story complete.

A Computer Genius

A young man who went to University (leave) it one day with the highest marks in computer studies. Everyone expected him (walk) into a top job in the City, but instead he (do) nothing much. Strangely though, he never (need) money. Then, suddenly, to everyone's surprise, he (offer) a top job at a well-known high-street bank. It (appear) that he (formulate) a method of extracting large quantities of cash from automatic dispensers without affecting their balance. He never (catch) on it so far and (do) well. But one day the fellow's honest nature (get) the better of him and he (make up) his mind (let) the bank manager (learn) his secret talent. While his technique (demonstrate), the manager (can) not (believe) his eyes. He never (expect) such things (happen) at the bank which actually he (control) for nearly two decades. Well, Dear Reader, how many times you (hear) of some kid straight out of college who (make) millions by getting into computer programmes of big companies? Now, back to the story. You (may) (think) that the man (take) to prison for a long stretch but nothing of the kind. The bank people (impress) so much with the man's talent, that they feel certain that if they (inform) the police, they (lose) a computer genius. And they (make) the fellow (agree) to become Head of Computer Security.

Ex. 2. Insert articles where necessary.

The Origin of the English Language

Practically all languages spoken on earth today can be traced back to common source, that is ancestor language. English language dates back from about middle of fifth century, when invaders from across North Sea conquered native Celts and settled on islands now known as British Isles. So original language spoken in England was Celtic.

But Anglo-Saxons conquered island so thoroughly that very few Celtic words were kept in new language. Anglo-Saxons themselves spoke several dialects. Later on, Norsemen invaded England and they introduced Scandinavian element into language. This influence, which was Germanic language, became part of the language. In 1066, William Conqueror brought over another influence to language. He made Norman French language of Court. At first, 'Norman' language was spoken only by upper classes. But gradually influence spread' and language quite different from Anglo-Saxon developed. This language became chief source of modern English.

Ex. 3. Make the right choice.

1. These chemicals smell
 a) well b) badly c) bad d) deliciously
2. I ... take the bus yesterday because the subway was closed.
 a) had to b) must c) was able d) was to
3. Alaska is larger than ... state in the USA.
 a) any other b) any c) other d) another
4. This year's prices will be much higher than ... of the last year.
 a) these b) that c) this d) those
5. Hardly had she heard the music ... sweet memories came back to her.
 a) when b) than c) then d) as
6. If she tries hard, she ... pass the interview.
 a) must b) may c) is to d) ought to
7. Today in our business we ... a lot of problems.
 a) face b) have faced c) are facing d) have been facing
8. You can solve this problem with several ...
 a) formulae b) formula c) formulaes
9. My kitten likes to play with ... tail.
 a) it's b) its c) it is d) this
10. The bank is planning to ... interest rates.
 a) rise b) raise c) rice
11. Promise me to take the medicine, ... you?
 a) do b) don't c) will
12. ... is done where many command.
 a) Much b) More c) A little d) Little
13. I really feel... today.
 a) bad b) badly c) best d) worst
14. The weather has finally ...
 a) set b) set in c) sat d) sit
15. He won't come to the party unless Boris ... him personally.
 a) will invite b) invite c) invites d) had invited

16. I'm sorry it failed. The fault is
 a) my b) mine c) our d) of mine
17. It was such ... confusing information!
 a) a b) an c) the d) the
18. ... is no sense in what you suggest.
 a) There b) It c) This d) That
19. She speaks Danish, so ... her husband.
 a) does b) do c) is d) has
20. You should always respect
 a) another b) other c) others d) the other

Ex. 4. Insert the right article.

1. ... motto of ... festival held by ... Cambridge University Press in Moscow in ... State Library for ... Children was: 'Discover ... World Through ... English'. 2. ... President Clinton as well as ... Prime-Minister of ... United Kingdom signed ... treaty. 3. ... music festival took place at ... Congress Centre in ... Hague. 4. On ... morning of ... third day ... storm calmed down. 5. In ... town where I was born lived ... man who sailed ... sea. 6. Well, Susie, you look ... picture of ... despair! Relax, it's not ... end of ... world! 7. Bill was scolded for ... hour as ... most unruly boy of ... school. 8. Tracey had ... inter view for ... job as ... secretary in ... big prospering firm. 9. ... two of them went for ... stroll, carefully avoiding ... subject of ... coming inspections. 10. Yes, I am ... early bird. Actually, I get up in ... early morning to take ... dog out for ... run. 11. Robert was ... very ordinary boy. He lived with his father and mother in ... perfectly ordinary house in ... ordinary street opposite ... park. 12. ... boy went to ... bed and lay in ... dark for what seemed like ... very long time. 13. ... door at ... back of ... shop opened and ... girl of about six appeared in ... doorway. 'Can I have ... Mars bar, please?' she said. 14. ... next day was Monday. Christopher had ... very uncomfortable morning class started with ... latest news. Everyone was supposed to bring ... news item from ... newspaper or television. 15. What ... horrible article! ... reporter made all ... events look different from ... way it really is.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Комитет был очень удивлен, когда узнал, что Майкл работал в компании с тех пор, как она была основана в 1990 году. Они и не подозревали об этом. 2. Когда поступают сведения, пресс-секретарь сортирует их и докладывает президенту. 3. Эта картина — шедевр. Она была написана в начале XVIII века Гойей, великим

испанским живописцем. 4. Они предполагали, что слушание дела состоится пятого декабря, но этому не суждено было случиться. 5. Андрей написал письмо своим друзьям и теперь внимательно его перечитывал. 6. Выборы приближаются, и мы хотим, чтобы наш депутат рассказал нам, какие меры принимаются, чтобы люди почувствовали себя более защищенными. 7. Ваши советы — это капля в море. Если ситуация не улучшится, необходимо будет принять срочные меры. 8. Мой двоюродный брат Вильям двадцать лет работал юристом, а затем, в один прекрасный день, решил стать лесником. 9. Не следовало тебе так грубо разговаривать с ребенком! Тебе следует быть более терпимым и понимающим. 10. Лишь гораздо позднее он осознал, что когда они обсуждали все детали договора, банкир вел себя весьма странно. 11. Давайте поторопимся! Мы не должны опаздывать на аукцион. Сегодня выставляются очень редкие картины. 12. Что за удивительная вещь — Интернет! С его помощью мы попадаем в мир информации.